



Designation: E 1391 – 02<sup>3</sup>

## Standard Guide for Collection, Storage, Characterization, and Manipulation of Sediments for Toxicological Testing and for Selection of Samplers Used to Collect Benthic Invertebrates<sup>1</sup>

This standard is issued under the fixed designation E 1391; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon ( $\epsilon$ ) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

### 1. Scope\*

1.1 This guide covers procedures for obtaining, storing, characterizing, and manipulating ~~saltwater~~ marine, estuarine, and freshwater sediments, for use in laboratory sediment toxicity evaluations and describes samplers that can be used to collect sediment and benthic invertebrates (Annex A1). ~~† This standard is not meant to provide detailed guidance for all aspects of sediment assessments, such as chemical analyses or monitoring, geophysical characterization, or extractable phase and fractionation analyses. However, some of this information might have applications for some of these activities. A variety of test methods are reviewed in this guide. A statement on the consensus approach then follows this review of the test methods. This consensus approach has been included in order to foster consistency among studies. The state-of-the-art is currently in its infancy, and the development of standard test methods is not feasible; however, it is crucial that there be an understanding of the significant effects that these test methods have on sediment quality evaluations. It is anticipated that recommended test methods and this guide will be updated routinely to reflect progress in our understanding of sediments and how to best study them.~~

1.2 ~~There are several regulatory guidance documents concerned with sediment collection and characterization procedures that might be important for individuals performing federal or state agency-related work. Discussion them. This version of some of the~~

<sup>1</sup> This guide is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee E47 on Biological Effects and Environmental Fate and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee E47.03 on Sediment Toxicology.

Current edition approved ~~May~~ Nov. 10, 2002<sup>3</sup>. Published ~~August 2002~~ January 2004. Originally published as E 1391 – 90. Last previous edition E 1391 – 94<sup>02</sup>.

\*A Summary of Changes section appears at the end of this standard.

~~principles and current thoughts~~ standard is based primarily on ~~these approaches~~ can be found in Dickson, et al a document developed by USEPA (2001 (1))<sup>2</sup>

~~1.3 Three documents, (Environment and by Environment Canada (1994 (2), USEPA) as well as an earlier version of this standard.~~

~~1.2 Protecting sediment quality is an important part of restoring and maintaining the biological integrity of our natural resources as well as protecting aquatic life, wildlife, and human health. Sediment is an integral component of aquatic ecosystems, providing habitat, feeding, spawning, and rearing areas for many aquatic organisms (MacDonald and Ingersoll 2002a,b (3)(4) ). Sediment also serves as a reservoir for contaminants in sediment and therefore a potential source of contaminants to the water column, organisms, and ultimately human consumers of those organisms. These contaminants can arise from a number of sources, including municipal and industrial discharges, urban and agricultural runoff, atmospheric deposition, and port operations.~~

~~1.3 Contaminated sediment can cause lethal and sublethal effects in benthic (sediment-dwelling) and other sediment-associated organisms. In addition, natural and human disturbances can release contaminants to the overlying water, where pelagic (water column) organisms can be exposed. Sediment-associated contaminants can reduce or eliminate species of recreational, commercial, or ecological importance, either through direct effects or by affecting the food supply that sustainable populations require. Furthermore, some contaminants in sediment can bioaccumulate through the food chain and pose health risks to wildlife and human consumers even when sediment-dwelling organisms are not themselves impacted (Test Method E 1706) provide supplemental E 1706).~~

~~1.4 There are several regulatory guidance on procedures dealing documents concerned with the collection, storage, characterization, sediment collection and m characterization procedures that might be important for individuals performing federal or state agency-related work. Discussion of some of the principles and currents thoughts on these approaches can be found in toxicological assessments.~~

~~1.4 This Dickson, et al. Ingersoll et al. (1997 (5)), and Wenning and Ingersoll (2002 (6)).~~

~~1.5 This guide is arranged as follows:~~

	Section
Scope	1
Referenced Documents	2
Terminology	3
Summary of Guide	4
Significance and Use	5
Interferences	6
Apparatus	7
Safety Hazards	8
<del>Sampling and Transport</del>	<del>9</del>
<del>Sediment Monitoring and Assessment Plans</del>	<del>9</del>
<del>Storage</del>	<del>40</del>
<del>Collection of Whole Sediment Samples</del>	<del>10</del>
<del>Collection of Interstitial Water</del>	<del>44</del>
<del>Field Sample Processing, Transport, and Storage of Sediments</del>	<del>11</del>
<del>Characterization</del>	<del>42</del>
<del>Sample Manipulations</del>	<del>12</del>
<del>Manipulation</del>	<del>43</del>
<del>Collection of Interstitial Water</del>	<del>13</del>
<del>Quality Assurance</del>	<del>44</del>
<del>Physico-chemical Characterization of Sediment Samples</del>	<del>14</del>
<del>Report</del>	<del>45</del>
<del>Quality Assurance</del>	<del>15</del>
<del>Report</del>	<del>16</del>
<del>Keywords</del>	<del>17</del>
<del>Description of Samplers Used to Collect Sediment or Benthic Invertebrates</del>	<del>Annex A1</del>

~~1.56~~ Field-collected sediments might contain potentially toxic materials and should thus be treated with caution to minimize occupational exposure to workers. Worker safety must also be considered when working with spiked sediments containing various organic, inorganic, or radiolabeled contaminants, or some combination thereof. Careful consideration should be given to those chemicals that might biodegrade, volatilize, oxidize, or photolyze during the exposure.

~~1.67~~ The values stated in either SI or inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard. The values given in parentheses are for information only.

~~1.78~~ *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety concerns, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations requirements prior to use.* Specific hazards statements are given in Section 8.

<sup>2</sup> The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to the list of ASTM Standards, Vol 11.01, references at the end of this standard.

## 2. Referenced Documents

### 2.1 ASTM Standards:<sup>3</sup>

D 1067 Test Methods for Acidity And Alkalinity of Water

D 1126 Test Method for Hardness in Water

D 1129 Terminology Relating to Water

D 4387 Classification 1426 Test Methods for Ammonia Nitrogen in Water

D 3976 Practice for Preparation of Sediment Samples for Chemical Analysis

D 4387 Classification of Grab Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates

D 4822 Guide for Selection of Methods of Particle Size Analysis of Fluvial Sediments (Manual Methods)

D 4823 Guide for Core-Sampling Submerged, Unconsolidated Sediments

E 729 Guide 380 Practice for Conducting Acute Tests with Fishes, Macroinvertebrates, and Amphibians<sup>4</sup> Use of the International System of Units (SI) (the Modernized Metric System)

E 943 Terminology Relating to Biological Effects 729 Guide for Conducting Acute Toxicity Tests with Fishes, Macroinvertebrates, and Environmental Fate<sup>4</sup> Amphibians

E 1367 Guide for Conducting 10-Day Static Sediment Toxicity Tests with Marine 943 Terminology Relating to Biological Effects and Estuarine Amphipods<sup>4</sup> Environmental Fate

E 1383 Guide 1241 Guide for Conducting Sediment Early Life-Stage Toxicity Tests with Freshwater Invertebrates<sup>4</sup> Fishes

E 1703 67 Test Method for Measuring the Toxicity of Sediment-Associated Contaminants with Freshwater Invertebrates<sup>3</sup>

IEEE/ASTM SI 10 Standard Estuarine and Marine Invertebrates

E 1525 Guide for Use Designing Biological Tests with Sediment

E 1611 Guide for Conducting Sediment Toxicity Tests with Marine And Estuarine Polychaetous Annelids

E 1688 Guide for Determination of the International System Bioaccumulation of Units (SI): The Modern Metric System<sup>5</sup> Sediment-Associated Contaminants By Benthic Invertebrates

E 1706 Test Method for Measuring the Toxicity of Sediment-Associated Contaminants with Freshwater Invertebrates

## 3. Terminology

### 3.1 Definitions:

3.1.1 The words “must,” “should,” “may,” “can,” and “might” have very specific meanings in this guide. “Must” is used to express an absolute requirement, that is, to state that the test ought to be designed to satisfy the specified condition, unless the purpose of the test requires a different design. “Must” is used only in connection with the factors that relate directly to the acceptability of the test. “Should” is used to state that the specified condition is recommended and ought to be met in most tests. Although the violation of one “should” is rarely a serious matter, the violation of several will often render the results questionable. Terms such as “is desirable,” “is often desirable,” and “might be desirable” are used in connection with less important factors. “May” is used to mean “is (are) allowed to,” “can” is used to mean “is (are) able to,” and “might” is used to mean “could possibly.” Thus, the classic distinction between “may” and “can” is preserved, and “might” is never used as a synonym for either “may” or “can.”

3.1.2 For definitions of terms used in this guide, refer to Guide E 729 and Test Method E 1706, Terminologies D 1129 and E 943, and Classification D 4387; for an explanation of units and symbols, refer to IEEE/ASTM SI 10. Practice E 380.

### 3.2 Definitions of Terms Specific to This Standard:

3.2.1 *site, n*—a study area comprised of multiple sampling station.

3.2.2 *station, n*—a location within a site where physical, chemical, or biological sampling or testing is performed.

## 4. Summary to of Guide

4.1 This guide provides a review of widely used test methods for collecting, storing, characterizing, and manipulating sediments for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing and also describes samplers that can be used to collect benthic invertebrates. Where the science permits, recommendations are provided on which procedures are appropriate, while identifying their limitations. This guide addresses the following general topics: (1) Sediment monitoring and assessment plans (including developing a study plan and a sampling plan), (2) Collection of whole sediment samples (including a description of various sampling equipment), (3) Processing, transport and storage of sediments, (4) Sample manipulations (including sieving, formulated sediments, spiking, sediment dilutions, and preparation of elutriate samples), (5) Collection of interstitial water (including sampling sediments in situ and ex situ), (6) Physico-chemical characterizations of sediment samples, (7) Quality assurance, and (8) Samplers that can be used to collect sediment or benthic invertebrates.

## 5. Significance and Use

5.1 Sediment toxicity evaluations are a critical component of environmental quality and ecosystem impact assessments, and are used to meet a variety of research and regulatory objectives. The manner in which the sediments are collected, stored,

<sup>3</sup> For referenced ASTM standards, visit the ASTM website, www.astm.org, or contact ASTM Customer Service at service@astm.org. For Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol 11.05, volume information, refer to the standard's Document Summary page on the ASTM website.

characterized, and manipulated can influence the results of any sediment quality or process evaluation greatly. Addressing these variables in a systematic and uniform manner will aid the interpretations of sediment toxicity or bioaccumulation results and may allow comparisons between studies.

5.2 Sediment quality assessment is an important component of water quality protection. Sediment assessments commonly include physicochemical characterization, toxicity tests or bioaccumulation tests, as well as benthic community analyses. The use of consistent sediment collection, manipulation, and storage methods will help provide high quality samples with which accurate data can be obtained for the national inventory and for other programs to prevent, remediate, and manage contaminated sediment.

5.3 It is now widely known that the methods used in sample collection, transport, handling, storage, and manipulation of sediments and interstitial waters can influence the physicochemical properties and the results of chemical, toxicity, and bioaccumulation analyses. Addressing these variables in an appropriate and systematic manner will provide more accurate sediment quality data and facilitate comparisons among sediment studies.

5.4 This standard provides current information and recommendations for collecting and handling sediments for physicochemical characterization and biological testing, using procedures that are most likely to maintain in situ conditions, most accurately represent the sediment in question, or satisfy particular needs, to help generate consistent, high quality data collection.

5.5 This standard is intended to provide technical support to those who design or perform sediment quality studies under a variety of regulatory and non-regulatory programs. Information is provided concerning general sampling design considerations, field and laboratory facilities needed, safety, sampling equipment, sample storage and transport procedures, and sample manipulation issues common to chemical or toxicological analyses. Information contained in this standard reflects the knowledge and experience of several internationally-known sources including the Puget Sound Estuary Program (PSEP), Washington State Department of Ecology (WDE), United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and Environment Canada. This standard attempts to present a coherent set of recommendations on field sampling techniques and sediment or interstitial water sample processing based on the above sources, as well as extensive information in the peer-reviewed literature.

5.6 As the scope of this standard is broad, it is impossible to adequately present detailed information on every aspect of sediment sampling and processing for all situations. Nor is such detailed guidance warranted because much of this information (for example, how to operate a particular sampling device or how to use a Geographical Positioning System (GPS) device) already exists in other published materials referenced in this standard.

5.7 Given the above constraints, this standard: (1) presents a discussion of activities involved in sediment sampling and sample processing; (2) alerts the user to important issues that should be considered within each activity; and (3) gives recommendations on how to best address the issues raised such that appropriate samples are collected and analyzed. An attempt is made to alert the user to different considerations pertaining to sampling and sample processing depending on the objectives of the study (for example, remediation, dredged material evaluations or status and trends monitoring).

5.8 The organization of this standard reflects the desire to give field personnel and managers a useful tool for choosing appropriate sampling locations, characterize those locations, collect and store samples, and manipulate those samples for analyses. Each section of this standard is written so that the reader can obtain information on only one activity or set of activities (for example, subsampling or sample processing), if desired, without necessarily reading the entire standard. Many sections are cross-referenced so that the reader is alerted to relevant issues that might be covered elsewhere in the standard. This is particularly important for certain chemical or toxicological applications in which appropriate sample processing or laboratory procedures are associated with specific field sampling procedures.

5.9 The methods contained in this standard are widely applicable to any entity wishing to collect consistent, high quality sediment data. This standard does not provide guidance on how to implement any specific regulatory requirement, or design a particular sediment quality assessment, but rather it is a compilation of technical methods on how to best collect environmental samples that most appropriately address common sampling objectives.

5.10 The information presented in this standard should not be viewed as the final statement on all the recommended procedures. Many of the topics addressed in this standard (for example, sediment holding time, formulated sediment composition, interstitial water collection and processing) are the subject of ongoing research. As data from sediment monitoring and research becomes available in the future, this standard will be updated as necessary.

## **6. Interferences**

6.1 Maintaining the integrity of a sediment sample relative to ambient environmental conditions during its removal, transport, and testing in the laboratory is extremely difficult. The sediment environment is composed of a myriad of microenvironments, redox gradients, and other interacting physicochemical and biological processes. Many of these characteristics influence sediment toxicity and bioavailability to benthic and planktonic organisms, microbial degradation, and chemical sorption. Any disruption of this environment complicates interpretations of treatment effects, causative factors, and in situ comparisons. ~~See Section 9 for additional information.~~ Individual sections address specific interferences.

## **7. Apparatus**

7.1 A variety of sampling, characterization, and manipulation methods exist using different equipment. These are reviewed in ~~Sections 9 and 14.~~ 10-14.

~~7.2 Cleaning—Test chambers and equipment—Equipment used to collect and store sediment samples, equipment used to collect benthic invertebrate samples, equipment used to prepare and store dilution water and stock solutions, and equipment used to expose test organisms should be cleaned before use. New glassware All non-disposable sample containers, test chambers, and plasticware other equipment that have come in contact with sediment should be soaked washed after use in 1:1 concentrated acid prior the manner described as follows to use. Soaking overnight is adequate remove surface contaminants (Test Method E 1706). See 10.4 for glassware. Soaking for seven days additional detail.~~

## **8. Safety Hazards**

### *8.1 General Precautions:*

~~8.1.1 Development and maintenance of an effective health and safety program in HCl, followed the laboratory requires an ongoing commitment by seven days in HNO<sub>3</sub>, followed by seven days in deionized water is recommended for plasticware. Used sample containers should be washed following these steps: laboratory management and includes: (1) non-phosphate detergent wash, the appointment of a laboratory health and safety officer with the responsibility and authority to develop and maintain a safety program, (2) the preparation of a formal, written health and safety plan, which is provided to each laboratory staff member, (3) water-miscible organic solvent wash (acetone followed by pesticide-grade hexane (4, 5); an ongoing training program on laboratory safety, and (4) water rinse, (5) acid wash (such as 5% concentrated hydrochloric acid); regular safety inspections.~~

~~8.1.2 Collection and (6) triple rinse with deionized distilled water. Altering this cleaning procedure might result in problems. Many organic solvents might leave a film that is insoluble in water (Step 3). A dichromate-sulfuric acid cleaning solution can generally be used in place use of both the organic solvent and the acid (Steps 3 through 5), but it might attack silicone adhesive. (See 9.10 for cleaning during sample collection.)~~

## **8. Safety Hazards**

~~8.1 Many substances can affect humans adversely if adequate precautions are not taken. Information on the toxicity to humans (6) and recommended handling procedures of toxicants (7) should be studied before tests are begun with any contaminant or sediment. Health and safety precautions should be incorporated into any study plan prior to initiating any work with contaminants or sediments.~~

~~8.2 Field-collected sediments might contain a mixture of hazardous contaminants or disease-causing agents such that proper handling may involve substantial risks to av personal safety and health. Chemicals in field-collected sediment may include carcinogens, mutagens, and other potentially toxic compounds. Inasmuch as sediment testing is critical. Skin often started before chemical analyses can be completed, worker contact with all test materials and solutions should therefore sediment needs to be minimized by such means as wearing appropriate protective gloves, especially when putting hands into sediments, overlying water, or washing equipment. Proper handling procedures might include the following: by: (1) sieving using gloves, laboratory coats, safety glasses, face shields, and distributing sediments under a ventilated hood or enclosed glove box; respirators as appropriate, (2) enclosing and ventilating the toxicity test water bath; manipulating sediments under a ventilated hood or in an enclosed glove box, and (3) enclosing and ventilating the exposure system. Personnel collecting sediment samples and conducting tests should take all safety precautions necessary for the prevention of bodily injury and illness that might result from ingestion or invasion of infectious agents, inhalation or absorption of corrosive or toxic substances through skin contact, and asphyxiation because of lack of oxygen or presence of noxious gases.~~

~~8.1.3 Before beginning sample collection and laboratory work, personnel should determine that all required safety equipment and materials have been obtained and are in good condition.~~

### *8.2 Safety Equipment:*

~~8.2.1 Personal Safety Gear—Personnel should use safety equipment, such as rubber aprons, laboratory coats, respirators, gloves, safety glasses, face shields, hard hats, safety shoes, water-proof clothing, personal floatation devices, and g safety harnesses.~~

~~8.2.2 Laboratory Safety Equipment—Each laboratory should be provided with safety equipment such as first-aid kits, fire extinguishers, fire blankets, emergency showers, and eye wash stations. Mobile laboratories should be equipped with a telephone to enable personnel to summon help in case of emergency.~~

### *8.3 General Laboratory and Field Operations:*

~~8.3.1 Special handling and precautionary guidance in Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) should be followed for reagents and other chemicals purchased from supply houses.~~

~~8.3.2 Work with some sediments may require compliance with rules pertaining to the handling of hazardous materials. Personnel collecting samples and performing tests should not work alone. S~~

~~8.3.3 It is advisable to wash exposed parts of the body with bactericidal soap and water immediately after collecting or manipulating sediment samples.~~

~~8.3.4 Strong acids and volatile organic solvents should be necessary used in a fume hood or under an exhaust canopy over the work area.~~

~~8.3.5 An acidic solution should not be mixed with a hypochlorite solution because hazardous fumes might be produced.~~

~~8.3.6 To prepare dilute acid solutions, concentrated acid should be added to water, not vice versa. Opening a bottle of concentrated acid and adding concentrated acid to water s(8) should be performed only under a fume hood.~~

8.3.7 Use of ground-fault systems and leak detectors is strongly recommended to help prevent electrical shocks. Electrical equipment or extension cords not bearing the approval of Underwriter Laboratories should not be used. Ground-fault interrupters should be installed in all "wet" laboratories where electrical equipment is used.

8.3.8 All containers should be adequately labeled to indicate their contents.

8.3.9 A clean and well-organized work place contributes to safety and reliable results.

8.4 *Disease Prevention*—Personnel handling samples which are known or suspected to contain human wastes should be immunized against hepatitis B, tetanus, typhoid fever, and polio. Thorough washing of exposed skin with bacterial soap should follow handling of samples collected from the field.

8.5 *Safety Manuals*—For further guidance on safe practices when handling sediment samples and conducting toxicity tests, check with the permittee and consult general industrial safety manuals including (7),(8).

~~8.3 The disposal of sediments, dilution water over sediments,~~

~~8.6 *Pollution Prevention, Waste Management, and test organisms containing hazardous compounds might pose special problems. Removal or degradation of Sample Disposal*—Guidelines for the toxicant(s) before handling and disposal is sometimes desirable for tests involving spiking sediments with known toxicants. Disposal of all hazardous wastes materials should be strictly followed (Guide D 4447). The Federal Government has published regulations for the management of hazardous waste and has given the States the option of either adopting those regulations or developing their own. If States develop their own regulations, they are required to be at least as stringent as the Federal regulations. As a handler of hazardous materials, it is your responsibility to know and comply with the pertinent regulations applicable in the State in which you are operating. Refer to the Bureau of National Affairs Inc. (9) for the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act and any relevant state or local regulations. citations of the Federal requirements.~~

## **9. Sampling Sediment Monitoring and Transport**

~~9.1 Sediments have been collected for Assessment Study Plans~~

9.1 Every study site (for example, a variety study area comprised of chemical, physical, toxicological, multiple sampling stations) location and biological investigations. The sediments project is unique; therefore, sediment monitoring and assessment study plans should be carefully prepared to best meet the project objectives (MacDonald et al. 1991 (10); Fig. 1).

9.2 Before collecting any environmental data, it is important to determine the type, quantity, and quality of data needed to meet the project objectives (for example, specific parameters to be measured) and support a decision based on the results of data collection and observation. Not doing so creates the risk of expending too much effort on data collection (that is, more data are collected than necessary), not expending enough effort on data collection (that is, more data are necessary than were collected), or expending the wrong effort (that is, the wrong data are collected).

~~9.3 *Data Quality Objectives Process* :~~

9.3.1 The Data Quality Objectives (DQO) Process developed by USEPA (GLNPO, 1994 (11); USEPA, 2000a (12)) is a flexible planning tool that systematically addresses the above issues in which fine-grained sediments accumulate. Site selection should also consider a coherent manner. The purpose of this process is to improve the location effectiveness, efficiency, and defensibility of pollutant loadings decisions made based on the data collected, and hydrological flow patterns: to do so in an effective manner (USEPA, 2000a (12)). The site selection may also need information compiled in the DQO process is used to develop a project-specific Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP; Section 10, USEPA 2000a (12)) that should be used to plan the majority of a random sediment quality monitoring or stratified random nature, depending assessment studies. In some instances, a QAPP may be prepared, as necessary, on a project-by-project basis.

9.3.2 The DQO process addresses the study objectives. Sediment variability must uses of the data (most importantly, the decision(s) to be considered since most sediments are very heterogeneous (both vertically made) and horizontally) in nature. A preliminary survey or review other factors that will influence the type and amount of background data may therefore to be collected (for example, the problem being addressed, existing information, information needed before a decision can be made, and available resources). From these factors the qualitative and quantitative data needs are determined Fig. 2. DQOs are qualitative and quantitative statements that clarify the purpose of the monitoring study, define the most appropriate type of data to collect, and determine accurately the most appropriate methods and conditions under which to collect them. The products of sediment replicates the DQO process are criteria for data quality, and a data collection design to collect.

~~9.2 Sediment collections have been made with grab ensure that data will meet the criteria.~~

9.3.3 For most instances, a Sampling and Dredge Analysis Plan (SAP) is developed before sampling that describes the study objectives, sampling design and core samplers (see Table 1 procedures, and Guide D-4823); other aspects of the DQO process outlined above (USEPA 2001(1)). The advantages and disadvantages following sections provide guidance on many of the various collection methods have been reported previously primary issues that should be addressed in a study plan.

~~9.4 *Study Plan Considerations:*~~

~~9.4.1 *Definition of the Study Area and Study Site:*~~

9.4.1.1 Monitoring and assessment studies are performed for a variety of reasons (ITFM, 1995 (9, 10)(13)) and sediment assessment studies can serve many different purposes. Developing an appropriated sampling plan is one of the most important steps in Table 2. All monitoring and assessment studies. The sampling plan, including definition of the site (a study area that can be comprised of multiple sampling stations) and sampling design, will be a product of the general study

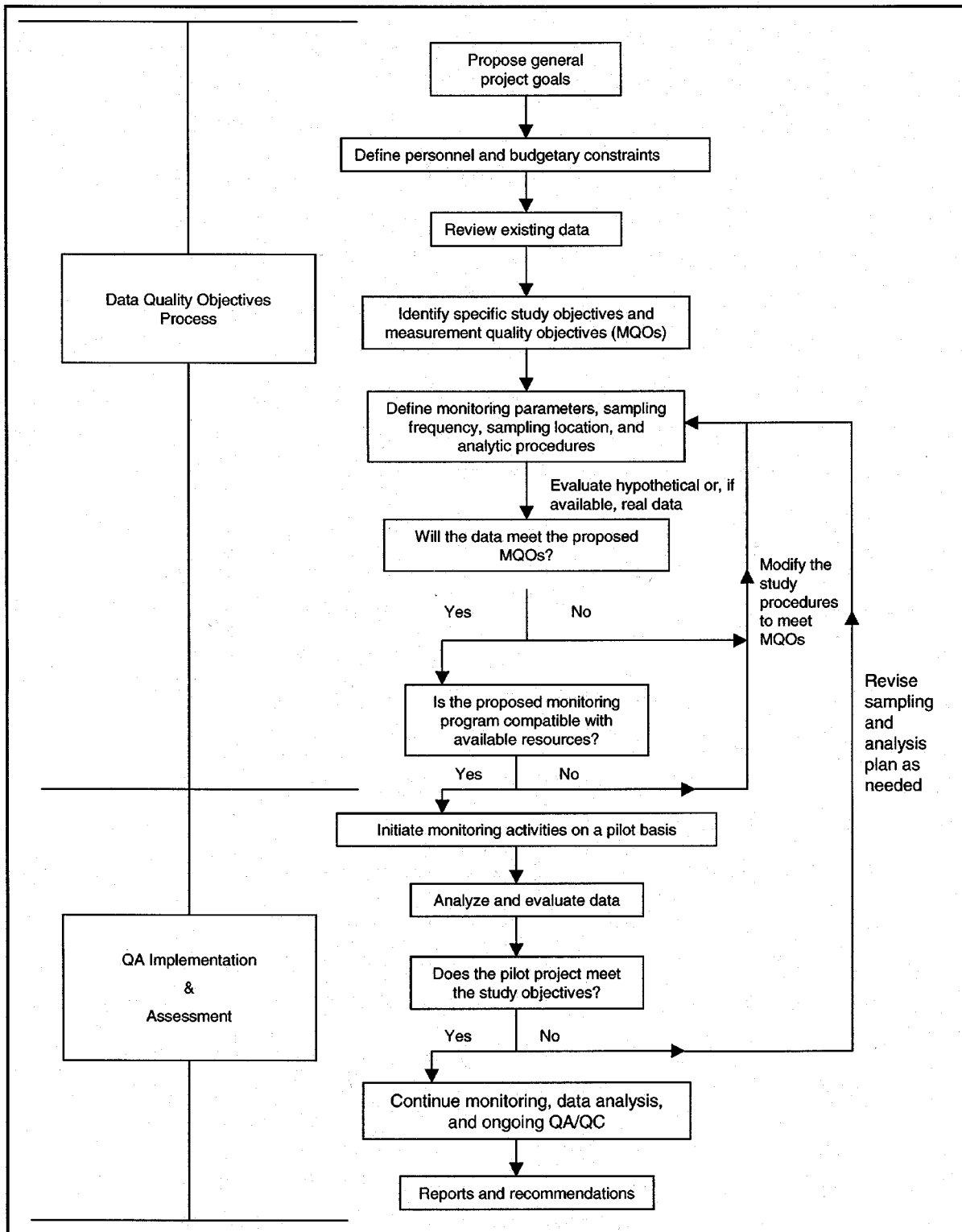


FIG. 1 Flow Chart Summarizing the Process that Should Be Implemented in Designing and Performing a Monitoring Study (modified from MacDonald et al. (1991 (10)); USEPA 2001 (1))

objectives Fig. 1. Station location, selection, and sampling methods ~~disturb~~ will necessarily follow from the study design. Ultimately, the study plan should control extraneous sources of variability or error to the extent possible so that data are appropriately representative of the sediment quality, and fulfill their study objectives.

9.4.1.2 The study area refers to a degree. It is important the body of water that contains the study sampling station(s) to obtain sediments with as little disruption be monitored or assessed, as well as possible when using sediment toxicity evaluations for

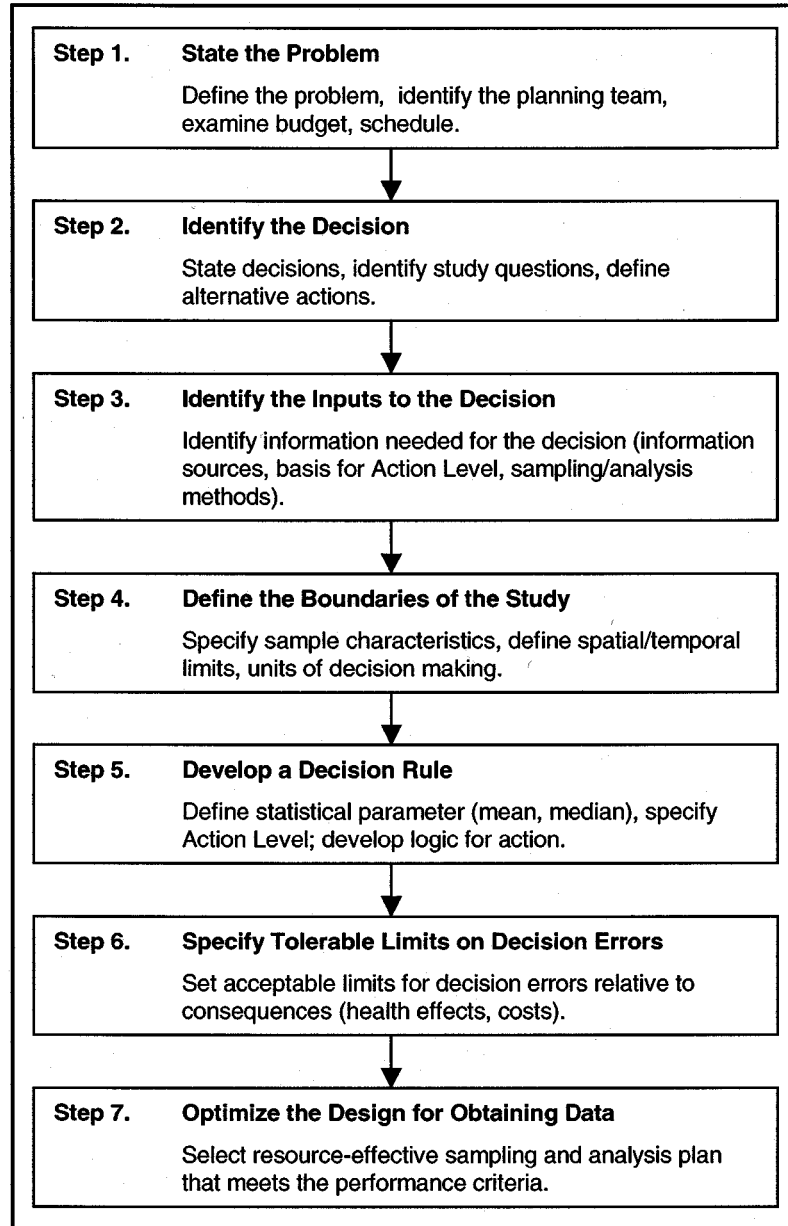


FIG. 2 Flow Chart Summarizing the Data Quality Objectives Process (after USEPA 2000a (12); 2001 (1))

realistic laboratory evaluations adjacent areas (land or water) that might affect or influence the conditions of in the study site. The study site refers to the body of water and associated sediments to be monitored or assessed.

9.4.1.3 The size of the study area will influence the type of sampling is preferred above other design (see 9.5) and site positioning methods for this reason. Choosing the most that are appropriate sediment sampler for a (see 9.8). The boundaries of the study will depend on area need to be clearly defined at the sediment's characteristics, efficiency required, outset and should be outlined on a hydrographic chart or topographic map.

#### 9.4.2 Controlling Sources of Variability :

9.4.2.1 A key factor in effectively designing a sediment quality study objectives. Several references is controlling those sources of variability in which one is not interested (USEPA 2000a,b (12),(14)). There are two major sources of variability that, with proper planning, can be minimized, or at least accounted for, in the various collection devices design process. In statistical terms, the two sources of variability are sampling error and measurement error (USEPA 2000b (9-13). Grab samplers can penetrate sediments(14) ; Solomon et al. 1997 (15)).

9.4.2.2 Sampling error is the error attributable to selecting a certain sampling station that might not be representative of the site or population of sample units. Sampling error is controlled by either: (1) using unbiased methods to 50 cm. Dredge samplers collect select stations if one is performing general monitoring of a given site (USEPA, 2000b (14)) or (2) selecting several



**TABLE 1 2 Sampling Containers, Preservation Requirements, and Holding Times for Use in Sediment Sampling Investigations (adapted from WDEPA, 196, 1975(29): See also Rochon and Chevalier USEPA 2001(160))**

Conventional Sediment Variable	Container <sup>B</sup>	Preservation
Acidity	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Acidity	Total organic carbon (TOC)	Cool, 4°C
Alkalinity	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Alkalinity	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Ammonia	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Ammonia	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Sulfate	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Sulfide	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Sulfide	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Sulfide	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Sulfide	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Nitrate-nitrite	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Nitrate-nitrite	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Nitrite	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Nitrite	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Oil and grease	G	Cool, 4°C
Oil and grease	G	Cool, 4°C
Organic	P, G	Cool, 4°C
<i>Metals<sup>C</sup></i>		
Chromium VI	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Chromium VI	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Mercury	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Mercury	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Metals (except Cr or Hg)	P, G	Cool, 4°C
Metals (org)	P, G	Cool, 4°C
<i>Organic Compounds<sup>C</sup></i>		
<i>Organic compounds<sup>C</sup></i>		
Extractables (including phthalates, aromatic amines, organochlorine pesticides, PCB's, aromatic hydrocarbons, haloethers, chlorinated hydrocarbons, and TCDD)		
Extractables (including phthalates, aromatic amines, organochlorine pesticides, PCB's, aromatic hydrocarbons, haloethers, chlorinated hydrocarbons, and TCDD)		
Identification of appropriate reference sediments for biological tests		
—aromatic hydrocarbons, haloethers, chlorinated hydrocarbons, and TCDD)		
G, PTFE-lined cap	Cool, 4°C	7 days (until extraction) 30 days (after extraction)
Acid Volatile Sulfide (AVS)	Cool, 4°C	Normalization of the concentrations of divalent metal sediments
Extractables (phenols)	G, PTFE-lined cap	Cool, 4°C
Extractables (phenols)	Sediment grain size	Cool, 4°C
Purgables (halocarbons and aromatics)	G, PTFE-lined septum	Cool, 4°C
Purgables (halo-sediment toxic)	G, PTFE-lined septum	Cool, 4°C

TABLE 2.1 Summary of Checklist for the DQO Process (US Sampling Equipment<sup>PA 2001(1)</sup>)

Device	
PTFE or glass tube Shallow wadeable waters or deep waters if SCUBA available. Soft or semi-consolidated deposits:	Preserves layered sediment deposited in laboratory samples. Preferred for evaluation of conditions, even in model. It is important to obtain same as above obtained.
<b>Clearly state the problem: purpose and objectives, available resources, members of the project team:</b> For example, the purpose might be:	
Hand corer with removable PTFE or glass liners	Same as above
Box corer	Same as above
<b>Identify the</b>	Summarize the
Gravity corers, that is, Phleger Corer	Deep lakes and
<b>Young Grab (PTFE or kynar lined modified 0.1-m<sup>2</sup> van Veen)</b>	Lakes and marshes. Lakes that need
<b>Identify inputs to the decision: information and measurements</b>	
Ekman or box dredge	Soft to semi-consolidated in waters of v
PONAR Grab Sampler	<b>Deep lakes, rivers, and clay:</b>
PONAR Grab Sampler	<b>Define the</b>
BMH-53 Piston Corer	Waters of 4 to 6 m deep. semi-consolidated. Adequate for permitting sub
<b>Van Veen Deep lakes, rivers, and estuaries. Useful on sand, silt, or clay.</b>	
<b>Develop a decision rule: define parameters of interest and determine the value of a parameter that</b>	At what would cause exceedance of
BMH-60	Sampling method
<b>Petersen Grab Sampler Deep lakes, rivers, and estuaries. Useful on most turbid rates.</b>	Largely applicable
<b>Specify limits on decision errors:</b> Establish the measurement quality objectives (MQOs) which include determining the level of confidence required from the data; precision, bias, representativeness	Latentiveness
Shipek Grab Sampler	Used primarily in reservoirs; Deep lakes, rivers
<b>Orange-Peel Grab Smith-McIntyre Grab</b>	
<b>Optimize the Grab</b>	Design: Choose select appropriate loss of fines. Location of field objectives.
Scoops, Drag Buckets Various environments, depending on depth and substrate. Inexpensive, easy to handle. Scian before the study begins regarding the sampling design (i.e., the frequency, number, and location)	

<sup>A</sup>Comments represent subjective evaluations.

stations along a spatial gradient if a specific location is being targeted (see 9.5).

9.4.2.3 Measurement error is the degree to which the investigator accurately characterizes the sampling unit or station. Thus, measurement error includes components of natural spatial and temporal variability within the sample unit as well as actual errors of omission or commission by the investigator. Measurement error is controlled by using consistent and comparable methods. To help minimize measurement error, each station should be sampled in the same way within a depth site, using a consistent set of 10-cm procedures and disrupt sediment integrity. Core samplers collect up in the same time frame to minimize confounding sources of variability (see 9.4.3). In analytical laboratory or 2-m when collected toxicity procedures, measurement error is estimated by duplicate determinations on some subset of samples (but not necessarily all). Similarly, in field investigations, some subset of sample units (for example, 10 % of the stations) should be measured more than once to estimate measurement error (see

Replicate and Composite Samples, 9.6.7). Measurement error can be reduced by analyzing multiple observations at each station (for example, multiple grab samples at each sampling station, multiple observations during a season), or ~~gravity. However, vibratory~~ by collecting depth-integrated, or-piston corers can reach depths spatially integrated (composite) samples (see 9.6.7).

9.4.2.4 Optimizing the sampling design requires consideration of ~~10~~ tradeoffs among the procedures used to analyze data. These include, the effect that is considered meaningful, desired power, desired confidence, and resources available for the sampling program (Test Method E 1706). Most studies do not estimate power of their sampling design because this generally requires prior information such as pilot sampling, which entails further resources. One study (Gilfillan et al. 1995 (16)) reported power estimates for a shoreline monitoring program following the Valdez oil spill in Prince William Sound, Alaska. However, these estimates were computed after the sampling took place. It is ~~limited~~ desirable to ~~10~~ core diameters estimate power before sampling is performed to evaluate the credibility of non-significant results (see for example, Appendix C in ~~sandy~~ substrates and ~~20~~ diameters in predominately clay sediments. The efficiency USEPA 2001(1)).

9.4.2.5 Measures of bioaccumulation from sediments depend on the exposure of the organism to the sample selected to represent the sediment concentration of interest. It is important to match as close as possible the sample selected for ~~benthic~~ collections has been compared, and measuring the grab samplers are less efficient collectors than sediment chemistry to the corers in general, but they are easier biology of the organism (Lee 1991(17), Test Method E 1706). For instance, if the organism is a surface deposit feeder, the sediment sample should ~~to handle in rough water, often require fewer personnel, and are obtained more easily~~ (11, 13, 14). ~~Most~~ the extent possible represent the surficial feeding zone of the reported studies used grab samplers, although box corers organism. Likewise if the organism feeds at depth, the sediment sample should represent that feeding zone.

#### 9.4.3 Sampling Using an Index Period (15-17), gravity corers:

9.4.3.1 Most monitoring projects do not have the resources to characterize variability or to assess sediment quality for all seasons. Sampling can be restricted to an index period when biological or toxicological measures are expected to show the greatest response to contamination stress and within-season variability is small (Holland, 1985 (18); Barbour et al. 1999 (19) ). This type of sampling might be especially advantageous for characterizing sediment toxicity, sediment chemistry, and ~~hand~~ collection benthic macroinvertebrate and other biological assemblages (USEPA, 2000c (19-21)(20) ). **In addition, this approach is useful if sediment contamination is related to, or being separated from, high flow events or if influenced by tidal cycles. By sampling overlying waters during both low and high flow conditions or tidal cycles, the relative contribution of each to contaminant can be better assessed, thereby better directing remedial activities, or other watershed improvements.**

9.4.3.2 Projects that sample the same station over multiple years are ~~interepsted~~ in obtaining comparable data with increasing frequency:

9.3 ~~The disadvantages~~ which they can assess changes over time, or following remediation (GLNPO, 1994 (11)). In these cases, index period sampling is especially useful because hydrological regime (and therefore biological processes) is likely to be more similar between similar seasons than among different seasons.

#### 9.5 Sampling Designs:

9.5.1 As mentioned in earlier sections, the type of grab and dredge samplers (Table 2) include sampling design used is a shallow depth function of penetration the study DQOs and more specifically, the presence types of a shock wave that results in loss of questions to be answered by the fine surface sediments. Murray study. A summary of various sampling designs is presented in Fig. 3. Generally, sampling designs fall into two major categories: random (or probabilistic) and Murray targeted (USEPA, 2000b (14)). USEPA (2000b,c (14),(20)) Gilbert (1987 (21)), and Wolfe et al. (1993 (22), however, described a grab sampler usable) present discussions of sampling design issues and information on different sampling designs. Appendix A in rough water that samples the top 1 cm USEPA (2001, (1)) presents hypothetical examples of sediment quality monitoring designs given different objectives or regulatory applications.

#### 9.5.2 Probabilistic and-retains fine materials. Other grab samplers that Random Sampling :

9.5.2.1 Probability-based or random sampling designs avoid bias in the sample ~~surface~~ sediments ~~quantitatively~~ have been described results by Grizzle (23). The depth profile randomly assigning and selecting sampling locations. A probability design requires that all sampling units have a known probability of being selected. Both the USPEA Environmental Monitoring Assessment Program and the NOAA National Status and Trends Program use a probabilistic sampling design to infer regional and national patterns with respect to contamination or biological effects.

9.5.2.2 Stations can be selected on the basis of a truly random scheme or in a systematic way (for example, sample every 10 m along a randomly chosen transect). In simple random sampling, all sampling units have an equal probability of selection. This design is appropriate for estimating means and totals of environmental variables if the population is homogeneous. To apply simple random sampling, it is necessary to identify all potential sampling times or locations, then randomly select individual times or locations for sampling.

9.5.2.3 In grid or systematic sampling, the sampler. Grab first sampling-p location is chosen randomly and all subsequent stations are placed at regular intervals (for example, 50 m apart) throughout the ~~loss~~ study area. Clearly, the number of ~~not only~~ fine sediments (Table 2), but also water-soluble compounds sampling locations could be large if the study area is large and-volatile organic compounds present in one desires "fine-grained" contaminant or toxicological information. Thus, depending on the sediment. Dredge samplers types of analyses desired, such sampling might become expensive unless the study area is relatively small, or the density of stations (that is, how closely spaced are ~~appropriate only~~ the stations) is relatively low. Grid sampling might

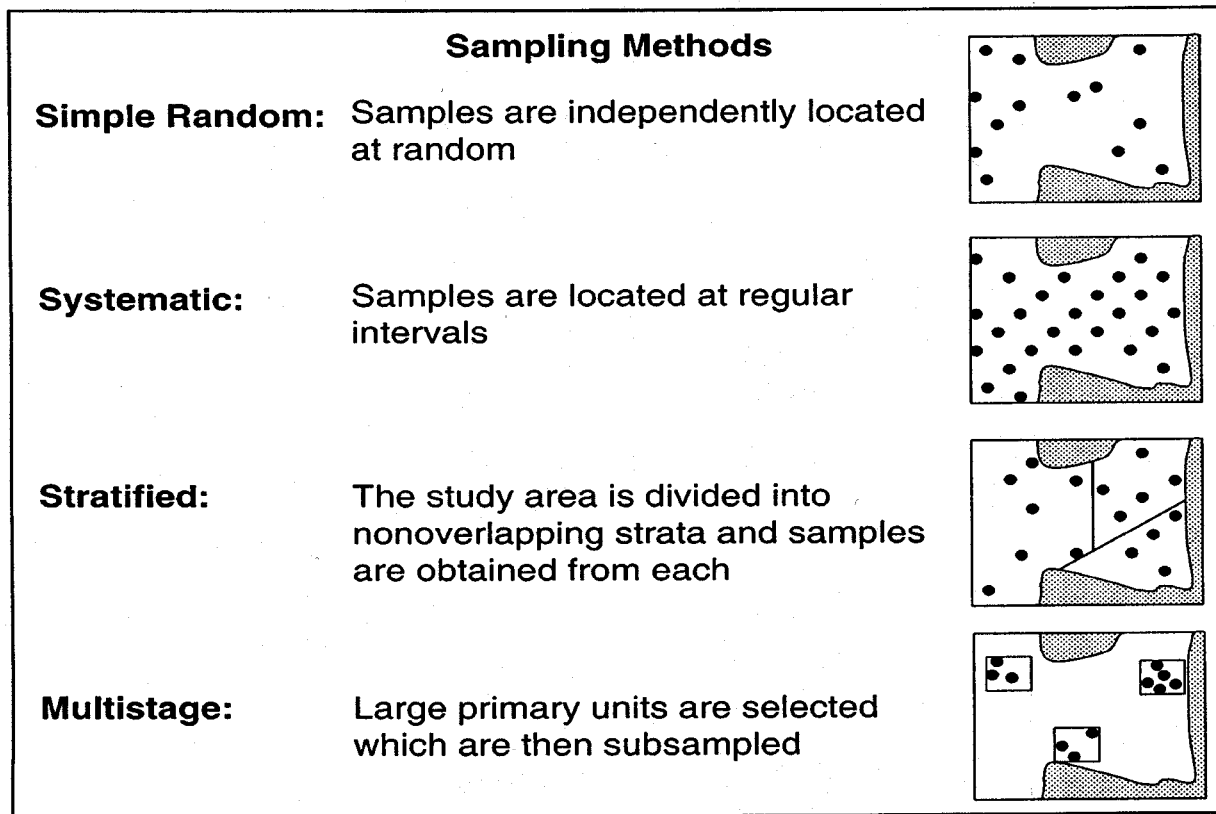


FIG. 3 Description of Various Sampling Methods (adapted from USEPA 2000c (20); 2001 (1))

be effective for detecting previously unknown "hot spots" in a limited study area.

9.5.2.4 In stratified designs, the selection probabilities might differ among strata. Stratified random sampling consists of dividing the target population into non-overlapping parts or subregions (for example, ecoregions, watersheds, or specific dredging or remediation sites) termed strata to obtain a better estimate of the mean or total for the entire population. The information required to delineate the strata and to estimate sampling frequency should either be dredged because they disrupt sediment integrity severely known before sampling using historic data variability, available information and lose surficial fines.

9.4 Studies knowledge of an ecological function, or obtained in a pilot study. Sampling locations are randomly selected from within each of the strata. Stratified random sampling efficiency with various grab samplers have provided useful information for sampling is often used in sediment toxicity and sediment quality evaluations. These data provide information that would indicate sampler efficiency at retaining surficial sediment layers. The modified van Veen monitoring because certain environmental variables can vary by time of day, season, hydrodynamics, or other factors. One disadvantage of using random designs is the possibility of encountering unsamplable stations that were randomly selected by the computer. Such problems result in coastal sampling the need to reposition the vessel to an alternate location (Heimbuch et al. 1995 (23), Strobel et al. 1995 (24)). The Ekman grab) Furthermore, if one is a commonly used sampler for benthic investigations (23). The Ekman's efficiency is limited sampling to less compacted, fine-grained sediments, as are determine the corer samplers. Blomqvist (25) reviewed percent spatial extent of degradation, it might be important to sample beyond the various Ekman modifications and their associated problems and concluded that boundaries of the Ekman grab could be used reliably if caution was used during operation. The most commonly used corer study area to better evaluate the limits of the impacted area.

9.5.2.5 A related design is multistage sampling in which large subareas within the Kajak-Brinkhurst corer. The Petersen, PONAR, and Smith-McIntyre grabs study area are used most often (11) in more resistant sediments. Based first selected (usually on studies of benthic macroinvertebrate populations the sediment corers basis of professional knowledge or previously collected information). Stations are then randomly located within each subarea to yield average or pooled estimates of the most accurate samplers, in most cases followed by variables of interest (for example, concentration of a particular contaminant or acute toxicity to the Ekman grab (11)). The PONAR grab was the most accurate amphipod *Hyaella azteca* for each subarea. This type of sampling is especially useful for statistically comparing variables among specific parts of a study area.

9.5.2.6 Use of random sampling designs might also miss relationships among variables, especially if there is a relationship between an explanatory and a response variable. As an example, estimation of benthic response or contaminant concentration, in relation to a discharge or landfill leachate stream, requires sampling targeted locations or stations around the potential contaminant source, including stations presumably unaffected by the least for compacted sediments (11): source (for example,

Warwick and Clarke, 1991(25)). A comparison simple random selection of sampler precision indicated the van Veen sampler stations is not likely to be capture the least precise; the entire range needed because most precise were stations would likely be relatively removed from the corers and Ekman grab (11):

9.5 Many location of interest.

9.5.3 Targeted Sampling Designs:

9.5.3.1 In targeted (also referred to as judgmental, or model-based) designs, stations are selected based on prior knowledge of other factors, such as salinity, substrate type, and construction or engineering considerations (for example, dredging). The sediment studies conducted in the problems associated with grab Clark Fork River (Pascoe and DalSoglio, 1994 (26); Brumbaugh et al. 1994 (27) ), in which contaminated areas were a focus, used a targeted sampling design.

9.5.3.2 Targeted designs are largely overcome with useful if the corers. The best corers objective of the investigation is to screen an area(s) for the presence or absence of contamination at levels of concern, such as risk-based screening levels, or to compare specific sediment quality against reference conditions or biological guidelines. In general, targeted sampling is appropriate for situations in which any of the following apply (USEPA, 2000b (14)):

(1) The site boundaries are hand-held poly tetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) plastic, high-density polyethylene, glass corers (liners), well defined or large box corers. The corers can maintain the site physically distinct (for egxample, USEPA Superfund or CERCLA site, proposed dredging unit).

(2) Small numbers of the sediment surface while collecting samples will be selected for analysis or characterization.

(3) Information is desired for a sufficient depth. Furthermore, particular condition (for example, “worst case”) or location.

(4) There is reliable historical and physical knowledge about the box core can be sub-cored feature or condition under investigation.

(5) The objective of the investigation is to screen an area(s) for the presence or absence of contamination at levels of concern, such as risk-based screening levels. If such contamination is found, follow-up sampling is likely to involve one or more statistical designs to compare specific sediment quality against reference conditions.

(6) Schedule or budget limitations preclude the possibility of implementing a statistical design.

(7) Experimental testing of a known contaminant gradient to develop or verify testing methods or models (that is, as in evaluations of toxicity tests, Long et al. 1990 (28)).

9.5.3.3 Because targeted sampling designs often can be quickly implemented at a relatively low cost, this type of sampling can often meet schedule and budgetary constraints that cannot be met by implementing a statistical design. In many situations, targeted sampling offers an additional important benefit of providing an appropriate level-of-effort for meeting investigation objectives without excessive use of project resources.

9.5.3.4 Targeted sampling, however, limits the study. Unfortunately, inferences made to the box corer is large stations actually sampled and cumbersome; it analyzed. Extrapolation from those stations to the overall population from which the stations were sampled is thus difficult subject to unknown selection bias. F This bias might be unimportant for programs in which information is needed for a particular condition or gravity cores tend to cause compaction, disrupting the vertical gradients location).

9.6 Measurement Quality Objectives :

9.6.1 As noted in 9.3, a key aspect of the sediment. Compaction DQO process is reduced using the piston corer. Other coring devices specifying measurement quality objectives (MQOs): statements that have been used successfully include describe the percussion corer (26) and vibratory corers (27-29) amount, type, and quality of data needed to address the overall project objectives Table 1.

9.6.2 EA key factor determining the types of MQOs needed in a given project or study is the types of analyses required because these will determine the amount of sample required (see 9.6.5) and how samples are processed (see Section 11). Metals, organic chemicals (including pesticides, PAHs, and PCBs), whole sediment toxicity, and organism bioaccumulations. M of specific target chemicals, are frequently analyzed in many sediment monitoring programs.

9.6.3 A number of ot wher, morke “conventional” parameters, are also often analyzed as well to help interpret chemical, biological, and toxicological data collected in a project (see Section 14). Table 2 summarizes many of the commonly measured conventional parameters and their us; ges in sediment quality studies (WDE, 1995 (29)). It is important that conventional parameters receive as much careful attention, in terms of sampling and sample processing procedures, as do the contaminants or parameters of direct interest. The guidance presented in Sections 10 and 11 provides infor-mation on proper sampling and sample processing procedures to establish that one has appropriate samples for these analyses.

9.6.4 The following sections concentrate on three aspects of MQO development that are generally applicabl-rem to all sediment quality studies, regardless of the only current alternatives. In general, corers collect less particular objectives: sample volume, number of samples, and replication versus composite sampling.

9.6.5 Sample Volume:

9.6.5.1 Before commencing a sampling program, the type and number of analyses and tests should be determined, and the required volume of sediment than grab samplers, which may provide inadequate quantities per sample calculated. Each physicochemical and biological test requires a specific amount of sediment which, for chemical analyses, depends omn the detection limits attainable and extraction efficiency by the analytical procedure and, for biological tes- Sting, depends on the test organisms and method. Typical sediment volume requirements for each end use are summarized in Table 3. Recommendations for

**TABLE 3 Typical Sediment Volume Requirements for Various Analyses per Sample (USEPA 2001(1))**

Sediment Analysis	Minimum Sample Volume
Inorganic chemicals	90 mL
Non-petroleum organic chemicals	230 mL
Other chemical parameters (for example, total organic carbon, moisture content)	300 mL
Particle size	230 mL
Petroleum hydrocarbons <sup>A</sup>	250 to 1000 mL
Acute and chronic whole sediment toxicity tests <sup>B</sup>	1 to 2 L
Bioaccumulation tests <sup>C</sup>	15 L
Benthic macroinvertebrate assessments	8 to 16 L
Pore water extraction	2 L
Elutriate preparation	1 L

<sup>A</sup> The maximum volume (1000 mL) is required only for oil and grease analysis; otherwise, 250 mL is sufficient.

<sup>B</sup> Amount needed per whole sediment test (that is, one species) assuming 8 replicates per sample and test volumes specified in USEPA, 2000d (35).

<sup>C</sup> Based on an average of 3 L of sediment per test chamber and 5 replicates (USEPA, 2000d (35)).

determining the number of samples and sample volume are presented in Table 4.

9.6.5.2 When determining the required sample volume, it is important to increase bow waves (that is, disturbance know all of surface sediments) the required sample analyses (considering adequate replication), and compaction, thus altering it is also useful to know the general characteristics of the sediments being sampled. For example, if interstitial water analyses or elutriate tests are to be conducted, the percent water (or percent dry weight) of the sediment will greatly affect the amount of water extracted. Many non-compacted, depositional sediments have interstitial water contents often ranging from 30 to 70 %. However, there is a low volume of water in these cores provide better information on spatial variation when multiple cores types of sediments.

9.6.5.3 For benthic macroinvertebrate bioassessment analyses, sampling a prescribed area of benthic substrate is at least as important as sampling a given volume of sediment (Annex A1). Macroinvertebrates are often sampled using multiple grab samples within a given station location, typically to a consistent sediment depth (for example, per 10 to 20 cm of sediment; Klemm et al. 1990 (11, 30-34). As shown by Rutledge and Fleegeer(30); GLNPO, 1994 (35)(11); Long et al. 1996 and others, care must(31); USEPA 2000c (20)). More than 6 liters of sediment from each station might be taken necessary in order to have adequate numbers of organisms for analyses, especially in many lakes, estuaries, and large rivers (Barbour et al. 1999 (19)). However, this is very site specific, and should be determined by the field sampling crew. This only applies to whole sediment sampling methods and not to surficial stream methods using methods such as kick-nets and Surber samplers. If the sediment quality triad approach is used (that is, biological, toxicological, and physicochemical analyses performed on samples from the same stations), more than 10 liters of sediment from each station might be required depending on the specific analyses conducted. NOAA routinely collects 7 to 8 liters of sediment at each station for multiple toxicity tests and chemical analyses (Long et al. 1996 (31)).

9.6.6 Number of Samples:

9.6.6.1 The number of samples collected directly affects the representativeness and completeness of the data for purposes of addressing project goals Table 4. As a general rule, a greater number of samples will yield better definition of the areal extent of contamination or toxicity.

**TABLE 4 Recommendations on Determining How Many Samples and How Much Sample Volume Should Be Collected (USEPA 2001(1) )**

The testing laboratory should be consulted to confirm the amount of sediment required for all desired analyses.
The amount of sediment needed from a given site will depend on the number and types of analyses to be performed. If biological, toxicological, and chemical analyses are required (sediment triad approach), then at least 10 L of sediment might be required from each station.
Since sampling events might be expensive and/or difficult to replicate, it is useful to collect extra samples if possible, in the event of problems encountered by the analytical laboratories, failure of performance criteria in assays, or need to verify/validate results.
Consider compositing samples from a given station or across similar station types to reduce the number of samples needed.

9.6.6.2 Accordingly, sample requirements should be determined on a case-by-case basis. The number of samples to be collected will ultimately be an outcome of the questions asked. For example, if one is interested in characterizing effects of a point source or a gradient (for example, effects of certain tributaries or land uses on a lake or estuary), then many samples in a relatively small area might need to be collected and analyzed. If, however, one is interested in screening “hot spots” or locations of high contamination within a watershed or water body, relatively few samples at regularly-spaced locations might be appropriate. In most monitoring and assessment studies, the number of samples to be collected usually results from a compromise between the ideal and the practical. The major practical constraints are the costs of analyses and logistics of sample collection.

9.6.6.3 The major costs associated with the collection of sediment samples are those for travel to the site and for sample analysis. The costs of actual on-site sampling are minimal by comparison. Consequently, it is good practice to collect an excess number of samples, and then a subset equal to the minimum number required is selected for analysis. The archived replicate samples can be used to replace lost samples, for data verification, to rerun analyses yielding questionable results, or for the independent testing of a posteriori hypotheses that might arise from screening the initial data. However, storage of sediments might result in-situ or homogenizing core sections before subsampling. See Ref changes in bioavailability of chemical contaminants (see 11.6) or in exceeding analytical holding times. Therefore, follow-up testing of archived samples should be done cautiously.

9.6.7 *Replicate and Composite Samples* (10) for additional information:

9.6.7.1 *Replicate samples:* As mentioned in the previous section, the number of various core types:

9.7 Core sampling should samples collected and analyzed will always be a compromise between the desire of obtaining high quality data that fully addresses the overall project objectives (MQOs), and the constraints imposed by analytical costs, sampling effort, and study logistics. Therefore, each study needs to find a balance between obtaining information to satisfy the stated DQOs or study goals in a cost-effective manner, and yet have enough confidence in the data to make appropriate decisions (for example, remediation, dredging; Step 3 in the DQO process, Fig. 2). Two different concepts are used to be satisfy this challenge: replication and sample compositing.

9.6.7.2 Replication is used to assess precision of a particular measure and can take many forms depending on the complex integrity type of precision desired. For most studies, analytical replicates are the most frequently used form of replication because most MQOs are concerned with analytical data quality (USEPA 2001(1)). The extent of analytical replication (duplicates) varies with the study DQOs. Performing duplicate analyses on at least 10 % of the samples collected is considered satisfactory for most studies (GLNPO, 1994 (11) ; USEPA/USACE, 1991(32); PSEP, 1997a (33); USEPA/USACE, 1998 (34)). An MQO of less than 20 to 30 % relative percent difference (RPD) is commonly used for analytical replicates depending on the analyte.

9.6.7.3 Field replicates can provide useful information on the spatial distribution of contaminants at a station and the heterogeneity of sediment quality within a site. Furthermore, field replicates provide true replication at a station (analytical replicates and split samples at a station provide a measure of precision for a given sample, not the station) and therefore can be used to statistically compare analyses (for example, toxicity, interstitial waters, microbiological processes, tissue concentration, whole sediment concentration) across stations.

9.6.7.4 Results of field replicate analysis yield the overall variability or chemical fate. When obtaining cores from shallow waters, one must ensure that precision of both the field and laboratory operations (as well as the variability between the replicate samples themselves, apart from any procedural error). Because field replicate analyses integrate a number of different sources of variability, they might be difficult to interpret. As a result, failure to meet a precision MQO for field replicates might or might not disturb be a cause of concern in terms of the sediments before sampling (36). If core sampling overall study objectives, but would suggest some uncertainty in the data. Many monitoring programs perform field replicates at 10 % of the stations sampled in the study as a quality control procedure. An MQO of less than 30 to 50 % relative percent difference (RPD) is typically used for field replicates depending on the analyte (USEPA 2001(1)). Many regulatory programs (for example, Dredged Disposal Management within the Puget Sound Estuary Program) routinely use 3 to an inability 5 field replicates per station. Appendix C of USEPA (2001 (1)) summarizes statistical considerations in determining the appropriate number of replicate samples given different sampling objectives.

9.6.7.5 Split sample replication is less commonly performed in the field because many investigators find it more useful to penetrate quantify data precision through the use of analytical and field replicates described above. However, split sample replication is frequently used in the laboratory in toxicity and bioaccumulation analyses (USEPA, 2000d (35)) and to verify homogeneity of test material in spiked sediment tests (see 12.4). In the field, samples are commonly split for different types of analyses (for example, highly compacted sediment) toxicity, chemistry, benthos) or for inter-laboratory comparisons rather than to replicate a given sample. This type of sample splitting or subsampling is further discussed in 11.3.

9.6.7.6 *Composite Samples*—A composite sample is one that is formed by combining material from more than one sample or subsample. Because a composite sample is a combination of individual aliquots, it represents an “average” of the characteristics making up the sample. Compositing, therefore, results in a less detailed description of the variability within the site as compared to taking field replicates at each station. However, for characterizing a single station, compositing is generally considered a good way to provide quality data with relatively low uncertainty. Furthermore, many investigators find it useful to average the naturally heterogeneous physicochemical conditions that often exist within a station (or dredging unit, for example), even within a relatively small area (GLNPO, 1994 (11); PSEP, 1997a (33) ). Some investigations have composited 3 to 5 samples from a given location or depth strata (GLNPO, 1994 (11) ).

9.6.7.7 Compositing is also a practical way to control analytical costs while providing information from a large number of stations. For example, with relatively little more sampling effort, five analyses can be performed to characterize a project segment or site by collecting 15 samples and combining sets of three into five composite samples. The increased coverage afforded by taking composite samples might justify the increased time and cost of collecting the extra 10 samples in this case (USEPA/USACE, 1998 (34)). Compositing is also an important way to provide the large sample volumes required for some biological tests and for multiple types of analyses (for example, physical, chemical, toxicity, and benthos). However, compositing is not recommended where combining samples could serve to “dilute” a highly toxic but localized sediment “hot spot” (WDE, 1995 (29); USEPA/USACE, 1998 (34)). Also, samples from stations with very different grain size characteristics or different stratigraphic layers of core samples should not be ~~u~~ composited (see 11.4).

9.7 Site-Specific Considerations for Selecting Sediment Sampling Stations:

9.7.1 Several site-specific factors might ultimately influence the ~~loss~~ appropriate location of ~~fine-grained surficial~~ sediments.

9.8 ~~Subsampling, compositing,~~ sampling stations, both for large-scale monitoring studies, in which general sediment quality status is desired, and for smaller, targeted studies. If a targeted or ~~homogenization of~~ stratified random sampling design is chosen, it might be important to locate sediment depositional and erosional areas to properly identify contaminant distributions. Tables 5 and 6 presents a summary of site-specific factors that should be considered when developing a sampling plan. A more detailed review of such considerations is ~~often necessary,~~ provided by Mudroch and MacKnight (1994 (36)).

9.7.2 Review Available Data—Review of available historical and physical data is important in the ~~optimal methods will depend~~ sample selection process and subsequent data interpretation. Local experts should be consulted to obtain information on site

**TABLE 5 Practical Considerations for Selection of Sampling Stations in Developing a Sampling Plan (USEPA 2001(1))**

Activity	Consideration
Determination of areas where sediment contamination might occur	Hydrologic information: quality and quantity of runoff potential depositional inputs of total suspended solids up-wellings seepage patterns
Determination of depositional and erosional areas	Bathymetric maps and hydrographic charts: water depth zones of erosion, transport, and deposition bathymetry distribution, thickness, and type of sediment velocity and direction of currents sedimentation rates Climatic conditions: prevailing winds seasonal changes in temperature, precipitation, solar radiation, etc. tides, seiches seasonal changes in anthropogenic and natural loadings
Determination of potential sources of contamination	Anthropogenic considerations: location of urban lefts historical changes in land use types, densities, and size of industries location of waste disposal sites location of sewage treatment facilities location of stormwater outfalls and combined sewer overflows location, quantity, and quality of effluents previous monitoring and assessment or geochemical surveys location of dredging and open-water dredged material disposal sites location of historical waste spills
Factors affecting contaminant bioavailability	Geochemical considerations: type of bedrock and soil/sediment chemistry physical and chemical properties of overlying water
Determination of representativeness of samples	area to be characterized volume to be characterized depth to be characterized possible stratification of the deposit to be characterized



**TABLE 6 Recommendations for Positioning of Sampling Stations  
(USEPA 2001 (1))**

Depending on level of accuracy needed, regular calibration of the positioning system by at least two methods might be required to ensure accuracy.

For monitoring and assessment studies of large areas (for example, large lakes or offshore marine environments), where an accuracy of  $\pm 100$  m typically is sufficient, either the Long Range Navigation (LORAN) or Global Positioning System (GPS) system is recommended.

For near-shore areas, or areas where the sampling stations are numerous or located relatively close together, GPS or a microwave system should be used if the required position accuracy is less than 10 m. Where visible or suitable and permanent targets are available, RADAR can be used if the required position accuracy is between 10 and 100 m.

For small water bodies and urban waterfronts, GPS is often capable of giving precise location information. Alternatively, visual angular measurements (for example, sextant) by an experienced operator, a distance line, or taut wire could also provide accurate and precise positioning data.

conditions and the study objectives. Important considerations include the following: loss origin, nature, and degree of contamination. Other potential sources of information include government agency records, municipal archives, harbor commission records, past geochemical analyses, hydrographic surveys, bathymetric maps, and depth profile; changes in chemical speciation by means dredging or disposal history. Potential sources of contamination should be identified and reduction their locations noted on a map or other chemical interactions; chemical equilibrium disruption resulting chart of the proposed study area. It is important that recent hydrographic or bathymetric data be used in volatilization, sorption, identifying representative sampling locations, especially for dredging or other sediment removal projects. The map or chart should also note adjacent land and water uses (for example, fuel docks, storm drains). The quality and age of the available data should be considered, as well as the variability of the data.

#### 9.7.3 Site Inspection:

9.7.3.1 A physical inspection of the site should be performed when developing a study plan in biological activity; order to assess the completeness of mixing; and sampling container contamination. It is advantageous in most studies validity of sediment toxicity the collected historical data, and to subsample identify any significant changes that might have occurred at the inner core site or study area (not contacting (Mudroch and MacKnight, 1994 (36)). A site inspection of the sampler) since this immediate drainage area and upstream watershed might also identify potential stressors (such as erosion), and help determine appropriate sampling gear (such as corer vs. grab samplers and boat type), and sampling logistics.

9.7.3.2 If resources allow, it is useful to perform some screening or pilot sampling and analyses at this stage to further refine the actual sampling design needed. Pilot sampling is particularly helpful in defining appropriate station locations for targeted sampling, or to identify appropriate strata or subareas in stratified or multistage sampling.

#### 9.7.4 Identify Sediment Deposition and Erosional Zones:

9.7.4.1 When study DQOs target sampling to the highest contamination levels or specific subareas of a site, it might be important to consider sediment deposition and sediment erosional zones, since grain size and related physicochemical characteristics (including conventional parameters, such as total organic carbon and acid volatile sulfide, as well as other contaminants), are likely to vary between these two types of zones. Depositional zones typically contain fine-grained sediment deposits which are targeted in some sampling programs because fine-grained sediments tend to have a higher organic carbon content (ained-i are therefore a more likely repository for contaminants) relative to larger sedimentary particle size fractions (for example, sand and gravel; Environment Canada 1994(2), USEPA 2001(1)). However, for some studies such-p as remediation dredging evaluations or USEPA Superfund sites, eroding sediment beds and non-depositional zones might be contaminated by of most concern as these could be a major source of contaminants in the sampler. Subsamples from water column and in organisms USEPA/USACE,(1991 (32)).

9.7.4.2 Various non-disruptive technologies are available to assist in the depositional layer location of concern, for fine-grained sediments ranging from simplistic to more advanced. For example, the top-1 use of a steel rod or 2-em, should PVC pipe can be used in many shallow areas to quickly and easily probe the sediment surface to find coarse (sand, gravel) vs. fine sediments (silt, clay). This technique can not, however, determine sediment grain size at depth. Other more advance methods, including acoustic survey techniques (for example, low frequency echo sounding, seismic reflections) and side-scan sonar used with a nonreactive sampling tool such as a PTFE-lined calibration seep sub-bottom profiler (Wright et al. 1987 (37)-S), can provide useful information on surficial as well as deeper sediment profiles. However, these techniques are frequently of a mixed depth; however, a 2-em sample often limited in their accuracy and have high equipment costs (Guignè et al. 1991 (38) is the most common depth obtained, although depths up to 12 m have been used in some dredging studies. It is advantageous). Sediment Profile Imaging (SPI)

or necessary for some studies to composite or mix single sediment samples (37, 39, 40). Composites usually consist of three to five grab samples. An advantage of composited samples is that they reduce the likelihood of missing a “hot spot” due to site heterogeneity. However, a disadvantage is the loss of information on the spatial variability at the site and reduction of the toxicity of hot spot samples when they are diluted with cleaner samples. This is a more critical issue in the boundary areas of the site contamination, REMOTS can also known as the grey zone. Subsamples are collected with a nonreactive sampling scoop and placed assist in a nonreactive bowl or pan. The composite sample should be mixed until the texture and color appear uniform.

9.9 The assessment identification of in situ sediment toxicity or bioaccumulation is aided by the collection and testing of reference and control samples. For the purposes of this guide, a reference sediment is defined as a whole sediment near an area of contamination used to assess sediment condition exclusive of the material(s) of interest. It should contain characteristics similar to those of the test sediment. Sediment characteristics, such as particle grain size distribution and percent organic carbon, should bracket that of the test sediment. If a wide range of test sediment types exists, the reference sediment characteristics should be substrate type in an intermediate range unless the test species is affected by particle size. The appropriate ASTM guides for marine (Guide E 1367) and freshwater (Guide E 1383) invertebrates should then be consulted to determine the particle size requirements advance of the test species. It is preferable that reference sediments be collected from the same aquatic system field-sampling activities (Germano 1989 (39)); Rhoads and be located close to and have physical, chemical, and biological characteristics similar to those of the test sediment. The reference sediment test results might be analyzed as either a treatment or a control variable, depending on the study objectives. The reference sediment might be toxic in some situations due to naturally occurring chemical, physical, or biological properties. It is important for this reason to also use control sediments in the evaluation of test sediments. A control sediment is defined as a sediment that is essentially free of contamination and is used routinely to assess the acceptability of a test. Control sediments have been used successfully in toxicity evaluations Germano 1982 (40), 1986 (41)).

9.107.4.3 ~~Wh~~Aerial reconnaissance, with or without satellite imagery, might assist in visually identifying depositional zones where clear water conditions exist. However, these methods are not reliable if the water is turbid. Other methods that can be used to locate sediment deposition zones include grab sampling, inspection by divers, or photography using an underwater television camera or remotely operated vehicle (Burton, 1992 (42)).

#### 9.8 Positioning Methods for Locating Sampling Stations:

9.8.1 The most important function of positioning technology is to determine the location of the sampling station (for example, latitude and longitude), so that the user can later re-sample to the same position (USEPA, 1987 (43)). Knowing the precise location of sampling stations is also important to determine if the area(s) of interest have been sampled. There are a variety of navigation or position-fixing systems available, including optical or line-of-site techniques, electronic positioning systems, and satellite positioning systems. Global Positioning System (GPS) is generally regarded as the positioning technique of choice as it is accurate, readily available, and often less expensive than many other comparably sophisticated systems. Given the removal of selective availability of satellite data by the U.S. military, GPS is now capable of high accuracy positioning (1 to 10 m).

9.8.2 Regardless of the type of system selected, calibration of the system should be done using at least two of these methods to determine accuracy, particularly for stations that may be resampled. At each sampling station, a fathometer or meter wheel can be used to determine the sampling depth. This will help to establish that the water is the desired depth and the bottom is sufficiently horizontal for proper operation of sampling equipment. Ideally, it is best to print out a copy of the ship’s location from the GPS monitor navigation chart, as well as the latitude and longitude, so the sampling station can be placed in a spatial context. Tidal or subsurface currents may push either the vessel or its suspended sampler away from the intended location which can lead to inaccurate sampling location.

#### 9.9 Preparations for Field Sampling :

9.9.1 Proper preparation for any field sampling study is an essential part of Quality Assurance is important to clean the successful project outcome and adherence to the objectives specified in the QAPP. Section 15 further discusses related Quality Assurance/Quality Control procedures that should be used in sediment quality studies.

9.9.2 Before performing field work, characteristics of the site and accessibility of the individual sampling stations should be determined. Pictures of sampling stations both before as well as during sampling are often useful to document that the correct stations were sampled, and to document weather and water conditions during sampling. Adequate reconnaissance of stations before sampling is also valuable for preparing against potential sampling hazards or unforeseen difficulties. Such a reconnaissance can also help determine the necessary time needed to perform the desired sampling (that is, time to get from one station to the next).

9.9.3 The appropriate vessel or sampling platform is one of the most important considerations in preparing for field sampling. The vessel should be appropriate for the water body type, and should provide sufficient space and facilities to allow collection, any on-board manipulation, and storage of samples. Ice chests or refrigeration might be required for sample storage, depending on the time course of the operation. The vessel should provide space for storage of decontamination materials, as well as clean sampling gear and containers to minimize contamination associated with normal vessel operations. Space for personal safety equipment is also required.

9.9.4 Additionally, the vessel should be equipped with sufficient winch power and cable strength to handle the weight of the sampling equipment, taking into account the additional suction pressure associated with extraction of the sediments. Large sampling devices typically weigh between 50 and 400 kg empty, and when filled with wet sediment might weigh from 125 to over 500 kg.

9.9.5 Care should be taken in operating the vessel to minimize disturbances of the sediment to be sampled as well as sampling equipment. This would include physical disturbance through propeller action and chemical contamination from engines or stack emissions. For example, Page et al. (1995 a,b (44),(45)) reported that they positioned the ships' stern into the wind to prevent stack gases from blowing onto sampling equipment during deployment, recovery, and subsampling of sediments in Prince William Sound, Alaska.

9.9.6 The sampling plan and projected time schedule should be posted for view by all personnel. The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of all participants involved with the preparation and execution of the sampling program should be available to all participants, and the duties and responsibilities of each participant clearly documented. The study supervisor should determine that the appropriate personnel clearly understand their role and are capable of carrying out their assigned responsibilities and duties. Contingency planning should address the need for backup personnel in the event of accident or illness.

9.9.7 A variety of sampling and sample handling equipment and supplies are often needed in sediment monitoring studies. Besides the actual samplers themselves (for example, grab or core device to be used), equipment is needed to remove and process the samples such as spatulas, scoops, pans or buckets, and gloves. If it is important to maintain anoxic conditions of the sample, a glove box and inert gas source (for example, nitrogen) is needed. Sample storage and transport equipment and supplies need to be available as well. These include refrigeration, ice chests, dry ice or ice, insulation material to stabilize samples in transport, custody seals, and shipping air bills.

9.9.8 The reagents for cleaning, operating, or calibrating equipment, or for collecting, preserving or processing samples should be handled by appropriately qualified personnel and the appropriate data for health and safety (for example, Material Safety Data Sheets) should be available. Standard operating procedures (including QA/QC requirements) should be readily accessible at all times, to facilitate the proper and safe operation of equipment. Data forms and log books should be prepared in advance so that field notes and data can be quickly and efficiently recorded. Extra forms should be available in the event of a mishap or loss. These forms and books should be waterproof and tear resistant. Under certain circumstances, audio or audio/video recordings might prove valuable.

9.9.9 All equipment used to collect and handle samples should be cleaned and all parts examined to facilitate proper functioning before going into the field. A repair kit should accompany each major piece of equipment in case of equipment failure or loss of removable parts. Backup equipment and sampling gear should be available.

9.9.10 Storage, transport, and sample containers, including extra containers, should be available in the event of loss or breakage (see 11.2 for more information on appropriate containers). These containers should be pre-cleaned and labeled appropriately (that is, with a waterproof adhesive label to which the appropriate data can be added, using an indelible ink pen capable of writing on wet surfaces). The containers should have lids that are fastened securely, and if the samples are collected for legal purposes, they should be transported to and from the field in a locked container with custody seals secured on the lids. Samples to be frozen before analyses should not be filled to the very top of the container. Leave at least 10 % headspace to accommodate expansion during freezing (laying glass jars on their side during freezing may help to reduce the chance of the container breaking during freezing). Whether for legal purposes or not, all samples should be accompanied by a chain-of-custody form that documents field samples to be submitted for analyses (see Section 7 15). Transport supplies also include shipping air bills and addresses. Whole-sediment sediment samples should never be frozen for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing (Test Method E 1706 and Guide E 1688).

9.9.11 A sample-inventory log and a sample-tracking log should be prepared in advance of sampling. A single person should be responsible for these logs who will track the samples from the time they are collected until they are analyzed and disposed of or archived.

## **10. Collection of Whole Sediment Samples**

### *10.1 General Procedures:*

10.1.1 Most sediment collection devices are designed to isolate and retrieve a specified volume and surface area of sediment, from a required depth below the sediment surface, with minimal disruption of the integrity of the sample and no contamination of the sample. Maintaining the integrity of the collected sediment, for the purposes of the measurements intended, is a primary concern in most studies because any disruption of the sediment structure changes its physicochemical and biological characteristics, thereby influencing the bioavailability of contaminants and the potential toxicity of the sediment. This section discusses the factors to be considered in selecting a sediment collection device and minimizing disruption of sediment samples. A variety of samplers are described (Annex A1), and recommendations are made regarding their use in different situations.

10.1.2 Figs. 4 and 5 provide suggested grab and core samplers based on site factors (such as depth and particle size), and sampling requirements (such as sample depth and volume of sample needed).

10.1.3 The planned mode of access to the sampling area (for example, by water, over land or ice, or from the air) plays an important role in the selection of sampling gear. If the sampling gear needs to be transported to a remote area or shipped by air, its weight and volume might should be taken into account. It is often the case that a specific vessel, having a fixed lifting capacity based on the configuration of its winch, crane, boom, A-frame, or other support equipment, is the only one available for use. This will affect the type of sampling equipment that can be safely operated from that vessel.

10.1.4 Many samplers are capable of recovering a relatively undisturbed sample in soft, fine-grained sediments, but fewer are suitable for sampling harder sediments containing significant quantities of sand, gravel, firm clay, or till (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995

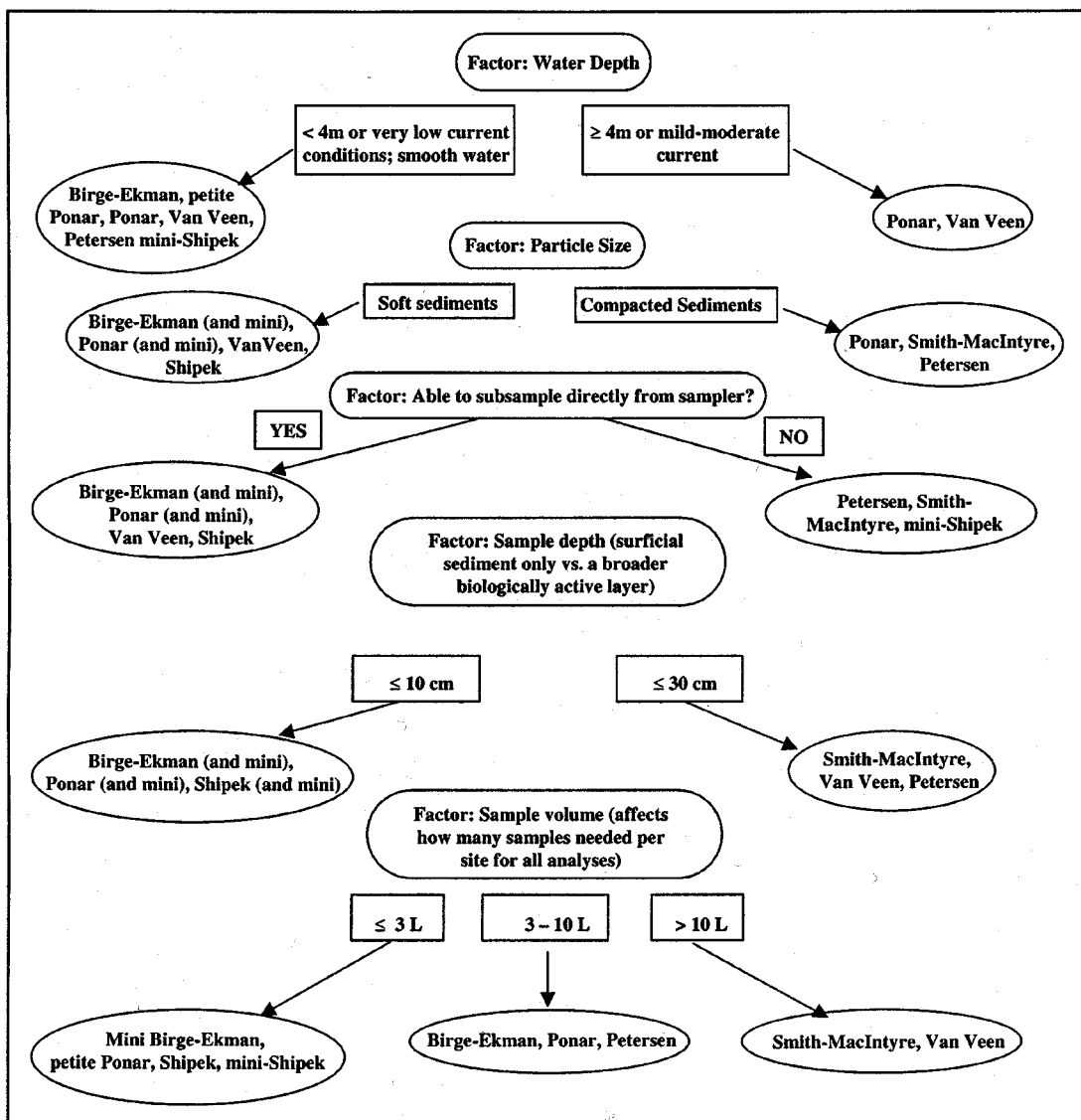


FIG. 4 Flowchart for Selecting Appropriate Grab Samplers Based on Site Specific or Design Factors (USEPA 2001 (1))

(46) . One of the most important factors in determining the appropriate sampling device for the study are DQOs. Many monitoring programs, such as the USEPA Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP) and the NOAA National Status and Trends program, are primarily interested in characterizing recent environmental impacts in lakes, estuaries, and coastal waters, and therefore sample surface sediments (for example, Long et al. 1996 (31)). Other programs (for example, dredged material characterization studies conducted for USEPA and the US Army Corps of Engineers), are concerned with the vertical distribution of contaminants in sediment to be dredged and therefore seek to characterize a sediment column (USEPA/USACE, 1991(32), 1998 (34)). Each of these applications might use different sampling devices.

10.1.5 Related to study objectives, another important factor in selecting a sampler is desired depth of sediment penetration. For monitoring and assessment studies where historical contamination is not the focus, the upper 10 to 15 cm is typically the horizon of interest. For example, Test Method E 1706 states sediment should be collected from a depth that will represent expected exposure. Generally, these are the most recently deposited sediments, and most epifaunal and infaunal organisms are found in this horizon. To minimize disturbance of the upper layer during sampling, a minimum penetration depth of 6 to 8 cm is suggested, with a penetration depth of 10 to 15 cm being preferred. However, if sediment contamination is being related to organism exposures (for example, benthic macroinvertebrates or fish) then more precise sampling of sediment depths might be needed, such as with a core sampler. The life history and feeding habits of the organisms (receptors) of concern should be considered. For example, some organisms (for example, shrimp, rotifers) might be epibenthic and are only exposed to surficial sediments (for example, 0 to 1 cm), while others (for example, amphipods, polychaetes) that are infaunal irrigators might receive their primary exposure from sediments that are several centimeters in depth. Relating contaminant levels that occur in sediment layers where resident organisms are not exposed might produce incorrect conclusions (Lee 1991 (17)).

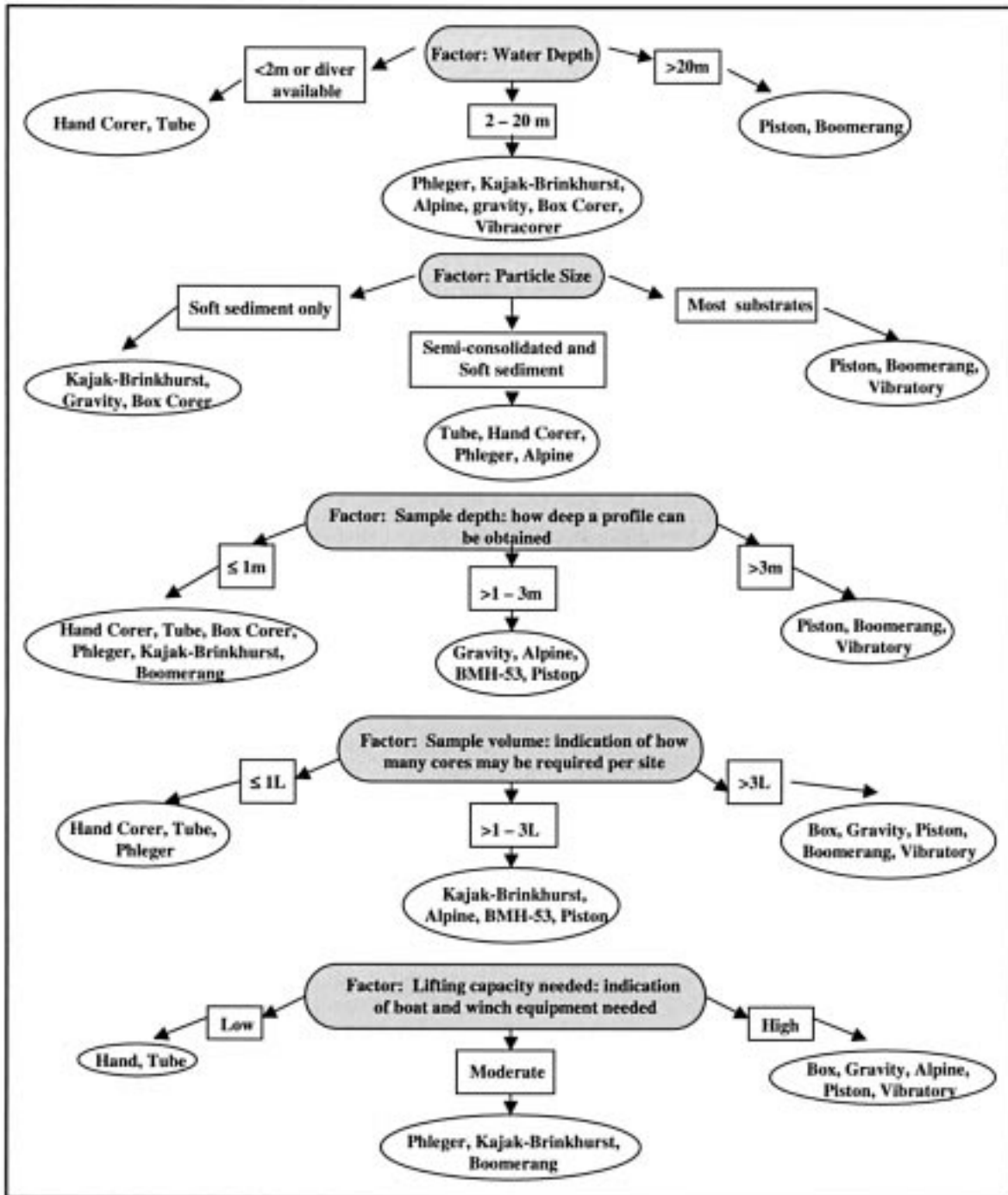


FIG. 5 Flowchart for Selecting Appropriate Core Samplers Based on Site-specific Factors (USEPA 2001 (1))

10.1.6 Sampling of the surface layer provides information on the horizontal distribution of parameters or properties of interest for the most recently deposited material. Information obtained from analysis of surface sediments can be used, for example, to map the distribution of a chemical contaminant in sediments across a specific body of water (for example, lake, embayment, estuary). A sediment column, including both the surface sediment layer and the sediment underneath this layer, is collected to study historical changes in parameters of interest (as revealed through changes in their vertical distribution), and to characterize sediment quality with depth.

10.1.7 Once study objectives and the general type of sampler have been identified, a specific sampler is selected based on knowledge of the bathymetry and areal distribution of physically different sediment types at the sampling site. Therefore, this information should be gathered during the initial planning stage of the sample collection effort (see 9.7.2).

10.1.8 The quantity of sediment to be collected at each sampling station may also be an important consideration in the selection

of a sampling device (see also 9.6.6). The required quantity of sediment typically depends on the number and type of physicochemical and biological tests to be carried out. Table 3 provides a summary of typical sediment volumes needed for different analyses.

10.1.9 Regardless of the type of sampler used, it is important to follow the standard operating procedures specific to each device. Before retrieving the sample, the outside of the sampling device should be carefully rinsed with water from the sampling station. Between each sampling event, the sampling device should be cleaned, inside and out, by dipping the sampler into and out of the water rapidly or by washing with water from the location being sampled. More rigorous between-sample cleaning of the sampler (for example, chemical decontamination or washing with soap) might be required, depending on the nature of the investigation (see 10.5).

10.1.10 To minimize cross-contamination of samples and to reduce the amount of equipment decontamination required, it might be prudent to sample reference stations (that is, relatively clean stations) first, followed by test stations. If certain stations are known to be heavily contaminated, it might be prudent to sample those stations last when sampling many locations at one time.

#### 10.2 *Types of Sediment Samplers :*

10.2.1 There are three main types of sediment sampling devices: grab samplers, core samplers, and dredge samplers. Grab samplers (Annex A1) are typically used to collect surficial sediments for the assessment of the horizontal distribution of sediment characteristics. Core samplers (Annex A1) are typically used to sample thick sediment deposits, or to collect sediment profiles for the determination of the vertical distribution of sediment characteristics or to characterize the entire sediment column. Dredge samplers are used primarily to collect benthos (Annex A1). Dredges cause disruption of sediment and pore water integrity, as well as loss of fine-grained sediments. For these reasons, only grab and core samplers are recommended for sediment physicochemistry or toxicity evaluations. Since many grab samplers are appropriate for collecting benthos as well (Klemm et al. 1990 (30) and Guide D 4387), grab samplers are likely to be more useful than dredges in sediment quality assessments. Therefore, dredges are not considered further in the following sections.

10.2.2 Advantages and disadvantages of various grab and core samplers are summarized in Tables A1.1-A1.4 in Annex A1 and are discussed briefly in the following sections. Figs. 4 and 5 and Table 7 provide recommendations regarding the type of sampler that would be appropriate given different study objectives. For many study objectives either cores or grab samplers can be used, however, in practice, one will often be preferred over the other depending on other constraints such as amount of sample required for analyses and equipment availability.

**TABLE 7 Recommendations for Selecting Appropriate Sediment Sampling Devices Based on the Study Objectives (USEPA 2001 (1))**

Grab or core samplers are preferred over dredges for collecting surficial sediments for physicochemical or toxicity analyses. Dredges might be acceptable for collecting macroinvertebrates.

Grab samplers are recommended for surficial sediment analyses where accurate resolution of surficial sediment depths is not necessary. Core samplers are recommended for: (a) assessments requiring accurate surficial sediment depth resolution, (b) historical sediment analyses, (c) detailed sediment quality studies of vertical sediment profiles, to characterize sediment quality at depth, (d) when characterizing thick sediment deposits (such as shoals to be excavated), and/or (e) where it is important to maintain an oxygen-free environment.

In sand, gravel, firm clay, or till sediments, grab samplers might be preferred over core samplers (when only surface material needs to be collected and samples at depth are not necessary) because the latter are often less efficient in these sediment types.

Ponar, VanVeen, or Ekman samplers are commonly used and generally preferred for grab sampling. Ekman samplers, however, are less efficient in deep waters.

The Kajak-Brinkhurst corer is a common core sampler for soft, fine grained sediments where large volumes or deep cores are not needed. The Phleger corer is commonly used for a variety of sediments including peat and plant roots but is not appropriate where large volumes or deep cores are needed.

Box corers are especially recommended for: (a) studies of the sediment-water interface; (b) collecting larger volumes of sediment from a given depth (generally less than one meter depth, however); (c) for in-situ studies involving interstitial water characterization; and (d) collecting subsamples for different analyses from the same station.

Vibracorers are recommended for studies requiring deep cores (> 1 m), or where sediment consists of very compacted or large grained material (for example, gravel).

### 10.2.3 *Grab Samplers:*

10.2.3.1 Grab samplers consist either of a set of jaws that shut when lowered into the surface of the bottom sediment, or a bucket that rotates into the sediment when it reaches the bottom (Annex A1). Grab samplers have the advantages of being relatively easy to handle and operate, readily available, moderately priced, and versatile in terms of the range of substrate types they can effectively sample.

10.2.3.2 Of the grab samplers, the Van Veen, Ponar, and Petersen are the most commonly used. These samplers are effective in most types of surface sediments and in a variety of environments (for example, lakes, rivers, estuaries, and marine waters). In shallow, quiescent water, the Birge-Ekman sampler also provides acceptable samples and allows for relatively nondisruptive sampling. However, this sampler is typically limited to soft sediments. The Van Veen sampler, or the modified Van-Veen (Ted Young), is used in several national and regional estuarine monitoring programs, including the NOAA National Status and Trends Program, the USEPA Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP), and the USEPA National Estuary Program, because it can sample most types of sediment, is less subject to blockage and loss of sample than the Petersen and Ponar samplers, is less susceptible to forming a bow wave during descent, and provides generally high sample integrity (Klemm et al. 1990 (30)). The support frame further enhances the versatility of the VanVeen sampler by allowing the addition of either weights (to increase penetration in compact sediments) or pads (to provide added bearing support in extremely soft sediments). However, this sampler is relatively heavy and requires a power winch to operate safely (GLNPO, 1994 (11)).

10.2.3.3 As shown in Annex A1, grab sampler capacities range from about 0.5 to 75 L. If a sampler does not have sufficient capacity to meet the study plan requirements, additional samples can be collected and composited to obtain the necessary sample volume. Grab samplers penetrate to different depths depending on their size, weight, and the bottom substrate. Heavy, large volume samplers such as the Smith-McIntyre, large Birge-Ekman, Van Veen, and Petersen devices can effectively sample to a depth of 30 cm. These samplers might actually sample sediments that are too deep for certain study objectives (that is, not reflective of recently deposited sediments). Smaller samplers such as the small Birge-Ekman, standard and petite Ponar, and standard Shipek devices can effectively collect sediments to a maximum depth of 10 cm. The mini-Shipek can sample to a depth of 3 cm.

10.2.3.4 Another consideration in choosing a grab sampler is how well it protects the sample from disturbance and washout. Grab samples are prone to washout which results in the loss of surficial, fine grained sediments that are often important from a biological and contaminant standpoint. The Ponar, Ted-Young modified grab, and Van Veen samplers are equipped with mesh screens and rubber flaps to cover the jaws. This design allows water to pass through the samplers during descent, reducing disturbance from bow waves at the sediment-water interface. The rubber flaps also serve to protect the sediment sample from washout during ascent. However, meshed screens on samplers may result in wash out of sample after collection, and rubber flaps may be difficult to decontaminate between samples.

10.2.3.5 The use of small or lightweight samplers, such as the small Birge-Ekman, petite Ponar, and mini-Shipek, can be advantageous because of easy handling, particularly from a small vessel or using only a hand line. However, these samplers should not be used in strong currents or high waves. This is particularly true for the Birge-Ekman sampler, which requires relatively calm conditions for proper performance. Lightweight samplers generally have the disadvantage of being less stable during sediment penetration. They tend to fall to one side due to inadequate or incomplete penetration, resulting in unacceptable samples.

10.2.3.6 In certain very shallow water applications, such as a stream assessment, it might be difficult to use even a lightweight sampler to collect a sample. In these cases, sediment can be collected from depositional areas using a shovel or other hand implement. However, such sampling procedures are discouraged as a general rule and the use of a hand corer or similar device is preferred (see 10.2.4).

10.2.3.7 Fig. 4 summarizes appropriate grab samplers based on two important site factors, depth and sediment particle size. This figure also indicates appropriate grab samplers depending on certain common study constraints such as sample depth and volume desired, and the ability to subsample directly from the sampler (see 11.4 and Guide D 4387). Based on all of these factors, the Ponar or Van Veen samplers are perhaps the most versatile of the grab samplers, hence their common usage in sediment studies.

10.2.3.8 Careful use of grab samplers is required to minimize problems such as loss of fine-grained surface sediments from the bow wave during descent, mixing of sediment layers upon impact, lack of sediment penetration, and loss of sediment from tilting or washout upon ascent (USEPA 2001 (1); Environment Canada, 1994 (2); Baudo, 1990 (145) ; Golterman et al., 1983 (286) ; Plumb,1981 (213)). When deploying a grab sampler, the speed of descent should be controlled, with no "free fall" allowed. In deep waters, a winching system should be used to control both the rate of descent and ascent. A ball-bearing swivel should be used to attach the grab sampler to the cable to minimize twisting during descent. After the sample is collected, the sampling device should be lifted slowly off the bottom, then steadily raised to the surface at a speed of about 30 cm/sec (Environment Canada, 1994 (2)).

### 10.2.4 *Core Samplers:*

10.2.4.1 Core samplers (corers) are used: (1) to obtain sediment samples for geological characterizations and water wash, dating, (2) distilled water rinse; to investigate the historical input of contaminants to aquatic systems and, (3) methanol rinse, (4) methylene chloride rinse; to characterize the depth of contamination at a site. Corers are an essential tool in sediments in which 3-dimensional maps of sediment contamination are necessary. Table A1.2 discusses some of the advantages and (5) site water rinse. Waste solvents disadvantages of common corers.

10.2.4.2 Core devices should be collected used for projects in which it is important to maintain the integrity of the sediment

profile, because these devices are considered to be less disruptive than dredge or grab samplers. Core samplers should also be used where it is important to maintain an oxygen-free environment because:

9.11 They limit oxygen exchange with the air more effectively than grab samplers. Cores should also be used where thick sediment deposits are to be representatively sampled (for example, for dredging projects).

10.2.4.3 One limitation of core samplers is that the volume of any given depth horizon within the profile sample is relatively small. Thus, depending on the number and type of analyses needed, repetitive sampling at a site might be required to obtain the desired quantity of material from a given depth. Some core samplers are prone to “plugging” or “rodding” where the friction of the sediment within the core tube prevents it from passing freely and the core sample is compressed or does not sample to the depth required. This limitation is more likely with smaller diameter core tubes and heavy clay sediments. Except for piston corers and vibracorers, there are few core devices that function efficiently in substrates with significant proportions of sand, gravel, clay, or till.

10.2.4.4 Coring devices are available in various designs, lengths, and diameters (Annex A1). With the obvious exception of hand corers, there are only a few corers that can be operated without a mechanical winch. The more common of these include the standard Kajak-Brinkhurst corer, suitable for sampling soft, fine-grained sediments, and the Phleger corer, suitable for a wider variety of sediment types ranging from soft to sandy, semi-compacted material, as well as peat and plant roots in shallow lakes or marshes (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995 (46)). The Kajak-Brinkhurst corer uses a larger core tube, and therefore recovers a greater quantity of sediment, than the Phleger corer. Both corers can be used with different liner materials including stainless steel and PVC. Stainless steel liners should not be used if trace metal contamination is an issue.

10.2.4.5 Gravity corers are appropriate for recovering up to 3 m long cores from soft, fine-grained sediments. Recent models include stabilizing fins on the upper part of the corer to promote vertical penetration into the sediment, and weights that can be mounted externally to enhance penetration (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995 (46)). A variety of liner materials are available including stainless steel; Lexan®, and PVC. For studies in which metals are a concern, stainless steel liners should not be used.

10.2.4.6 Vibracorers are perhaps the most common, where conditions were specified, commonly used coring device in the United States because they collect deep cores in most types of sediments, yielding excellent sample integrity. Vibracorers are one of the only sampling devices that can reliably collect thick sediment samples (up to 10 m or more). Some programs that rely on vibracorers include the Puget Sound Estuary Program, the USEPA Great Lakes National Program ARCS Program (GLNPO 1994 (11)), and the Dredged Materials Management Program. Note that the vibratory action of a vibracore can lead to vertical transport of fines along the wall of the core tube resulting in smearing of the sample. Additionally, unconsolidated materials can be mixed (for example, recently placed or capped materials). Consequently, vibracoring may not be appropriate in cases where higher resolution sampling is required in “loose” materials.

10.2.4.7 Vibracorers have an electric-powered, mechanical vibrator located at the head end of the corer which applies thousands of vertical and horizontal vibrations per minute to help penetrate the sediment. A core tube and rigid liner (preferably of relatively inert material such as cellulose acetate butyrate) of varying diameter depending on the specific vibrator head used, is inserted into the head and the entire assembly is lowered in the water. Depending on the horsepower of the vibrating head and its weight, a vibracorer can penetrate very compact sediments were usually transported whole, and collect cores up to 6 m long. For example, the ARCS program in the Great Lakes uses a Rossfelder® Model P-4 Vibracorer (Rossfelder Corporation, La Jolla, CA) to collect cores up to 6 m in length; however, this particular model is relatively heavy. Therefore, use of a heavy vibracorer requires a large vessel to maintain balance and provide adequate lift to break the corer out of the sediment and retrieve it (GLNPO, 1994 (43-45),(11); PSEP, 1997a (33)).

10.2.4.8 When deployed properly, box corers can obtain undisturbed sediment samples of excellent quality. The basic box corer consists of a stainless steel box equipped with a frame to add stability and facilitate vertical penetration on low slopes. Box corers should be used in studies of the sediment-water interface or when there is a need to collect larger volumes of sediment from the depth profile. Because of the heavy weight and large size of almost all box corers, they can be operated only from a vessel with a large lifting capacity and sufficient deck space. Sediment inside a box corer can be subsampled by inserting narrow core tubes into the sediment. The tubes should be machine cut so that the opening is square with the tube shaft, and the ends of the tube should be carefully milled to reduce smearing of the sample on the inside surface of the tube and to improve the ease of penetration of the tube. Core tubes are an ideal sampler for obtaining acceptable subsamples for different analyses at a given station. Carlton and Wetzel (1985 (20, 21, 46) containers,(47)) describe a box corer that permits the sediment and transported overlying water to be held intact as a laboratory microcosm under either their original in situ conditions or other laboratory controlled conditions. A box corer was developed that enables horizontal subsampling of the entire sediment volume recovered by the device (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995 (20, 21, 38, 46-51) (46)).

10.2.4.9 Fig. 5 summarizes the core samplers that are appropriate given site factors such as depth and particle size and other study constraints such as sample depth and volume required, and lifting capacity needed to use the sampling device. Given the factors examined for general monitoring studies, the Phleger, Alpine, and Kajak-Brinkhurst corers might be most versatile. For dredged materials evaluations, and projects requiring sediment profile characterizations greater than 3 m in sediment depth, the vibracorer or piston corer are the samplers of choice.

10.2.4.10 Collection of core samples with hand-coring devices should be performed with care to minimize disturbance or compression of sediment during collection. To minimize disruption of the sediment, core samples should be kept as stationary and



vibration-free as possible during transport. These cautions are particularly applicable to cores collected by divers.

10.2.4.11 The speed of descent of coring devices should be controlled, especially during the initial penetration of the sediment, to minimize disturbance of the surface and to minimize compression due to frictional drag from the sides of the core liner (Guide D 4823). In deep waters, winches should be used where necessary to minimize twisting and tilting and to control the rate of both descent and ascent. With the exception of piston corers or vibracorers, which are equipped with their own mechanical impact features, for other corers, only the weight or piston mechanism of the sampler should be used to force it into the sediment. The sampler should be raised to the surface at a steady rate, similar to that described for grab samplers. Where core caps are required, it is essential to quickly and securely cap the core samples when the samples are retrieved. The liner from the core sampler should be carefully removed and kept in a stable position until the samples are processed (see Section 11). If there is little to no overlying water in the tube and the sediments are relatively consolidated, it is not necessary to keep the core sample tubes vertical. If sediment oxidation is a concern (for example, due to potential changes in metal bioavailability or volatile substances in anoxic sediments), then the head space of the core tube should be purged with an inert gas such as nitrogen or argon.

### 10.3 Sample Acceptability:

10.3.1 Only sediments that are correctly collected with grab or core sampling devices should be used for subsequent physicochemical, toxicity, or bioaccumulation testing. Acceptability of grabs can be determined by noting that the samplers were closed when retrieved, are relatively full of sediment (but not over-filled), and do not appear to have lost surficial fines. At shallow stations when multiple composite samples are being taken to retrieve larger sediment volumes, it is not uncommon to drop the dredge into a previous hole. A visual inspection of the sample surface should be done to determine if only surface sediment has been collected. Slight adjustments in location may be necessary if operating with a crane or if using a hand line, moving elsewhere in the boat to operate the sampler. Core samples are acceptable if the core was inserted vertically in the sediment and an adequate depth was sampled.

10.3.2 A sediment sample should be inspected as soon as it is secured. If a collected sample fails to meet any of the conditions listed in the previous paragraph, then the sample might need to be rejected and another sample collected at the station. The location of consecutive attempts should be as close to the original attempt as possible and located in the “upstream” direction of any existing current. Rejected sediment samples should be discarded in a manner that will not affect subsequent samples at that station or other possible sampling stations. Illustrations of acceptable and unacceptable grab samples are provided in Fig. 6.

### 10.4 Equipment Decontamination:

10.4.1 For most sampling applications, site water rinse of equipment in between stations is normally sufficient (PSEP, 1997a (33)). However, if one is sampling many stations, including some that could be heavily contaminated, a site water rinse might not be sufficient to minimize cross-contamination of samples among stations. In these cases, it might be necessary to decontaminate all sampling materials in between stations. This would include the sampling device, scoop, spatula, mixing bowls, and any other utensils that come in contact with sediment samples. See 7.2 for additional detail on cleaning equipment. Alternatively, separate sampling equipment could be used at each station.

10.4.2 If sediment can be collected from the interior of the sampling device, and away from potentially contaminated surfaces of the sampler, it might be adequate to rinse with site water between stations. The interior of the sampler needs to be free of any sediment between sampling stations, and should be either rinsed or physically scrubbed. Particular attention should be paid to corners and seams in the sampling device.

10.4.3 If metals or other inorganic compounds are specifically of concern, sampling and handling equipment should be suspended over a tub and rinsed from the top down with 10 % nitric acid using a pump or squirt bottle (USEPA 1993 (48), 2001(1)). If organic compounds are a specific concern, sampling equipment can be decontaminated using acetone followed by a site water rinse. Wash water from decontamination should be collected and disposed of properly.

### 10.5 Field Measurements and Observations :

10.5.1 Field measurements and observations are important to any sediment collection study, and specific details concerning sample documentation should be included in the study plan.

10.5.2 Measurements and observations should be documented clearly in a bound field logbook (or on pre-printed sample forms). Preferably, a logbook should be dedicated to an individual project. The investigator’s name, project name, project number, and book number (if more than one is required) should be entered on the inside of the front cover of the logbook. All entries should be written in indelible ink, and the date and time of entry recorded. Additionally, each page should be initialed and dated by the investigator. At the end of each day’s activity, or entry of a particular event if appropriate, the investigator should enter their initials. All aspects of sample composition, collection and handling as well as visual observations and field conditions should be documented in the field logbooks at the time of sample collection. Logbook entries should also include any circumstances that potentially affected sampling procedures or any field preparation of samples. Data entries should be thorough enough to allow station relocation and sample tracking. Because field records are the basis for later written reports, language should be objective, factual, and free of personal opinions or other terminology that might appear inappropriate.

10.5.3 In describing characteristics of samples collected, some cautions should be noted. First, polarized glasses are often worn in the field to reduce glare, however, they can also alter color vision. Therefore, visual examination or characterization of samples should be performed without sunglasses (GLNPO, 1994 (11)). Second, descriptions of sediment texture and composition should rely on a texture-by-feel or “ribbon” test in addition to visual determinations (GLNPO, 1994 (11)). In this test, a small piece of

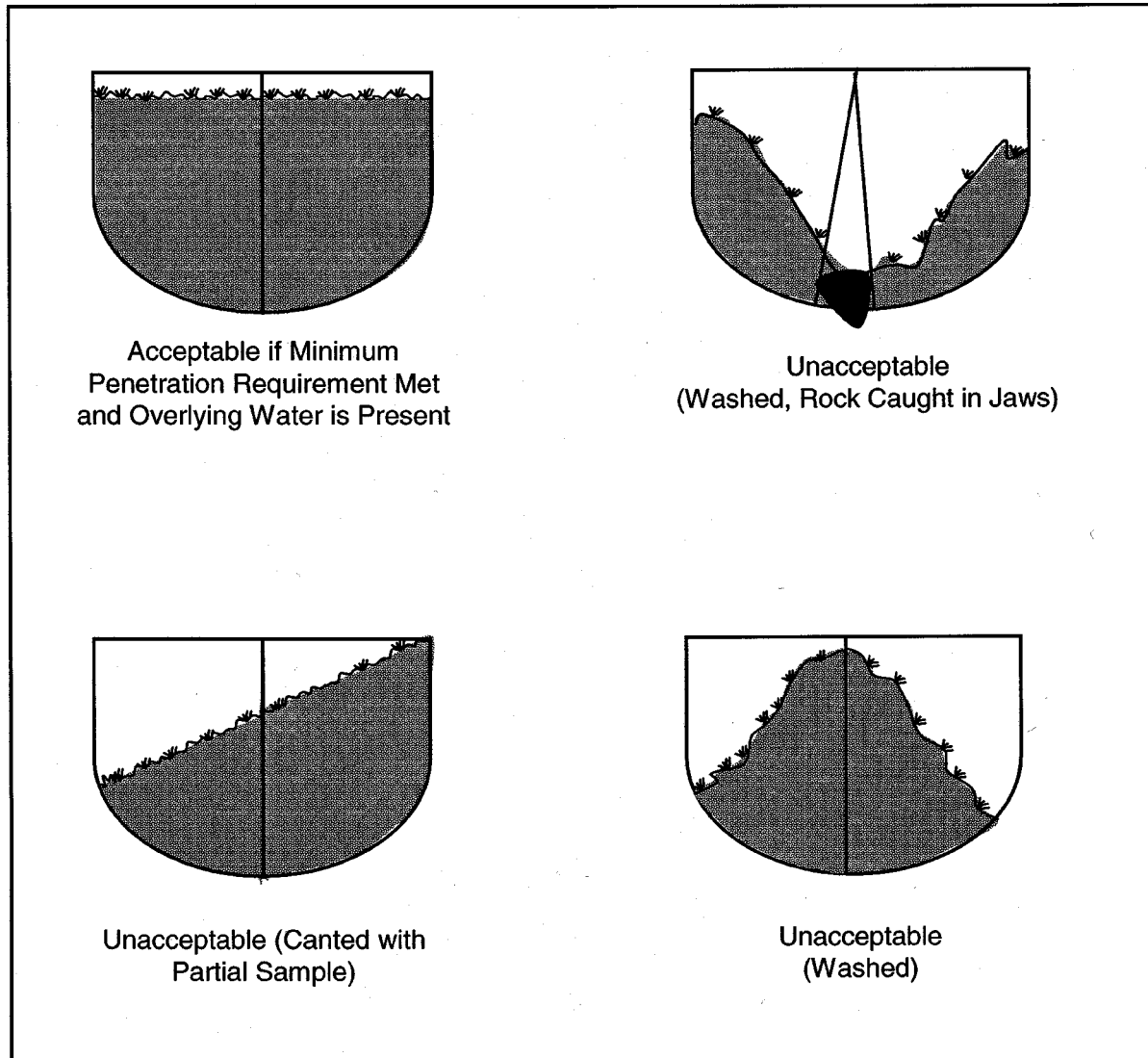


FIG. 6 Illustrations of Acceptable and Unacceptable Grab Samples (USEPA 2001 (1))

suspected clay is rolled between the fingers while wearing protective gloves. If the piece easily rolls into a ribbon it is clay; if it breaks apart, it is silt (GLNPO, 1994 (11)).

10.5.4 *Documentation of Sample Collection*— Documentation of collection and analysis of sediment and pore-water samples requires all the information necessary to: (1) trace a sample from the field to the final result of analysis; (2) describe the sampling and analytical methodology; and (3) describe the QA/QC program (Mudroch and Azcue 1995 (46); Keith, 1993 (49); Table 8). Poor or incomplete documentation of sample collection can compromise the integrity of the sample(s) and thus, the study. In addition, stations that could not, or were not, sampled should be documented with an explanation. Samples should be accompanied by chain-of-custody forms that identify each sample collected and the analyses to be conducted on that sample. Specific guidance on quality assurance procedures regarding sample chain-of-custody is summarized in Section 15.

## 11. Field Sample Processing, Transport, and Storage of Sediments

11.1 The way in which sediment samples are processed, transported, and stored might alter contaminant bioavailability and concentration by introducing contaminants to the sample or by changing the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of the sample. Manipulation processes often change availability of organic compounds because of disruption of the equilibrium with organic carbon in the pore water and sediment system. Similarly, oxidation of anaerobic sediments increases the availability of certain metals (Di Toro et al. 1990 (50); Ankley et al. 1996 (51)). Materials and techniques should be selected to minimize sources of contamination and variation, and sample treatment before testing should be as consistent as possible. A flowchart is presented in Fig. 7 that summarizes common sediment processing procedures discussed in this section as well as issues and objectives relevant to each processing step.

**TABLE 8 Recommendations on Information to be Documented for Each Sample Collected (PSEP 1997a (33), USEPA 2001 (1))**

NOTE—Some geological characterization methods might include an odor evaluation of the sediment as this can provide useful information on physicochemical conditions. However, sediment odor evaluation is potentially dangerous depending on the chemicals present in the sediment (Test Method E 1706) and should therefore be done cautiously, if at all.

Project title, time and date of collection, sample number, replicate number, site identification (for example, name); station number and location (for example, positioning information);

Water depth and the sampling penetration depth;

Details pertaining to unusual events which might have occurred during the operation of the sampler (for example, possible sample contamination, equipment failure, unusual appearance of sediment integrity, control of vertical descent of the sampler, etc.), preservation and storage method, analysis or test to be preformed;

Estimate of quantity of sediment recovered by a grab sampler, or length and appearance of recovered cores;

Description of the sediment including texture and consistency, color, presence of biota or debris, presence of oily sheen, changes in sediment characteristics with depth, and presence/location/thickness of the redox potential discontinuity (RPD) layer (a visual indication of black is often adequate for documenting anoxia);

Photograph of the sample is desirable, especially longitudinally-sectioned cores, to document stratification;

Deviations from approved work plans or SOPs.

## 11.2 Sample Containers:

11.2.1 Any material that is in contact with a field sample has the potential to contaminate the sample or adsorb components from the sample. For example, samples can be contaminated by zinc from glassware, metals from metallic containers, and organic compounds from rubber or plastic materials. The use of appropriate materials, along with appropriate cleaning procedures, can minimize or mitigate interferences from sample containers.

### 11.2.2 Container Material:

11.2.2.1 Equipment and supplies that contact sediments or overlying water should not contain substances that can be leached or dissolved in amounts that adversely affect the test organisms or interfere with chemical or physical analyses. In addition, equipment and supplies that contact sediment or water should be chosen to minimize sorption of test materials from water. Glass, Type 316 stainless steel, nylon, high-density polyethylene, polypropylene, polycarbonate, and fluorocarbon plastics should be used whenever possible to minimize leaching, dissolution, and sorption (Test Method E 1706). Direct contact between sediment samples and the following substances should be avoided: PVC, natural or neoprene rubber, nylon, talcum powder, polystyrene, galvanized metal, brass, copper, lead, other metal materials, soda glass, paper tissues, and painted surfaces. Table 9 summarizes the appropriate types of sampling containers and allowable holding times for various types of contaminants associated with sediments.

11.2.2.2 In general, sediments and pore waters with multiple or unknown chemical types should be stored in ~~which organics~~ containers made from high density polyethylene plastic or polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE or Teflon®) as these materials are least likely to add chemical artifacts or interferences and they are much less fragile than; glass. Samples for organic contaminant analysis should be stored in brown borosilicate glass containers with PTFE lid liners. If volatile compounds will be analyzed, containers should have a septum to minimize escape of volatile gases during storage and analysis. Extra containers should be provided for these analyses in the event that re-analysis of the sample is required. If samples are ~~optimal, while plastic~~ contaminated with photoreactive compounds such as PAHs, exposure to light should be minimized by using brown glass containers or clear containers wrapped tightly with an opaque material (for example, clean aluminum foil). Plastic or acid-rinsed glass containers should be used when the chemicals of concern are heavy metals.

11.2.2.3 In general, anything coming in contact with the sediment during sample collection, processing and subsequent testing should be made of non-contaminating materials. However, in certain cases (for example, in situ testing) it may be necessary to use materials (PVC, fiberglass, etc.) that have a potential to leach contaminants. In such instances it is advisable that such materials be soaked or aged for an extended period of time (for example, 7 days) before use to reduce the amount of contaminants potentially leached from these materials (see 11.2.3.2).

### 11.2.3 Container Preparation:

11.2.3.1 Many vendors have commercially available pre-cleaned containers for a variety of applications. For chemical and toxicological analyses, certified pre-cleaned containers are often a cost-effective way to limit the potential for container

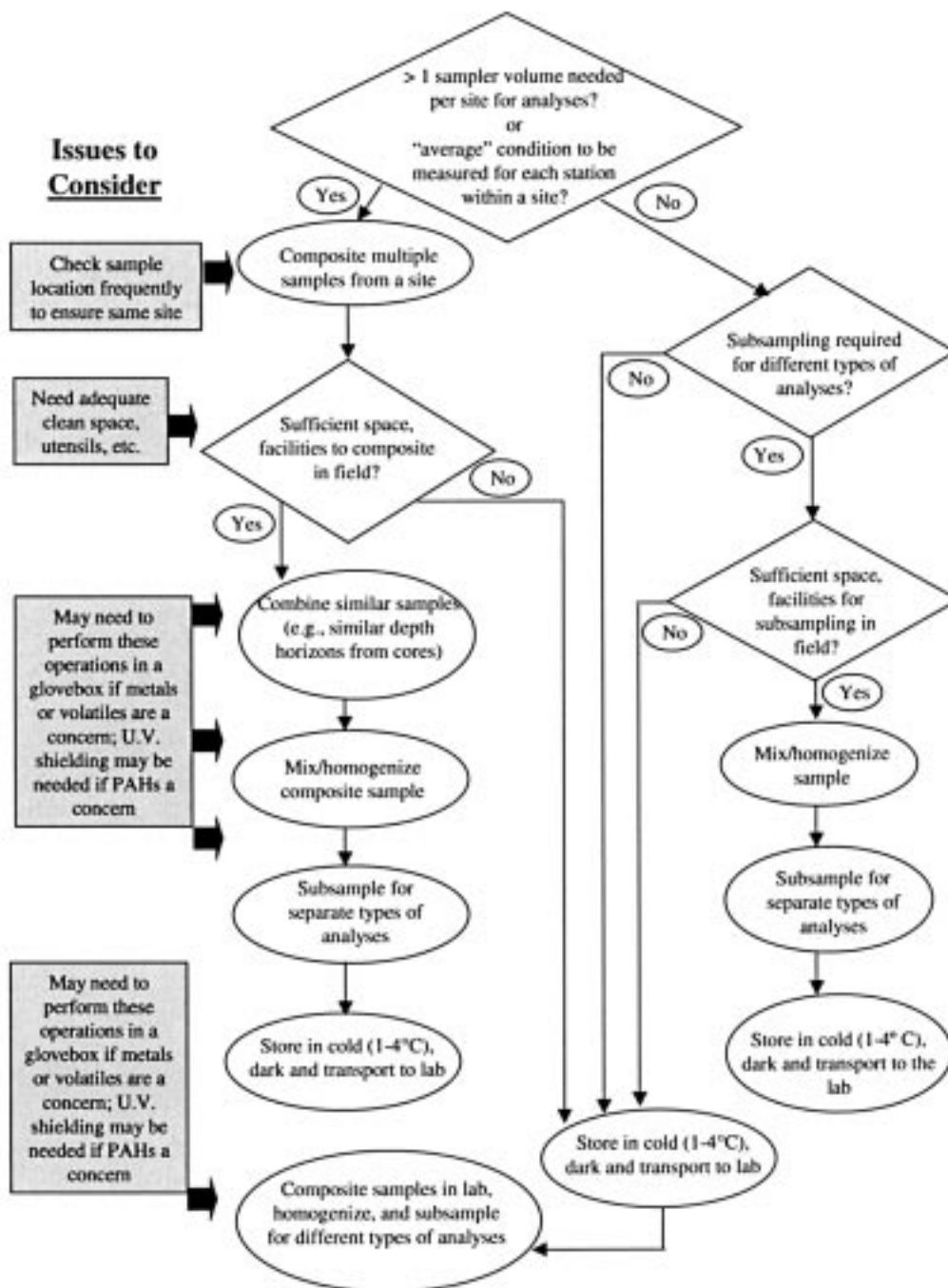


FIG. 7 Flowchart of Suggested Sediment Processing Procedures (USEPA 2001 (1))

contamination of samples. PTFE or high-density polyethylene. Thus, manufacturer-supplied pre-cleaned containers are relatively inert often a prerequisite in QAPPs.

11.2.3.2 If new containers are used, materials should be soaked or aged before use (see 7.2, 12.2.2.3, and Test Method E 1706).

11.2.3.3 If a sample is to be refrigerated, the container should be filled to the brim to reduce oxygen exposure. This is particularly important for volatile compounds (for example, AVS). If a sample is to be frozen, the container should be filled to no more than about 90 % of its volume (about 10 % headspace) to allow for expansion of the sample during freezing. See 11.5 for preservation and storage conditions for various types of analyses. For studies in which it is important to maintain the collected sediment under anoxic conditions (for example, where metal contamination is of concern), the container should be purged with an inert gas (for example, nitrogen) before filling and then again before capping tightly. Sediment samples should never be frozen for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing (Test Method E 1706 and Guide E 1688).

11.2.3.4 All sediment containers should be properly labeled with a waterproof marker before sampling. Containers should be

**TABLE 9 Recommended Sampling Containers, Holding Times, and Storage Conditions for Common Types of Sediment Analyses (USEPA, 1983 (52);1993(48); 2001 (1))**

NOTE—P = Plastic; G = Glass; PTFE = Polytetrafluoroethylene; R = refrigerate; F = freeze

Contaminant	Container	Holding Time	Storage Condition
Ammonia	P,G	28 days	R; F
Sulfate	P,G	28 days	R; F
Sulfide	P,G	28 days	R or NaOH; pH>9
Oil and Grease	G	28 days	HCl, pH<2
Mercury	P,G	6 weeks	H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> ; pH<2; R
Metals (except Cr or Hg)	P,G	6 months	HNO <sub>3</sub> , pH<2; F
Extractable organics (including phthalates, arosamines, organochlorine pesticides, PCBs, aromatics, isophorone, PAHs, haloethers, chlorinated hydrocarbons, and TCDD)	G, PTFE-lined cap	7 days (until extraction) 30 days (after extraction)	R; F
Purgables (halocarbons and aromatics)	G, PTFE-lined septum	14 days	R; F
Pesticides	G, PTFE-lined cap	7 days (until extraction) 30 days (after extraction)	R; F
Sediment Toxicity (acute and chronic)	P, PTFE	2 weeks <sup>A</sup>	R, dark
Bioaccumulation testing	P, PTFE	2 weeks <sup>A</sup>	R, dark

<sup>A</sup> Holding time might be longer depending on the magnitude an type of contaminants present. Test Methods E 1706, E 1367 and Guide E 1688.

labeled on their sides in addition to or instead of labeling the lids. Each label should include, at a minimum, the study title, station location or sample identification, date and time of collection, sample type, and name of collector. Blind sample labeling (that is, a sample code) should be used, along with a sample log that identifies information about each sample (see 9.9) to minimize potential analytical bias. Additional information such as required analyses and any preservative used might also be included on the label although this information is typically recorded on the chain-of-custody form (see 9.9 and 15.6). Labeled containers should be stabilized in an upright position in the transport or storage container (see 11.5, Transport and Storage for further information). Extra containers should be carried on each sampling trip.

### 11.3 Subsampling and Compositing Samples:

11.3.1 The decision to subsample or composite sediment samples within or among stations depends on the purpose and objectives of the study, the nature and heterogeneity of the sediments, the volume of sediment required for analytical or toxicity assessment, and the degree of statistical resolution that is acceptable. Subsampling and compositing might be accomplished in the field, if facilities, space, and equipment are available, or alternatively, in a laboratory setting following sample transport Table 10.

#### 11.3.2 General Procedures:

11.3.2.1 Subsampling is useful for collecting sediment from a specific depth of a core sample, for splitting samples among multiple laboratories, for obtaining replicates within a sample, or for forming a composite sample.

11.3.2.2 Compositing refers to combining aliquots from two or more samples and analyzing the resulting pooled sample (Keith, 1993 (49)). Compositing is often necessary when a relatively large amount of sediment is needed from each sampling site (for instance, to conduct several different physical, chemical types. Additionally, polycarbonate containers have been shown or biological analyses). Compositing might be a practical, cost-effective way to obtain average sediment characteristics for a particular site Table 10, but not to dilute a contaminated sample. Also, if an objective of the study is to define or model physicochemical characteristics of the sediment, it might be important not to composite samples because of model input requirements (EPRI, 1999 (52). However, Moody (53)).

#### 11.3.3 Grab Samples:

11.3.3.1 If a sediment grab sample is to be subsampled in the laboratory, the sample should be released carefully and Lindstrom (53) found directly into a labeled container that all plastics (including PTFE) leached elements is the same shape as the sampler and made of a chemically-inert material (see 11.2 for recommendations on containers). The container needs to be large enough to accommodate the sediment sample and should be preconditioned tightly sealed with a seven-day soaking the air excluded.

11.3.3.2 If the grab sample is to be subsampled in 1:1 HCl, HNO<sub>3</sub>; the field, it is desirable to subsample from the sampler

**TABLE 10 Recommendations for Subsampling or Compositing  
Sediment Samples (USEPA 2001 (1))**

<p><u>Overlying water should be siphoned off, not decanted, from grab samplers prior to subsampling.</u></p> <p><u>All utensils that are used to process samples should be made of inert materials such as Teflon® high quality stainless steel, or HDPE.</u></p> <p><u>Subsamples should be collected away from the sides of the sampler to avoid potential contamination.</u></p> <p><u>Sediment samples should be processed prior to long-term storage, within 72 h (and preferably within 24 h) of collection.</u></p> <p><u>Sufficient sample homogenization, prior to placing in containers, is critical for accurate measurements and correct sediment quality determinations.</u></p> <p><u>If rigorous evaluation of metal contamination is a focus of the study, or if anaerobic conditions need to be maintained for other reasons, it might be necessary to homogenize, subsample, and composite samples in an oxygen-free glovebox or other suitable apparatus.</u></p> <p><u>Similar depth horizons or geologic strata should be subsampled when compositing core samples.</u></p>
--

directly to minimize sediment handling and de-ionized water. Shipping containers associated artifacts. Therefore, the sampler should allow access to the surface of the sample without loss of water or fine-grained sediment (see 10.1 for sampler descriptions). This typically dictates the use of a grab sampler with insulation 1 in. (25.4 mm) bucket covers that are either removable or hinged to allow access to the surface of the sediment sample (for example, Ponar, VanVeen).

11.3.3.3 Before subsampling from the grab sampler, the overlying water should be removed by slow siphoning using a clean tube near one side of the sampler (WDE, 1995 (29); PSEP, 1997a (33)). If the overlying water in thickness kept a sediment sampler is turbid, it should be allowed to settle if possible.

11.3.3.4 The general subsampling and compositing process for grab samples is illustrated in Fig. 8. Subsampling can be performed using a spoon or scoop made of inert, non-contaminating material. Sediment that is in direct contact with the sides of the grab sampler should be excluded as a general precaution against potential contamination from the device. Subsamples may be combined or placed into separate clean, pre-labeled containers. If the sample is to be frozen, it is advisable to leave at 4°C least about 10 % head space in the container to accommodate expansion and avoid breakage. Sediment samples should never be frozen for 21 h, while insulation of 2-in. (51-mm) thickness maintained 4°C toxicity or bioaccumulation testing (Test Method E 1706 and Guide E 1688).

11.3.3.5 There are two alternatives for compositing sediment samples from grab samplers Fig. 8: (1) compositing and homogenizing (mixing) in the field and (2) compositing in the field and homogenizing in the laboratory.

11.3.3.6 In some studies (for example, where metals are the contaminants of concern), it might be necessary to 82-h subsample a grab sample under oxygen-free conditions to minimize oxidative changes. In these cases, a hand-coring device should be used for subsampling. The core should be inserted immediately upon retrieval of the sampler, then removed and placed into a glove box or bag which is flushed with a constant, controlled volume of inert gas. The sediment within the core can then be extruded under oxygen-free conditions into deaerated containers. The presence of oxygen during handling and storage might be relatively unimportant (Brumbaugh et al. 1994 (27)) or very important (Besser et al. 1995 (54)), depending on the sediment characteristics, the contaminants of concern, and the study objectives. A

#### 11.3.4 Core Samples:

11.3.4.1 Subsampling sediment core samples is usually done to focus the assessment on a particular sediment horizon or horizons, or to evaluate historical changes or vertical extent in contamination or sedimentation rates. Whenever subsampling of retrieved sediment cores is required, particularly for analysis of contaminants, the sediment should be extruded from the core liners and subsampled as soon as possible after collection. This can be accomplished in the field if appropriate facilities and equipment are available, or in the laboratory after transport.

11.3.4.2 Systematic subsampling Fig. 9 involves removing the sediment from the core in sections of uniform thickness. Each incremental core section corresponds to a particular sediment depth interval. In remedial dredging and geological applications, longer sections (for example, 25 to 50 cm) are typically used to characterize a site.

11.3.4.3 The depth horizon(s) sampled will depend on the study objectives as well as the nature of the substrate. For toxicological studies, the biologically active layer and sedimentation rates at the site are important factors determining which core sections are sampled. In these studies, subsampling depth intervals may include the 0 to 2 cm layer for recent deposition or greater than the 2-cm layer if the deposition rate is known to be higher, and the 0 to 5 cm or 0 to 15 cm layers for biological activity, depending on resident organisms. Many investigations have project-specific depths corresponding to study requirements, such as dredging depths for navigation or remediation dredging. In many regional or national environmental monitoring programs (for

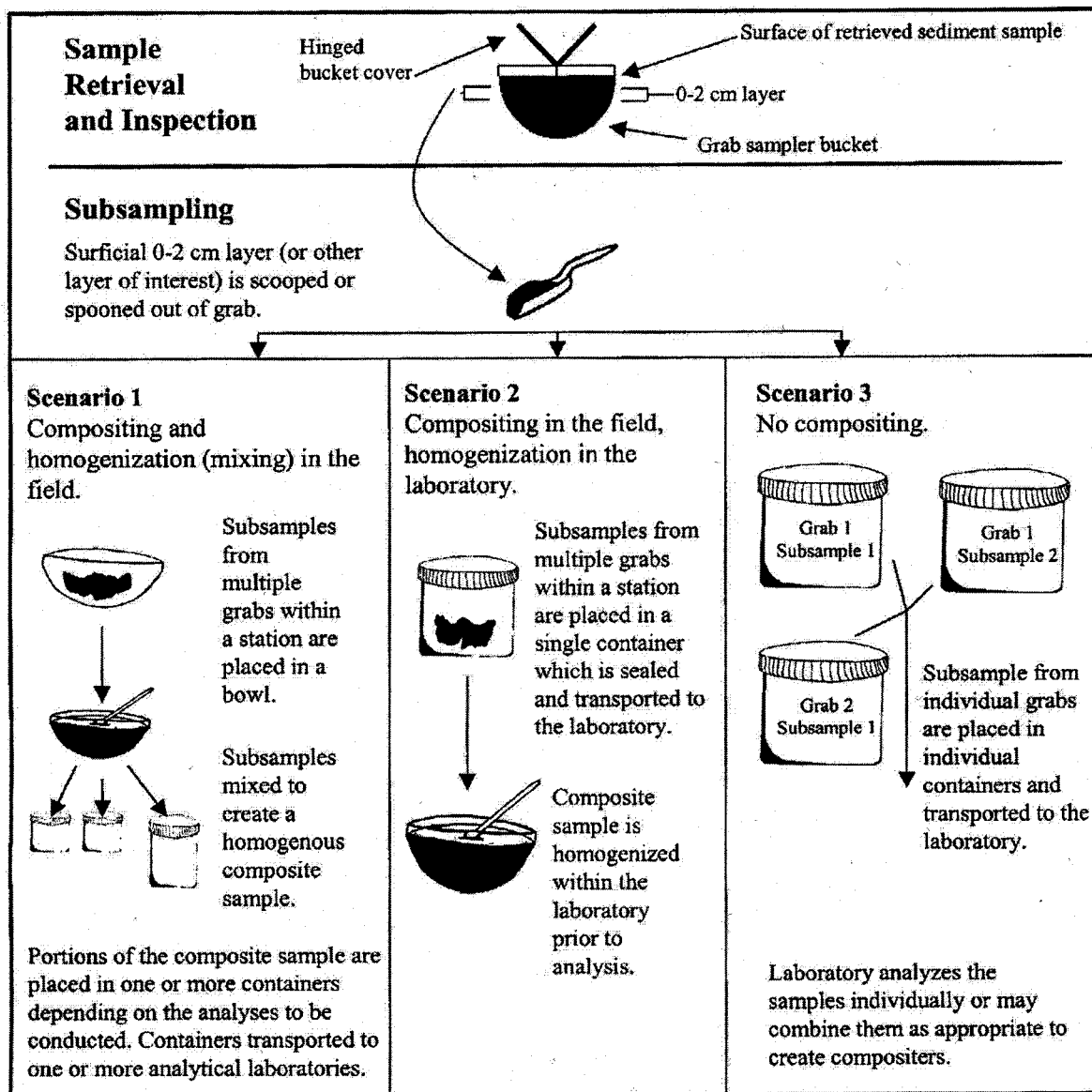


FIG. 8 Alternatives for Subsampling and Compositing Sediment Grab Samples (USEPA 2001(1))

example, USEPA EMAP, NOAA Status and Trends), the uppermost surficial layer is sampled because information regarding chemical analyses on the horizontal distribution of sediment contaminants is desired (USEPA, 2000d (35), Wolfe et al. 1993 (22)).

11.3.4.4 There are various methods for subsampling sediment cores including gradual extrusion, dissection of a core using a jig saw, reciprocating saws, use of a segmented gravity corer, a hand corer, or scoops and spoons. Cutting devices range from stainless steel knives to teflon or nylon string. Note that metal saws frequently generate debris that can contaminate a sample. An electric sheet metal cutter has been used on plastic core liners or aluminum core tubes creating a ribbon of material as opposed to chips left behind with a metal saw (David Moore, MEC Analytical, Carlsbad, CA, personal communication).

11.3.4.5 A piston-type extruder that applies upward pressure on the sediment is available an instrument commonly used to gradually expose a core for sectioning in other guidance documents some monitoring programs where specific sediment depths have been defined a priori (Kemp et al. 1971 (9, 10, 39, 55-57). These criteria (55)). The capped core liner containing the sediment and overlying water is uncapped at the lower end and placed vertically on top of the piston. The top cap is removed and the water is siphoned off to minimize disturbance of the sediment-water interface. The core liner is then pushed slowly down until the surface of the sediment is at the upper end of the liner. Sediment sections are applicable collected by pushing the liner down and cutting the exposed sediment into sections of the desired thickness using a stainless steel or Teflon® cutter (Environment Canada, 1994 (2); Mudroch and Azcue, 1995 (46)). A 1- to 2-mm outer layer of sediment that has been in contact with the plastic or metal liner should be removed and discarded, if possible, to avoid contamination. Each sediment subsample should be placed into a labeled,

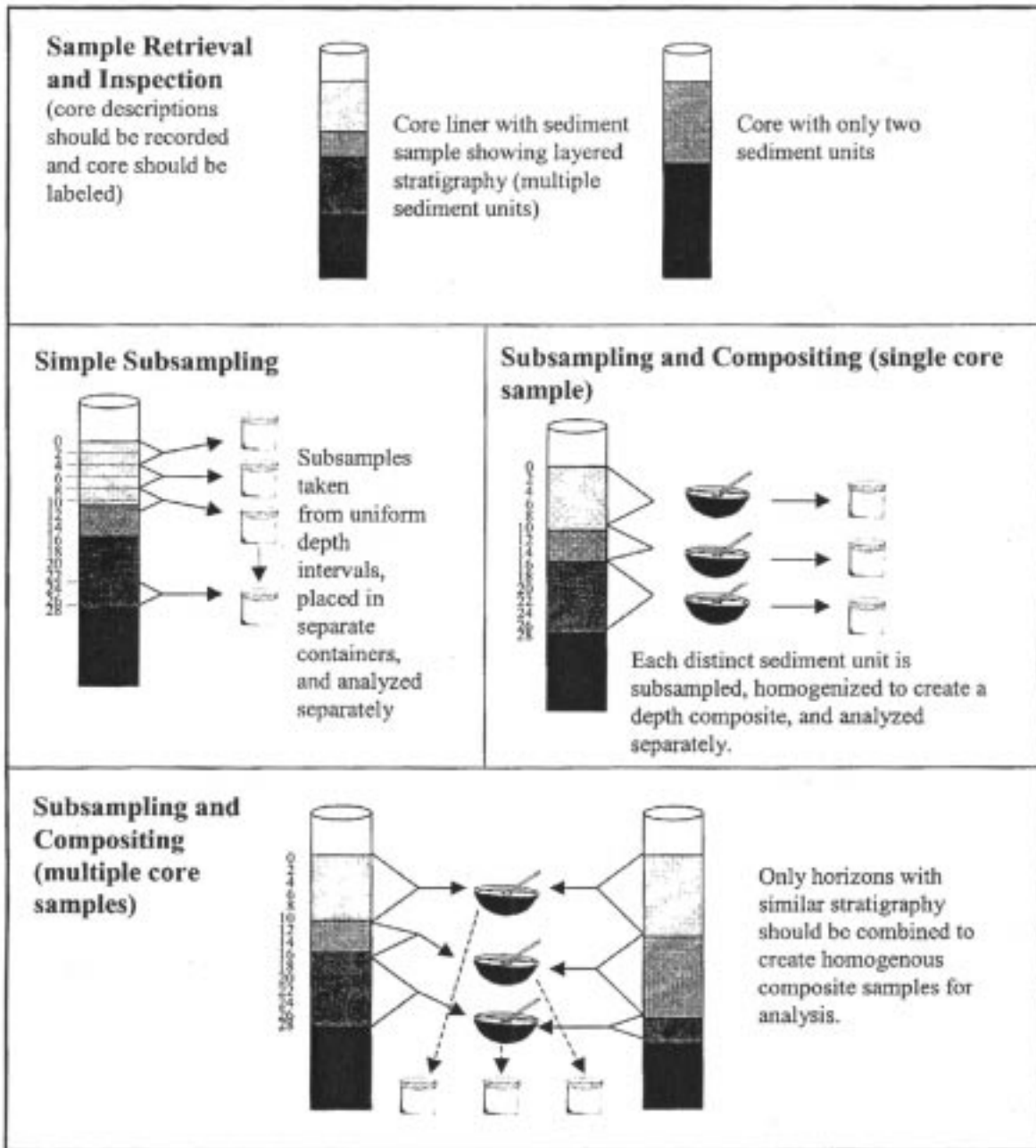


FIG. 9 Alternatives for Subsampling and Compositing Sediment Core Samples (USEPA 2001 (1))

clean, and chemically-inert container, or, if subsamples are being composited, into an appropriately sized mixing bowl. The size of the container should be as close to the volume of the sediment as possible to minimize the head space in the container. If it is desirable to maintain an oxygen-free environment during subsampling, then all handling or manipulations should take place in a glove box or bag filled with an inert gas and modified to accommodate the core liner through an opening (Environment Canada, 1994 (2); Mudroch and MacKnight, 1994 (36)).

11.3.4.6 Cores of more consolidated material can be mounted onto a horizontal U-shaped rail and the liner cut using a saw mounted on a depth-controlling jig. The final cut can then be made with a sharp knife to minimize contamination of the sediment by liner material, and the core itself can be sliced with Teflon® or nylon string. The core then becomes two D-shaped halves that can be easily inspected and subsampled (46). Sediment in contact with the saw blade should not be used for toxicity tests or metals analyses due to potential contamination from the saw blade. Another alternative for sectioning and subsampling is a segmented gravity corer described by Aanderaa Instruments of Victoria, BC, Canada. The core tube of the sampler consists of a series of rings placed on top of one another. Subsampling is carried out by rotating the rings around its other axis so that it cuts sediment layers of similar thickness. This segmented core tube is suitable for sampling fine-grained sediments and allows one person in many cases.



**10. Storage**

10.1 Containers the field to subsample the core into 1-cm sections (Mudroch and Azcue 1995 (46)).

11.3.4.7 Sediment from box-core samples can be effectively subsampled with a small hand corer after the overlying water has been carefully siphoned off and discarded. Hand corers with small inner diameters less than 3 cm tend to compact sediments, so this equipment needs to be used with care. Spoons or scoops have also been used to subsample surface sediments from a box corer (Environment Canada, 1994 (2) ).

11.3.4.8 Like grab samples, core samples may be composited or subsampled in the field or laboratory after evaluating them for storage were generally not specified, although acceptability. Although there might be occasions when it is desirable to composite incremental core depths, only horizons of similar stratigraphy should be composited. Depending on the study objectives and desired sampling resolution, individual horizons within a single core can be homogenized to create one or more “depth composites” for that core, or corresponding horizons from two or more cores might be composited Fig. 9. Composite samples should be homogenized before analysis or testing.

**11.4 Homogenization:**

11.4.1 Homogenization refers to the complete mixing of sediment to obtain consistency of phys-icochemical properties throughout the sample before using in analyses. Homogenization is typically performed on individual samples, as well as on composited samples and can be done either in the transport containers, where specified, field or the laboratory Table 11.

11.4.2 Depending on the objective of the study, unrepresentative materials (for example, twigs, shells, leaves, stones, wood chips and were generally high-density polyethylene sea grass) might be removed and documented before homogenization (see 9.12). Where 12.3 for techniques to remove unrepresentative material). The need for removal of larger matter depends on the analyses to be conducted.

11.4.3 Mixing should be performed as quickly and efficiently as possible, because prolonged mixing can alter the particle-size distribution in a sample and cause oxidation of the sediments (Ditsworth et al. 1990 (56); Stemmer et al. 1990a,b (57), (58)). This can alter the bioavailability of contaminants, particularly metals, by increasing or decreasing their availability Ankley et al. 1996 (51)). If metal contaminants or volatile compounds, transport and storage chemicals are a concern, samples should be mixed in airtight PTFE or glass a glove box under an inert atmosphere and quickly partitioned into sample containers with PTFE-lined screw caps. Volatile for analysis.

11.4.4 Homogenate replicates consist of two or more subsamples, taken from different locations within a mixed sample, and then compared analytical results of the replicate samples (sometimes called a split sample). After the sediment has been homogenized, it is generally partitioned among sample containers. Partitioning sediments for chemical or biological testing may be stored at 4°C and accomplished using various methods. In one method, a number of small portions are removed from random locations in the mixing container and distributed randomly in all sample jars until the appropriate volume of sediment is contained in each sample jar for each analysis. During distribution, the sediment can be periodically mixed using a glass rod or porcelain spatula to minimize stratification effects due to differential settling, especially if the sediment is prone to rapid settling. An alternative is to use a splitter box designed to contain and then divide the homogenized sediment.

**11.5 Sample Transport and Storage (54). See Table 1 for further information on:**

11.5.1 Transport and storage methods should be designed to maintain structural and chemical qualities of sediment samples. Sediments collected using grab samplers are usually transferred from the sampler to containers that may or may not serve as the storage container. The containers might be stored temporarily in the field or they might be transported immediately to a laboratory for chemical analyses.

10.2 Drying, freezing, storage. If sediment core samples are not sectioned or subsampled in the field, they may be stored upright, in the core liner, for intact transportation to the laboratory. If sectioning or subsampling takes place in the field, then the subsamples may also be transferred to sample containers and stored temporarily. The sample containers with the field-collected sediments are then placed into a transport container and shipped to the laboratory. Proper storage conditions Table 9 should be achieved as

**TABLE 11 Recommendations for Homogenizing Sediment Samples (USEPA 2001 (1))**

Use a sufficiently large, precleaned glass or stainless steel mixing bowl to homogenize the sample.
Use clean glass polyethylene, or stainless steel implements (for example, spoon) to mix sediment.
Mixing should be performed as quickly and efficiently as possible while attempting to reduce oxidation of the sample.
Intensive manual mixing of wet sediment, in a suitably large container, is usually sufficient to homogenize the sample Ingersoll and Nelson, 1990 (103).
Regardless of the mixing method selected, the effectiveness of the method should be demonstrated using a homogenate replicate

quickly as possible after sampling. For those parameters that are preserved via refrigeration (for example, toxicity or bioaccumulation tests), samples should be stored in the field in refrigerated units on board the sampling vessel or in insulated containers containing ice or frozen ice packs. Sediment samples should never be frozen for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing (Test Method E 1706 and Guide E 1688).

11.5.2 For samples that can be preserved via freezing (for example, some metal and organic chemical analyses), dry ice can be used to freeze samples for temporary storage and transport (USEPA, 1983 (58-62), 1993 (48)). Pelletized dry ice has been used effectively to store core samples. It is important to know chilling capacities and efficiencies to determine that temperature regulation is adequate. Care should be taken to prevent refrigerated samples from freezing and to keep frozen samples from thawing. Freezing changes the sediment volume depending on the water content, and it permanently changes the structure of the sediment and potentially alters the bioavailability of sediment associated contaminants (Test Method E 1706).

11.5.3 Logistics for sample transport will be specifically tailored to each study. In some cases it is most efficient to transfer samples to a local storage facility where they can be either frozen or refrigerated. Depending on the logistics of the operation, field personnel can transport samples to the laboratory themselves or can use an overnight courier service. If a freight carrier is employed, the user needs to be aware of any potentially limiting regulations (for example, regarding the use of ice or dry ice). Samples should be cooled to that temperature before placement in toxicity tests was often not specified and, where specified, ranged the transport container. Light should be excluded from the transport container.

11.5.4 Core samples should be transported as intact core liners (tubes). Before sample transport, the entire space over the sediment in the core liner should be filled with site water, and both ends of the core liner should be completely sealed to prevent mixing of the sediment inside. The cores should be maintained in an upright position particularly if the sample is not highly consolidated material, and secured in either a few days transport container (for example, cooler or insulated box) with ice or ice packs, or in a refrigerated unit that can maintain a temperature near 4°C (Environment Canada, 1994 (62)). If the transport container cannot accommodate long core samples such as from vibracores or piston corers (core liners > 1 m), then the core samples can be cut into 1-m lengths, and the ends securely capped such that no air is trapped inside the liners (see 11.4).

11.5.5 Impregnating unconsolidated sediment cores with epoxy or polyester resins will preserve sediment structure and texture (Ginsburg et al. 1966 to one year(59); Crevello et al. 1981 (44). The storage(60)), but not the chemical characteristics of the sediment. Therefore, this procedure should not be used for transporting or storing sediment samples for chemical characterization or biological testing (Environment Canada, 1994 (2)).

#### 11.6 Sample Holding Times:

11.6.1 Because the chemicals of concern influencing sediment characteristics are not always known, it is desirable to hold the sediments after arrival at collection in the laboratory was generally by refrigeration dark at 4°C (43-45, 47-51, 61, 64-67). Significant changes in metal (Test Method E 1706). Traditional convention has held that toxicity or bioaccumulation tests should be started as soon as possible following collection from the field, although actual recommended storage times range from two weeks (USEPA 2001 (1)) to cladocerans and microbial activity have been observed in stored sediments less than eight weeks (USEPA-USACE 1998 (62, 68). Recommended limits for(61)). Discrepancies in recommended storage times reflected a lack of data concerning the effects of long-term storage on the physical, chemical, and toxicological characteristics of metal-spiked sediments the sediment. However, numerous studies have ranged from within two days recently been conducted to address issues related to sediment storage (Dillon et al., 1994 (58) (62); Becker et al., 1995 to five days(63), Carr and Chapman, 1995 (64) and seven days, Moore et al., 1996 (65), Sarda and Burton, 1995(66), Sijm et al., 1997 (69,70), DeFoe and Ankley, 1998 (68)). **The conclusions and recommendations offered by these studies vary substantially and appear to depend primarily upon the type or class of chemical(s) present. Considered collectively, these studies suggest that the recommended guidance that sediments be tested sometime between the time of collection and 8 weeks storage is appropriate. Additional guidance is provided below.**

11.6.2 Extended storage of sediments that contain high concentrations of labile chemicals (for example, ammonia, volatile organics) may lead to a loss of these chemicals and a corresponding reduction in toxicity. Under these circumstances, the sediment should be tested as soon as possible after collection, but not later than within two weeks (Sarda and Burton, 1995 (66)). Sediments that exhibit low-level to moderate toxicity can exhibit considerable temporal variability in toxicity, although the direction of change is often unpredictable (Carr and Chapman, 1995 (64); Moore et al., 1996 (65); DeFoe and Ankley, 1998 (68)). For these types of sediments, the recommended storage time of <8 weeks may be most appropriate. In some situations, a minimum storage period for low-to-moderately contaminated sediments may help reduce variability. For example, DeFoe and Ankley, 1998 (68) observed high variability in survival during early testing periods (for example, <2 weeks) in sediments with low toxicity. De Foe and Ankley, 1998 (68) hypothesized that this variability partially reflected the presence of indigenous predators that remained alive during this relatively short storage period. Thus, if predatory species are known to exist, and the sediment does not contain labile contaminants, it may be related desirable to store the sediment for a short period before testing (for example, 2 weeks) to reduce potential for interferences from indigenous organisms. Sediments that contain comparatively stable compounds (for example, high molecular weight compounds such as PCBs) or which exhibit a moderate-to-high level of toxicity, typically do not vary appreciably in toxicity in relation to storage duration (Moore et al., 1996 (65), DeFoe and AVSnkley, 1998 (68)). For these sediments, long-term storage (for example, >8 weeks) can be undertaken.

11.6.3 Researchers may wish to conduct additional characterizations of sediment to evaluate possible effects of storage.

Concentrations of chemicals of concern could be measured periodically in pore water during the storage period and at the start of the sediment test Kemble et al., 1994 (69). Ingersoll et al., 1993 (70) recommend conducting a toxicity test with pore water within two weeks from sediment collection and at the start of the sediment test. Freezing might further change sediment properties such as grain size or chemical partitioning and should be avoided (Schuytema et al., 1989 (71)). When anoxic sediments were exposed to air, AVS was volatilized rapidly. AVS is apparently the reactive solid phase sulfide pool that binds metal, thus reducing toxicity. If a study objective is to investigate metal toxicity and the sediment environment is anoxic, exposure to). Sediment should be stored with no air might reduce or increase toxicity due to over the oxidation and precipitation of sealed samples (no head space) at 4°C before the metal species or loss start of acid volatile sulfide complexation. A study of sediments contaminated with nonpolar organics found that the interstitial water storage time did not affect toxicity to polychaetes when samples were frozen a test (Shuba et al., 1978 (72)); however, it is generally agreed that sediments to). Sediment should be stored in containers constructed of suitable materials as outlined in 11.2.

11.6.4 Sediment cores collected for toxicity testing must not stratigraphical or geological studies can be frozen (61, 63, 64, 69, 73):

10.3 Although risking stored at 4°C in a humidity-controlled room for several months without any substantial changes in sediment composition, several studies elected to freeze samples properties (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995 (38, 61, 74-78). Fast-freezing(46)).

## 12. Sample Manipulations

12.1 Manipulation of sediment cores has been recommended sediments in the laboratory is often required to achieve certain desired characteristics or forms of material for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing and chemical analysis. As all manipulation procedures alter some qualities of field samples, it is important to evaluate the effect that these changes might have on the study objective and on each measurement. Therefore, all procedures used to prepare sediment samples should be described in the study plan and documented. Generally, manipulation procedures should be designed to maintain sample representativeness in terms of toxicity and chemistry by minimizing procedural artifacts.

12.1.1 This section discusses methods for several common manipulations performed in the laboratory including sieving, spiking, organic carbon modification and formulated sediments, sediment dilution, and elutriate preparation. Other sediment manipulations, such as salinity adjustments or pre-treatment of sediment ammonia (done in conjunction with toxicity testing in certain regulatory programs) are not discussed in this standard as these are described elsewhere (for example, PSEP, 1995 (24, 65, 79); however,(73), USEPA 1994 (74) ).

### 12.2 Sieving:

12.2.1 In general, sieving should not be done on sediment samples because this alters process can change the physicochemical characteristics of the sediment structure and profile distortion occurs (35). Freezing sample. For example, wet sieving of sediment through fine mesh (=500 µm openings) has been reported shown to inhibit the oxidation of reduced iron result in decreased percent total organic carbon and m decreased concentrations of total PCBs, which might have been associated with fine suspe-ended organic m patter lost during the sieving process (Day et al. 1995 (75). It has). Sieving can also b disrupt thee natural chemical equilibrium by hommogended-fizing or otherwise changing the biological activity within thed sediment (Environment Canada, 1994 (2); Test Method E 1706).

12.2.2 In some cases, however, sieving might be necessary to remove indigenous organisms, which can interfere with subsequent toxicity testing and confound interpretations of analytical results (USEPA, 1994 (74); 2000d (35) ; Practice D 3976). Indigenous organisms can be problematic in toxicity testing because they may be the same species as the test organism, they may be a species similar in appearance to test organisms, or theyz might prey on the test organisms. Similarly, in bioaccumulation tests, indigenous organisms might be similar in appearance to the test organisms (Test Method E 1706 and Guide E 1688).

12.2.3 If sieving is performed, it should be done for-organisms all samples to be tested, including control and reference sediments, if the objective of the study is to compare results among stations (Test Method E 1706). It might be desirable to obtain certain measurements (for example, dissolved and total organic carbon, acid volatile sulfide [AVS], and simultaneously extracted metals [SEM]) both before and after manipulation, to document changes associated with sieving (USEPA, 2000d (8035)). † In addition, it might be desirable to document the effect of sieving on the sediment sample by conducting comparative toxicity tests using sieved and unsieved sediment (Environment Canada, 1994 (2)).

### 12.2.4 Sieving Methods:

12.2.4.1 *Press Sieving*—If sieving is necessary, press sieving is the preferred method. In this method, sediment particles are hand-pressed through a sieve using chemically inert paddles (Giesy et al. 1990 (796); Johns et al. 1991 (77)). Matter retained by the screen, such as organisms, shell fragments, gravel, and debris, should be recorded in a log book and discarded (USEPA/USACE, 1991 (32) ). Samples with high debris, vegetation, or clay content might be difficult to press through a single sieve with a mesh size less than 1 mm; such samples might need to be pressed through a series of sieves with progressively smaller openings. Water should not be added to sediment when press sieving, as this could result in changes in contaminant concentration and bioavailability. Samples that no storage method are going to be used for-sediments preserved the initial both chemical analysis and-ph toxicities or bioaccumulation tests shoul-ed be sieved together, homogenized, and then split for their respective analyses.

12.2.4.2 *Wet Sieving*—If sediments cannot be hand-pressed sieved , wet sieving might be required, however, this type of sieving increases the sediment. Freezing was adequate for likelihood of contaminant loss. Wet sieving involves swirling sediment

particles within a sieve using water to facilitate the chemical analyses mechanical separation of several metals and organic material (65, 79). Changes were observed at 15 days in sediments stored at 4°C. Oxidation was greater than reduction smaller from larger particles. A slurry made with water that has separated from the sediment during storage or transport might be sufficient to wash particles through the sieve. Wet samples that might have settled during transit should be stirred to incorporate as much field water as possible. In some cases, addition of a small volume of site water, deionized water, or reconstituted water to the wet sample might be required. Mechanical shakers or stirring with a nylon brush can also facilitate wet sieving (Mudroch and MacKnight, 1994 (79); Carr(36)).

12.2.4.3 In general, smaller mesh sieves are preferred to reduce loss of fines. Sieves made of stainless steel, or plastic woven polymers (for example, polyethylene, polypropylene, nylon, and ~~Wilkniss~~ Teflon) with mesh sizes that vary from 0.24 to 2.0 mm have been used to sieve sediment for toxicity tests (Keilty et al. 1988a;b; (78),(79); Giesy et al. 1990 (76); Lydy et al. 1990(81) showed no mercury loss in sediments acidified to pH 1 for up to eight days, but the sorbed fraction decreased from 80 to 15 %; Stemmer et al. 1990a;b (57), (58); Johns et al. 1991 (77); Landrum and Faust, 1991 (80)). Non-metallic sieves are preferred if metals are of the total concentration. If sediments interest. Stainless steel sieves are acceptable if organic compounds are of interest. Stainless steel (provided the mesh is not soldered or welded to be frozen for chemical analyses, they the frame), nylon, or Nitex-type plastic sieves should be a split sample from those used for toxicity testing that when other inorganic constituents are kept at 4°C.

10.4 Interstitial water chemistry can change significantly after 24-h storage of concern or are to be analyzed (PSEP 1995) (82, 83), even when stored at in situ temperatures (83)(73). **The coagulation**

12.2.4.4 Generally, sieving through a 10-mesh (2-mm openings) sieve is acceptable as a basis to discriminate between sediment and precipitation other materials. For toxicity testing, a mesh size of humic material was noted when interstitial water was stored at 4°C for more than one week 1.0 mm has been used (Environment Canada, 1994 (2)) which will remove most adult amphipods. However, a mesh of 0.25 mm might be needed to remove immature amphipods and most macrofauna (Landrum et al. 1992 (82); Robinson et al. 1988 (83); Day et al. 1995 (75) ). In marine sediments, sieves with a mesh size of 0.5 mm are effective in removing most of the immature amphipods (Swartz et al. 1990 (84); PSEP, 1995 (73) ).-Θ

12.2.5 *Alternatives to Sieving*—Unwanted materials (for example, large particles, trash, and indigenous organisms), can be removed from the sediment sample using forceps, before or, as an alternative to, sieving. If anaerobic integrity of reduced arsenic species in the sample is not a concern, the wa sediment could be spread on a sorting tray made of cleaned, chemically-inert material, and should be hand-picked with forceps. A stereomicroscope or magnifying lens might facilitate the process, or may be used to determine if sieving is necessary. Hand-picking is preferable to sieving because it is less disruptive, but it typically is not practical for large volumes of sediment. This process may oxidize the sediment and might alter contaminant bioavailability. Autoclaving, freezing, and gamma irradiation of sediments was unaffected are alternatives to physical removal for inhibiting endemic biological activity in field-collected sediments. These are not generally recommended procedures. Each method has unique effects on the physicochemical and biological characteristics of the sediment, and a careful evaluation with respect to six weeks the study objectives is warranted when samples were acidified these methods are considered.

12.3 *Formulated Sediment and kept near 0°C, without deoxygenation. Deoxygenation was necessary when samples were Organic Carbon Modification:*

12.3.1 *Formulated Sediments*—Formulated sediments (also called reconstituted, artificial, or synthetic sediments) are mixtures of materials that mimic the physical components of natural sediments (Test Method E 1706). While they have not been used routinely, formulated sediments potentially offer advantages over natural sediments for use in chemical fate and biological effects testing. However, formulated sediments also have limitations. They do not possess the natural microbial, meiofaunal, and macrofaunal communities or the complex organic and inorganic gradients prevalent in natural sediments. The lack of biological activity, diagenesis, and oxidation-reduction (redox) potential gradients undoubtedly alters some sorption and desorption properties, which might in turn alter contaminant fate and effects. The current lack of understanding of physicochemical controls on bioavailability in different sediment environments precludes broad-scale use of formulated sediments (Test Method E 1706).

12.3.2 A formulated sediment should: ( 1) support the survival, growth, or reproduction of a variety of benthic invertebrates, (2) provide consistent acceptable biological endpoints for a variety of species, and (3) be composed of materials that have consistent characteristics (USEPA, 2000d (35), Test Method E 1706). Characteristics should include: (1) consistency of materials from batch to batch, (2) contaminant concentrations below concentrations of concern, and ( 3) availability to all individuals and facilities (Kemble et al. 1999 (85)). See also Section H.

10.5 In summary, it is recommended). Physicochemical characteristics that sediments for toxicity tests and chemical analyses might be refrigerated or placed on ice in polyethylene containers during transport. In addition, if samples are to be used for chemical analyses, considered when evaluating the appropriateness of a sediment formulation include percent sand/clay/silt, organic carbon content, cation exchange capacity (CEC), redox potential, pH, and holding time carbon:nitrogen:phosphorous ratios (USEPA, 2000d (35); Test Method E 1706).

12.3.3 The specific material source should be carefully selected, as previously described and in Table 1. The storage conditions should be refrigeration at 4°C and under anoxic conditions, if appropriate characteristics can vary significantly among product types. For example, USEPA (2000d (39, 55, 86)-(35)) found that for three different sources of kaolinite clay, the percentage of clay ranged from 57 to 89 %, depending on individual product specifications. There are a number of suppliers of various sediment

components (USEPA, 2000d (35)). A critical component of formulated sediments is the source of organic carbon. It has been shown is not clear that any one source of organic carbon is routinely superior to another source (Test Method E 1706).

12.3.4 *Organic Carbon Modification*—Organic carbon content of natural as well as formulated sediments can be stored at 4°C for up to 12 months without significant alterations in toxicity. Assess the effect on contaminant fate and bioavailability. Many studies have modified sediment carbon because total organic carbon (TOC) content has been shown to be a major determinant of non-ionic organic chemical bioavailability (Di Toro et al. 1991 (86); DeWitt et al. 1992 (87); and Kosian et al. 1999 (88)). While TOC modifications might be necessary to storage time before testing, therefore appear to achieve study objectives, it should be a function of both recognized that organic carbon manipulations can change the sediment particle composition and size distribution, thereby potentially affecting contaminant characteristics. Storage equilibrium. Thus, results from such experiments should be limited to a two-week period at 4°C unless previous data exist that indicate that interpreted with care. Also, the study site sediments can sample needs to be stored without affecting toxicity.

#### **H. Collection equilibrated (see 12.4.1) following addition of Interstitial Water**

H.1 Interstitial water (pore water), defined the new source of organic carbon, before conducting analyses.

12.3.5 Some recipes have used peat as the water-occupying source of organic carbon, however, the space between sediment or soil particles, is often isolated quality and characteristics of peat moss can vary from bag to bag (Test Method E 1706). Other sources of organic carbon include humus, potting soil, maple leaves, composted cow manure, rabbit chow, cereal leaves, chlorella, trout chow, Tetramix<sup>®</sup>, Tetrafin<sup>®</sup>, and alpha cellulose. Of these, only peat, humus, potting soil, composted cow manure, and alpha cellulose have been used successfully in sediment testing without fouling the overlying water; other sources have caused dissolved oxygen concentrations to fall to unacceptable levels (Kemble et al. 1999 (85)).

12.3.6 Five studies compared organic carbon sources in formulated sediments. A study of 31 different organic carbon recipes by Environment Canada (1995) (89) compared effects on sediment homogeneity, density, and turbidity. Cerophyll and trout chow were selected as the optimal organic carbon sources with high clay (kaolin at 50 or 75 % total concentration) and partitioning of contaminants within fine sand.

12.3.7 Ribeiro et al. (1994) (90) suggested the use of synthetic alpha-cellulose as a carbon source amended with humic acid. The use of alpha-cellulose in formulated sediment matrix. There is some indication has since been evaluated by Kemble et al. (1999 (85), Sawyer and Burton (1994 (91), and Fleming and Nixon (1996 (92)). Ribeiro et al. (1994 (90)) found that sorption was dependent on the amount of organic carbon present. Kemble et al. (1999 (85)) found that growth of *Hyalella azteca* was better in 10 % than in 2 % alpha-cellulose. Both alpha-cellulose and conditioned red maple leaves were found to be suitable as useful as whole sediment organic carbon amendments for reference toxicant testing with *Hyalella azteca* (96 h exposures) when spiked with cadmium, zinc, or anthracene (Sawyer and Burton, 1994 (91)).

12.3.8 Use of some sediment-associated compounds, alpha cellulose as a carbon source for example, those that are sediment-spiking studies has not sorbed strongly been adequately evaluated, but it appears to particles and where the ingestion of contaminated particles be promising. Alpha cellulose is not a major route consistent source of accumulation. The isolation organic carbon that is relatively biologically inactive and low in concentrations of chemicals of concern. Furthermore, Kemble et al. (1999 (85)) reported that conditioning of formulated sediment interstitial water can be accomplished by several methods: centrifugation, squeezing, gas pressurization, suction, was not necessary when alpha cellulose was used as a carbon source for a negative control sediment. Compared with other sources of organic carbon, alpha cellulose is highly polymerized and equilibrium dialysis. These techniques would not serve as a food source, but rather would serve to add texture or provide a partitioning compartment for chemicals. Reductions in organic carbon content have been reviewed recently achieved by Adams diluting sediment with clean sand (see 12.5; Clark et al. 1986 (88)(93) and Burton; Clark et al. 1987 (89). **In general, where relatively large volumes of water are required only centrifugation (for example, (94); Tatem, 1986(95); Knezovich and Harrison, 1988) 46, 84, 90-98 and (96)). However, this can change sediment squeezing characteristics resulting in non-linear responses in toxicity (Nelson et al. 1993 (72, 99)(97)). Combustion has also been used to remove fractions of organic carbon (Adams et al. 1985 can provide large quantities. Other methods, such as suction (100-103) and (98); IJC, 1988 (99)). However, this method results in substantial modification of the sediment characteristics, including oxidization of some inorganic components.**

12.3.9 The ratio of carbon to nitrogen to phosphorous might be an important parameter to consider when selecting an organic carbon source. This ratio can vary widely among carbon sources (Test Method E 1706, USEPA 2000d (88), do not produce sufficient volumes(35)). For example, carbon can range from most sediments easily.

H.2 Most collection methods have been shown to alter interstitial water chemistry 47 %, nitrogen from 0.7 to 45 mg/g, and therefore may alter toxicity. There are a number of precautions that one should take phosphorous from below detection limits to reduce the likelihood 11 µg/g for several different carbon sources (USEPA, 2000d (35)).

12.3.10 A variety of causing significant sample change from formulations have been used successfully in situ conditions. Some interstitial water constituents, for example, dissolved organic carbon, dimethylsulfide, ammonia, sediment toxicity testing (Test Method E 1706 and major cations; USEPA 2000d (35)). At this time, no one formulation appears to be universally better than others.

#### **12.4 Sediment Spiking:**

12.4.1 Test sediment can be altered significantly prepared by manipulating the collection method (104-107). Increased sample handling by means properties of methods such as centrifugation a control or squeezing, compared to in situ “peepers” or core port

suction, may cause increased ammonia and decreased sulfide concentrations reference sediment (Test Method E 1706). Mixing time (Stemmer 1990a, 1990b (105). Other constituents, such as salinity, dissolved inorganic carbon, ammonia, sulfide, (57) (58)) and aging (Landrum 1989, Word et al, 1987, Landrum and Faust 1992 (100),(101),(102)) of spiked sediment can affect bioavailability of chemicals in sediment. Many studies with spiked sediment are often started only a few days after the chemical has been added to the sediment. This short time period may not be affected by collection, providing that oxidation is prevented (105). If the long enough for sediments are anoxic, all of to equilibrate with the steps involved in sample processing spiked chemicals. Consistent spiking procedures should be followed in order to make interlaboratory comparisons. Limited studies have been conducted comparing appropriate methods for spiking chemicals in inert atmospheres or by limited contact with sediment. Additional research is needed before more definitive recommendations for spiking of sediment can be outlined in this standard. The guidance provided in the following sections has been developed from a variety of sources. Spiking procedures that have been developed using one sediment or test organism may not be applicable to other sediments or test organisms.

12.4.2 Spiking involves adding one or more chemicals to sediment for either experimental or quality control purposes. Spiking environmental samples is used to document recoveries of an analyte and thereby analytical bias. Spiked sediments are used in order toxicity tests to prevent oxidation (and the subsequent sorption determine effects of material(s) on test species. The cause of sediment toxicity and precipitation) the interactive effects of chemicals can be determined by spiking a sediment with chemicals or complex waste mixtures (104, 105, 108)(97). ~~Immediate collection~~ **Sediments spiked with a range of the interstitial water is recommended since chemical changes might occur even when the sediments are stored for short periods of time concentrations can be used to generate either point estimates (for example, 24 h LC50) or a minimum concentration at in situ temperatures (82, 83). Toxicity changes have been which effects are observed (lowest-observable-effect concentration; LOEC). Results of tests may be reported in interstitial water stored for less than 24 h terms of a Biota-sediment accumulation factor (BSAF) Ankley et al., 1992b (1094). The coagulation and precipitation influence of humic material was noted when interstitial water was stored at 4°C for more than one week (84) sediment physico-chemical characteristics on chemical toxicity can also be determined with sediment-spiking studies Swartz et al., 1994(105). Spiking tests can also provide information concerning chemical interactions and transformation rates. The oxidation design of reduced arsenic species in spiking experiments, and interpretation of results, should always consider the interstitial water ability of stored sediments was unaffected for up to six weeks when the samples were acidified sediment to sequester contaminants, recognizing that this governs many chemical and kept near 0°C, without deoxygenation. Deoxygenation was necessary when biological processes (O'Donnell et al. 1985 (106); Stemmer et al. 1990a,b (57), (58); Northcott and Jones, 2000 (107), Test Method E 1706). In preparation for toxicity and bioaccumulation tests, references regarding the samples were not acidified, choice of test concentrations should be consulted (USEPA 2000d (835), Environment Canada 1995 (89), Test Method E 1706). Table 12 summarizes general recommendations for spiking sediments with a chemical or other test materials.**

12.4.3 Several issues regarding sediment spiking are addressed in this section. First, several methods have recommended that interstitial waters be frozen after extraction, prior been used to toxicity testing, to prevent changes (72). The optimal collection spike sediments but the appropriate method needs to be selected carefully depending on the intended use type of the sample material being spiked (for example, acidification for metal analysis soluble in water or not), its physical-chemical form, and objectives of the particular study. Second, spiked material should be uniformly distributed throughout the sediment. Otherwise, chemical analyses, or toxicity testing), characteristics or bioaccumulation tests, are likely to yield highly variable results,

**TABLE 12 Recommendations for How to Spike a Sediment With a Chemical or Other Test Material (USEPA 2001 (1))**

Regardless of the spiking technique used, care should be taken to ensure complete and homogenous mixing.
Replicate subsamples should be analyzed to confirm homogeneous mixing.
Moisture content should be determined on triplicates for each sample so that the spike concentration can be normalized on a dry weight basis.
Wet spiking is recommended over dry spiking methods.
Generally speaking, the jar rolling method is more suitable than hand mixing for spiking larger batches of sediment.
To ensure chemical equilibrium between the sediment and pore water in toxicity testing, spike sediments should be stored for at least one month, unless other information is available for the spiking material and sediment type.
Direct addition of organic solvent carriers should be avoided because they might alter sediment chemistry and affect contaminant bioavailability. Shell coating methods should be used instead as this eliminates many of the disadvantages of solvent carriers.

depending on the concentration of spiked material present. Third, the spiked material needs to be at equilibrium between the sediment and contaminants of concern.

11.3 The conditions for isolation of the interstitial waters by centrifugation have varied considerably. Interstitial waters have been isolated for water so that all relevant exposure phases are appropriately considered in chemical analyses or toxicity or bioaccumulation testing. The time it takes to reach this equilibrium is a range of centrifugal forces and temperatures (46, 84, 90-95) with centrifuge bottles of various compositions. When centrifugation followed by filtration has been compared with in situ dialysis, higher speed centrifugation followed by filtration with 0.2 membrane filters has produced results critical factor that were more comparable for metals needs to be considered and organic carbon (75, 109, 110). Centrifuging documented.

12.4.4 The test material(s) should be at low speeds least reagent grade, unless a test using a formulated commercial product, technical grade, or the use of use-grade material is specifically needed. Before a 0.45- $\mu\text{m}$  pore size membrane will result in test is started, the following should be known about the test material: (1) the identity and concentration of both dissolved contaminants, colloidal materials, major ingredients and aquatic bacteria (75). High-speed centrifugation (for example, 10 000  $\times$  g) is necessary to remove colloids impurities, (2) water solubility in test water, (3) log Kow, BCF (from other test species), persistence, hydrolysis, and dispersible clays (88, 111, 112). The duration photolysis rates of the centrifugation has varied in test substrate, (4) estimated toxicity to the literature, but 30 min is relatively common test organism and is to humans, (5) if the recommended time. The temperature for test concentration(s) are to be measured, the centrifugation should reflect the ambient temperature precision and bias of collection to ensure that the equilibrium between analytical method at the planned concentration(s) of the test material, and interstitial water is not shifted. Since trace metals (6) recommended handling and organics concentrate on solids, their removal is important in sorption and partitioning studies (75, 111). However, filtration through a wide range disposal procedures. Addition of test material(s) to sediment may be accomplished using various methods, such as glass fiber a: (1) rolling mill, (2) feed mixer, or polycarbonate membranes may (3) hand mixing. Modifications of the mixing techniques might be inappropriate since they sorb some dissolved metals and organics (113). If filtration is used, necessary to allow time for a nonfiltered sample test material to equilibrate with the sediment. Mixing time of spiked sediment should also be tested for toxicity limited from minutes to a few hours, and contaminant concentrations. The effects of centrifugation speed, filtration, temperature should be kept low to minimize potential changes in the physico-chemical and oxic conditions on some microbial characteristics of the sediment USEPA, 2000 (108). Duration of contact between the chemical concentrations in interstitial waters have been well documented (for example, and sediment can affect partitioning and bioavailability Word et al., 1987 88, 114, 115). It is recommended that sediments (101). Care should be centrifuged at 10 000  $\times$  g for a 30-min period for routine toxicity testing taken to evenly distributed the spiked material in the sediment. Analyses of interstitial waters:

11.4 It sediment subsamples is difficult advisable to collect interstitial water determine the degree of mixing homogeneity Ditworth et al., 1990 (109). Moreover, results from sediments that are predominately coarse sand. A modified centrifuge bottle has been developed; sediment-spiking studies should be compared with an internal filter that can recover 75 % of the interstitial water; compared response of test organisms to 25 to 30 % from squeezing chemical concentrations in natural sediments (116) (144).

11.5 If sorptive organic compounds

12.4.5 Organic chemicals have been added: (1) directly in a dry (crystalline) form; (2) coated on the inside walls of the container (Ditsworth et al. (109)); or mixtures (3) coated onto silica sand (for example, 5 % w/w of sediment) which is added to the sediment (D.R. Mount, USEPA, Duluth, MN, personal communication). In techniques 2 and organic compounds are 3, the chemical is dissolved in solvent, placed in a glass spiking container (with or without sand), then the solvent is slowly evaporated. The advantage of these three approaches is that no solvent is introduced to be isolated, PTFE centrifuge bottles the sediment, only the chemical being spiked. When testing spiked sediments, procedural blanks (sediments that have been handled in the same way, including solvent addition and evaporation, but contain no added chemical) should be used. Polytetrafluorethylene bottles will collapse at 3000  $\times$  g but have tested in addition to regular negative controls. Metals are generally added in an aqueous solution (Di Toro et al. (111)). Ammonia has also been used successfully spiked using aqueous solutions (Besser et al. (112)). Spiking blanks should also be included in these analyses.

12.4.6 Sufficient time should be allowed after spiking for the range of 2500 g when filled spiked chemical to 80 % equilibrate with sediment components. For organic chemicals, it is recommended that the sediment be aged at least one month before starting a test. Two months or more may be necessary for chemicals with a high log Kow (for example, >6; D.R. Mount, USEPA, Duluth, MN, personal communication). For metals, shorter aging times (1 to 2 weeks) may be sufficient. Periodic monitoring of capacity (90). So, chemical concentrations in pore water during sediment aging is highly recommended as a means to assess the equilibration of interstitial the spiked sediments. Monitoring of pore water during spiked sediment testing is also recommended.

12.4.7 If the test contains both a negative control and a solvent control, the survival, growth, or reproduction of the organisms tested should be compared in the temperature of collection, at two controls. If a statistically significant difference is detected between the two controls, only the solvent control may be used for meeting the acceptability of 2500 g the test and as the basis for 30-min duration. This material will contain colloidal material calculation of results. The negative control might provide additional information on the general health of the organisms tested. If no statistically significant difference is detected, the data from both controls should be used for meeting the acceptability of the test and as well as dissolved compounds. Removal the basis for calculation of results (Guide E 1241 and Test Method E 1706). If performance in the solvent control is markedly different from that in the negative control, it is possible that the data are compromised by experimental artifacts and may not accurately reflect

the toxicity of the chemical in natural sediments.

#### 12.4.8 Preparation for Spiking:

12.4.8.1 Debris and indigenous organisms should be removed from sediment samples as soon as possible at low centrifugation speeds, without filtration. The influence after collection to reduce deterioration of dissolved and colloidal sediment quality due to decomposition of organic carbon may debris and dying infauna. If sediments are to be estimated by measuring stored before spiking, they should be kept in sealed containers at 4°C.

12.4.8.2 Regardless of the organic carbon content. Centrifugation can spiking technique used, care should be performed with glass tubes (up taken to 10 000 × g) (113) if small volumes homogenize the sediment. Chemical analyses should be conducted to verify that concentrations of water the spiked contaminants are uniform throughout the mixed material. Three or more subsamples of the spiked sediment should be randomly collected to determine the concentration of the substance being tested. In general, the coefficient of variation (CV) should be = 20 % for homogeneity of mixing to be considered sufficient (Northcott and Jones, 2000 (107)).

12.4.8.3 Temperatures should be kept cool during spiking preparation (for example, 50 mL, for testing higher speed. High-speed centrifugation 4°C) due to rapid physicochemical and microbiological alterations which might occur in stainless steel centrifuge tubes can the sediment that, in turn, might alter bioavailability and toxicity (Test Method E 1706, Environment Canada 1995 (89)). If spiking PAH compounds, it might be performed if metals are not an issue.

11.6 The isolation of interstitial water by squeezing important to conduct spiking in the dark, or at least under low light as PAH toxicity has been performed by means shown to increase under ultraviolet light (Ankley et al. 1994 (113)).

12.4.8.4 A subsample of the spiked sediment should be analyzed for at least the following parameters: moisture content, pH, ammonia, total organic carbon (TOC), acid volatile sulfide (AVS), particle size distribution, and background levels of practices (72, 88, 96-99, 117). In all cases, the chemical(s) to be spiked. Further characterization may include analyses of total volatile residue, pore water salinity (before and after any sieving), chemical oxygen demand, sediment oxygen demand, oxidation-reduction potential (Eh), metals, total chlorinated organic content, chlorinated organic compounds, and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (see Section 15 for more information on physicochemical parameters often measured on sediments). It is passed through a filter that particularly important to determine the TOC concentration if the sediment is to be spiked with a part of non-ionic organic compound, as organic carbon is the apparatus. Filters have different sorptive capacities primary binding phase for such compounds (Di Toro et al. 1990 (50)). Similarly, the concentration off AVS (the primary binding phase for cationic metals in anoxic sediments) and TOC should be measured after spiking with a cationic metal (Ankley et al. 1996 (51); Leonards et al. 1999 (114)). The organic carbon composition may also be an important characteristic to determine in the sediment (for example, the C:N ratio; Landrum et al. 1997 (115)). Further, bioavailability may be more controlled by the desorption characteristics of filters and the compound from sediment (for example, this can be measured by a Tenax® desorption method that appears to correlate well with bioaccumulation; Ten Hulscher et al. 2003 (116)).

12.4.8.5 The sediment moisture content measurement is used to calculate the amount of chemical spiked on a dry weight basis. Generally, the moisture content should be considered carefully based determined on triplicates for each sample by measuring the types weight lost following 24 h of contaminants expected. Squeezing has been demonstrated oven-drying at 105°C. After drying, the samples should be cooled to room temperature in a desiccator before taking dry weight measurements (Yee et al. 1992 (117)). The mean wet density, expressed as mg water/cm<sup>3</sup>, is measured by using the same drying method on known sediment volumes. This allows spiking to be normalized from a volume basis to an equivalent dry weight basis.

#### 12.4.9 Methods for Spiking:

12.4.9.1 Spiking of both wet and dry sediments is common, but wet spiking is preferable because drying might reduce the representativeness of the sample by changing its physicochemical characteristics. Methods differ mainly in the amount of water present in the mixture during spiking, the solvent used to apply the toxicant, and the method of mixing. Generally speaking, the jar rolling method is more suitable than hand mixing for spiking larger batches of sediment.

12.4.9.2 In addition to the above techniques, sediments may be spiked by hand stirring using a scoop or spatula, as long as the homogeneity of the mixture is verified. Eberbach and gyro-rotary shakers have also been used effectively to mix spiked sediments (Stemmer et al. 1990a (57)). Less commonly, chemical(s) are added to the water overlying the sediment and allowed to sorb with no mixing (Stephenson and Kane, 1984; (118) but not for sulfide O'Neill et al. 1985 (119)). However, squeezing has been shown to produce a number of artifacts due to shifts in equilibrium from pressure, temperature; Crossland and g Wolff, 1985 (120); Pritchard et al. 1986 (121)).

12.4.9.3 Sediment Rolling—This sediment rolling technique requires a specific jar-rolling apparatus (for example, Ditsworth et al. 1990 97, 106, 107, 120-122(56)). Squeezing can affect the electrolyte concentration Many other jar-rolling apparatuses are available, ranging in the interstitial water size and options available. This “rolling mill” method has been used to homogenize large volumes of sediments spiked with a drop near the end metals and non-ionic organic compounds. The primary disadvantage of the squeezing process. It this method is therefore recommended that moderate pressures the mixing apparatus needs be constructed or purchased. The jar-rolling apparatus used with electrolyte (conductivity) monitoring during extraction by Ditsworth et al. (1990 (121)). Several studies revealed significant alterations to(56) consists of eight parallel, horizontal rollers powered by an electric motor through a reduction gear, belts, and pulleys, which rotate cylindrical vessels containing the interstitial water composition when squeezing was substrate mixtures. Mixing is



accomplished gravimetrically by slowly rolling the jars (gallon-sized jars can be rolled at about 15 revolutions per minute). Optimally wetted, individual substrate particles adhere to each other and to the wall of the revolving jar until they cascade or tumble down the surface of the substrate mass. Water may be added to the substrate before rolling to adjust the sediment-to-water ratio for optimal mixing. If oxidation is a concern (for example, if the sample will be analyzed for metals), jar contents might need to be maintained in an inert atmosphere. If PAHs are of concern then jars should be shielded from light (Ankley et al. 1994 106, 107(113)). **The major sources**

12.4.9.4 Each jar should be loaded with the required amount of alteration wet sediment (with a calculated mass of dry sediment required for the interstitial water, when using test) before introduction of the squeezing method, are as follows: contamination from overlying water, internal mixing toxicant. Several 1-cm diameter holes of different depths can be punched into the interstitial water during extrusion, and solid solution reactions as sediment to provide more surface area for the interstitial water is expressed through initial distribution of the overlying test material. A predetermined volume of the stock solution or a serial dilution of the stock should be used to spike each jar load of sediment. As interstitial waters are displaced A volumetric pipette can be used to distribute each aliquot onto the top surface and into upper the holes of the sediment zones during squeezing, they come into contact with solids that they are not in equilibrium with. This inter-mixing causes solid solution reactions each jar. Sediments should be spiked sequentially, proceeding from low to occur. These reactions will generally reflect high concentrations of test material, to minimize cross-contamination. Control sediment should be prepared by adding an approach equivalent volume of water to saturation, adsorption or desorption, a jar loaded with unspiked sediment. After spiking, all jars and ion-exchange. The chemistry of the sample may their contents should be altered due processed identically.

12.4.9.5 Typically, jars should be rolled for greater than two hours to achieve sample homogeneity. Jars should be closely monitored during the fast kinetics (minutes first hour of rolling in order to hours) achieve proper mixing of these reactions. Most interstitial water species are out substrates. After rolling for about 15 min, mixing efficiencies of metastable equilibrium with overlying sediments and are transformed rapidly, such the substrates can be judged visually. If a sediment displays excessive cohesiveness, as indicated by agglomerating or balling, the case observed with ammonia jars should be opened and trace metals (123, 124). Bollinger, et al (120) found elevated levels an aliquot of several ions and dissolved organic carbon in squeezed samples compared water (for example, 50 mL of water) added to samples collected by peepers. The degree each substrate to increase the fluidity. This procedure should be repeated as necessary until the operator visually observes that all substrates are tumbling without forming balls. Adding water in small rather than large aliquots can prevent over-saturation of artifact will depend on the element, sediment characteristics, and redox potential. It sediment. Over-saturation is undesirable because excess water needs to be decanted following rolling, and before sediment testing.

12.4.9.6 After rolling, the jars should be gently shaken to settle sediment that reactive species gradients can adhered to the walls. They may be established by means of set upright and stored overnight in the dark at room temperature or at an alternate temperature (for example, 4°C) depending on the study objectives. After equilibration (seez 12.4.10) and before distributing the sample to test chambers, additional rolling for two hours will help integrate interstitial water into the sediment.

12.4.9.7 *Sediment Suspension Spiking*—The sediment cores suspension technique (Cairns et al. 1984 (118):

11.7 Small-volume isolation of interstitial water, generally for chemical analysis, can also be performed by vacuum filtration(122); Schuytema et al. 1984 (75, 103, 125), gas pressurization(123) (37, 98); Stemmer et al. 1990a; b (57) , or displacement after removing (58); Landrum and Faust, 1991(80); Landrum et al. 1992 (82)) is the sediment from simplest of the aquatic environment (88). When preparing three spiking techniques and requires the sediments for interstitial least equipment. The method involves placing water isolation and sediment together in a 1-L beaker. The desired amount of metals, care must be taken toxicant, dissolved in water, is added to maintain the anoxic conditions beaker. The mixture should be stirred at a moderate speed with a stir bar, or mechanical stirrer, for a minimum of deeper sediments by performing four hours. The sediment in the procedures under an inert atmosphere (88). When core suction was compared beakers should then be allowed to centrifugation settle and squeezing, it was found that equilibrated at the recovery of spiked tritium was similar; however, chlorobenzene differed significantly among methods, with suction exhibiting appropriate test temperature as specified in the highest recovery, followed by squeezing and centrifugation (103). Suction using an aquarium air stone recovered up to 1500 mL from method. The excess water overlying the sediment (4 L) is decanted and suctioned in an anoxic environment discarded, and the sediment is distributed to the test containers (Environment Canada, 1995 (89)).

12.4.9.8 *Slurry Spiking*—The slurry technique (Birge et al., 1987 (124); Francis et al. P, 1984 (125); Landrum and Faust, 1991 (80); Landrum et al., 1992 (82)) requires a minimum of equipment and involves less water than the sediment suspension technique. A 250-g dry weight sample of sediment is placed in a 500-mL Erlenmeyer flask. Via a 25-mL aliquot of distilled, deionized water, a sufficient concentration of the materials of interest is added to obtain the desired sediment concentration (mg/kg, dry weight basis). Control (unspiked) sediment receives a 25-mL aliquot of distilled, deionized water having no added materials. The sealed flask may be mixed using various methods are such as continuous agitation in a shaker for five days (Birge et al. 1987 (124) ) or vigorous shaking for 60 s, twice daily for seven days (Francis et al. 1984 (125)). Following mixing, the sediment suspensions should be centrifuged to remove water. The moisture content of equilibration between the sediment should be about 15 to 20 % after centrifugation. After removal of excess water, the prepared sediment can be placed in the exposure chambers and covered with water according to the specific methods;. This procedure often yields sediment having its original moisture content.

#### 12.4.10 *Equilibration Time:*

12.4.10.1 Before distributing the spiked sediment to containers for toxicity or bioaccumulation testing, or chemical analyses, the spiked sediments should be stored for a sufficient time to approach chemical equilibrium in the test material between the sediment and interstitial water (see 12.4.6). Equilibration times for spiked sediments vary widely among studies (Burton, 1991 (126)). However, in situ suction or suction by means of core ports has been shown to define small gradients of some sediment-associated compounds accurately, including ammonia, which, depending on the spiking material and sediment type. For metals, equilibration time can change an order of magnitude over a 1-cm depth to be as short as 24 h (Jenne and Zachara, 1984 (115)). However, these definitive suction methods do not provide an adequate volume for conducting most toxicity test procedures.

11.8 Perhaps the optimal method of pore water collection is by the use of equilibrium dialysis (127); Nebeker et al. 1986 (88, 127-130) (128) or in situ suction techniques (100-103, 105). These methods, but one to two weeks is more typical (Test Method E 1706). For organic compounds with low octanol-water partition coefficients ( $K_{ow}$ ), equilibration times as short as 24 h have the greatest likelihood of maintaining in situ conditions and have been used to sample dissolved gases (DeWitt et al. 1989 (131) and volatile (293)). Some organic compounds (103). However, contaminants might undergo rapid microbiological degradation depending on the microbial population present in the sample. In these techniques isolate only relatively small volumes cases, knowledge of interstitial water and must microbial effects might be placed by divers important in defining an appropriate equilibration period. Organic compounds with a high partition coefficient might require two months or more to establish equilibrium (Landrum et al. 1992 (82)). Boundaries for the depth and conditions at which the devices sorption time can be deployed. Suction of undisturbed sediments is also possible estimated from intact box core-collected sediments. The duration the partition coefficient, using calculations described by Karickhoff and Morris (1985a,b (129), (130)). It is important to recognize that the quantity of spiked chemical might exceed the capacity of the test sediment system, prohibiting equilibrium.

12.4.10.2 Unless definitive information is available regarding equilibration time for dialysis has ranged from hours to a month, but one to two weeks given contaminant and sediment concentration, a one-month equilibration period is recommended, with consideration that two months might be needed in some instances (see 12.4.10, USEPA 2000d (88). The optimal (35)). Periodic monitoring during the equilibration time is a function highly recommended to empirically establish stability of the sediment type, contaminants of concern, and temperature (for example, interstitial water concentrations (USEPA, 2000d 105, 115, 129, 132-134)). Many of the artifact problems associated with dialysis samplers have been discussed (35) (110). The total organic carbon may. Sediment and interstitial water chemical concentrations should also be elevated in peepers (4 monitored during long-term toxicity tests to 8- $\mu$ m pore size) due to biogenic production; however, colloidal determine the actual chemical concentrations to which test organisms are lower than in centrifuged samples (111). When ionizable compounds, for example, metals, are exposed, and to verify that the concentrations remain stable over the duration of the test.

#### 12.4.11 *Use of Organic Solvents:*

12.4.11.1 Direct addition of organic solvents should be avoided if possible, because organic solvents can alter geochemistry and bioavailability (USEPA, 2000d (35)). However, many organic materials require use of a solvent to pre-equilibrate the samplers adequately mix with the sediment. If an inert atmosphere in order organic solvent is to avoid introducing oxygen into be used, the solvent should be at a concentration that does not affect test organisms and thereby changing the equilibrium. Plastic samplers can contaminate anoxic sediments with diffusible oxygen should be uniform across treatments. Further, both solvent control and negative control sediments should be stored before testing included in inert atmospheres (132). In addition, samples tests with solvents. The solvent concentration in the control should also be kept under an inert atmosphere equal the treatment concentration, and p should be from the same batch used q to make the stock solution (Test Method E 1706).

12.4.11.2 Organic solvents such as triethylene glycol, methanol, ethanol, or acetone may be used, but they might affect TOC levels, introduce toxicity, alter the geochemical properties of the sediment, or stimulate undesirable growth of microorganisms. Acetone is highly volatile and processed. Cellulose membranes are unsuitable because they decompose too quickly; might leave the system more readily than triethylene glycol, methanol, or ethanol. A variety surfactant should not be used in the preparation of p a stock solution because it might affect the bioavailability, form, or toxicity of the test material.

12.4.11.3 To reduce the possibility of solvent-related artifacts, the spiking process should include a step which allows the solvent to evaporate before addition of sediment and water followed by rolling (McLeese et al. 1980 (131); Muir et al. 1982 (132); Adams et al. 1985 (98)). Highly volatile organic compounds have been spiked into sediments using co-solvents followed by shaking in an aqueous slurry. When highly volatile compounds are used, immediate testing in covered flow-through systems is recommended (Knezovich and Harrison, 1988 (96)).

12.4.11.4 There is some uncertainty concerning artifacts introduced by the use of which may be inappropriate for studies solvents. The use of certain nonpolar compounds. However, efforts a polar, water soluble carrier such as methanol was found to use semipermeable membrane devices filled have little effect on the partitioning of non-ionic compounds to dissolved organic matter at concentrations up to 15 % carrier by volume (Webster et al. 1990 (133)). However, another study showed that changes in partitioning by a factor of about two might occur with 10 % methanol as a nonpolar sorbent show some promise co-solvent for anthracene sorption (Nkedi-Kizza et al. 1985 (134)). The effect of carrier volume on partitioning of organic chemicals in sediments is equivocal. However, because solvents might be either directly or indirectly toxic to the test organisms, caution should be taken to minimize the amount of carrier used. In addition, the use of a carrier such as acetone might result in dialysis systems for faster

equilibration of spiked organic compounds (Schults et al. 1992 (135); Test organisms).

12.4.11.5 Shell coating techniques which introduce dry chemical(s) to wet sediment have recently also been exposed within peeper chambers in which larger mesh sizes developed, principally to eliminate the potential disadvantages of 149 µm were used successfully in oxic sediments solvent carriers. The chemical may be either coated on the inside walls of the container (Ditsworth et al. 1990 (56); Burgess et al. 2000 (136) (134, 136, 137). **Equilibration**) or coated onto silica sand (Kane-Driscoll and Landrum, 1997 (137); Cole et al. 2000 (138); see 12.4.5). **In each shell coating method, the chemical is dissolved in solvent, placed in a glass spiking container (with or without sand), and the solvent is slowly evaporated before addition of conductivity was observed within hours of peeper insertion into the wet sediment. Replicate peepers revealed extreme heterogeneity in Wet sediment then sorbs the chemical from the dry surfaces. It is important that the solvent be allowed to evaporate before adding sediment or water.**

#### 12.5 Preparation of Sediment Dilutions :

12.5.1 Spiked or field-contaminated sediments can be diluted with whole sediment to obtain different contaminant concentrations for concentration-effects testing. The diluent sediment should have physicochemical characteristics similar to the test sediment, including organic carbon content and particle size, but should not contain concentrations of contaminants above background levels (Test Method E 1706, Burton 1991 (126)). Diluent sediment has included formulated sediment as well as reference or control sediment. Diluted sediment samples should be homogenized and dissolved oxygen. Sediments that were high equilibrated in clay and silt fractions were usually anoxic and did not allow for organism exposure accordance with procedures described in-situ.

11.9 Based on the literature previously discussed, no clear superior method exists for isolating interstitial water for toxicity testing purposes. Each approach has unique strengths 11.5 and weaknesses that vary 12.4.10.

12.5.2 The diluent sediment should be combined with the sediment's characteristics, contaminants of concern, toxicity test sediment in ratios determined on a dry weight basis to be used, and resolution necessary (that is, achieve the data quality objectives). For most toxicity test procedures, relatively large volumes of interstitial water desired nominal dilution series. Volume to volume dilutions have also been performed (for example, litres) Schlekot et al. 1995 (139) ; Johns et al. 1985 (140)), but weight to weight dilutions are frequently needed for static or static renewal exposures with the associated water chemistry analyses. The use of in-situ methods are preferred if smaller volumes are adequate and logistics allow because they provide more accurate control and enable a more straightforward calculation of dose-response curves.

12.5.3 Results from dilution experiments should be interpreted with care. There can be non-linear responses due to produce sample artifacts. The collection non-equilibrium, non-linear sorption-desorption processes that cannot always be adequately controlled (Nelson et al. 1993 (97)). Nelson et al. (1993) (97) found that analyses of diluted sediments did not match nominal concentrations as estimated by physical characteristics and suggested that are then subjected to immediate side port suctioning or centrifugation at ambient bottom water temperatures chemical characterization is needed to determine effects of manipulations (that is, mixing) and red-issuing changes (that is, oxygenation of complexing agents such as acid volatile sulfides). Hayward (2003 (141)) successfully conducted sediment dilution studies with field-collect-perm sediments by matching the placement physical characteristics of the sediments, and by including a prolonged (3 month) equilibration period of the diluted sediment before conducting toxicity testing in-situ samplers. However, it will be necessary for most the laboratory or field-colonization studies.

#### 12.6 Preparation of Sediment Elutriates :

12.6.1 Sediment toxicity studies have evaluated aqueous extractions of suspended sediment called elutriates. The elutriate method was initially developed to collect larger quantities assess the effects of samples, preferably multiple cores, that dredging operations on water quality (USACE, 1976 (142)). Elutriate manipulations are processed in an inert environment and centrifuged at ambient temperatures also applicable to any situation where the resuspension of sediment-bound toxicants is of concern, such as rapidly as possible. If other methods bioturbation and procedures are used for interstitial water collection (such as grab samplers, exposure to oxygen, extraction at room temperature, delayed extraction, squeezing, storms, and filtration), the investigator should realize that the interstitial might disturb sediments and affect water sample has been altered from in-situ conditions.

## 12. Characterization

12.1 Sediments that are to be analyzed quality (USEPA/USACE, 1991(32), 1998 (34) ; Ankley et al. 1991 (110)). USEPA/USACE (1998) (34) lists eighteen freshwater, estuarine, or marine aquatic organisms as candidates for elutriate toxicity should be characterized physically testing. Standard effluent toxicity test procedures are also appropriate for elutriates, including tests with various vascular and chemically. At a minimum, this characterization should include moisture content (total solids and specific gravity), organic carbon or volatile matter content, and particle size. More extensive characterization may be necessary non-vascular plant species (Ingersoll, 1995 (143)).

12.6.2 Elutriate tests are not intended to reflect the study objectives. The degree toxicity of precision and accuracy necessary for these analyses will depend on the study's data quality objectives. By their nature, sediments interstitial waters or whole sediments, as there are very heterogenous; they exhibit significant temporal and spatial heterogeneity differences in the laboratory and contaminant bioavailability in-situ. Lappalainen the two types of media (Harkey et al. 1994 (138) demonstrated seasonal effects on(144)). In general, elutriates have been found to be less toxic than bulk sediments or interstitial water chemistry due fractions (Burgess et al. 1993 (145); Ankley et al. 1991 (110)), although in some studies elutriates have been found to differences between

sediment and overlying water temperature. Convective heat transfer, be more toxic (Hoke et al. 1990 (146)) or equally as toxic (Flegel et al. 1994 (147)) relative to interstitial water currents, and water.

12.6.3 While there are several procedural variations, the basic method for elutriate preparations involves combining various mixtures of soluble water and gaseous materials was observed sediment (usually in the spring and autumn to sediment depths ratio of tens of centimetres. Replicate samples should be analyzed 4 parts water to 1 part sediment, by volume) and shaking, bubbling or stirring the variance in sediment characteristics mixture for 1 h (Ross and analytical methods. Sediment characterization Henebry, 1989; Daniels et al. 1989 (148); Ankley et al. 1991 (110); Burgess et al. 1993 (145); USEPA/USACE, 1991(32), 1998 (34)). It is likely that chemical concentrations will vary depending on the study objectives and contaminants of concern. Several additional characteristics that may assist in data interpretation and elutriate procedure used. The water phase is then separated from the quality assurance (QA)/quality control (QC) process (that is, assessing sediment integrity, artifact production, optimal extraction, and test procedures) include the following: in situ temperature, ash-free weight (total volatile solids), total and dissolved organic carbon (determined by titration settling or combustion), pore water salinity (for estuarine and marine sediments), pH, Eh, ammonia, and cation-exchange capacity. Many of the characterization methods have centrifugation. Once an elutriate has been prepared, it should be analyzed or used in biological tests immediately, or as soon as possible thereafter. It should be stored at 4°C for soils and waters, and not longer than 24 h, unless the method dictates otherwise (Environment Canada, 1994 (2); USEPA/USACE, 1991 (32), 1998 (34)). For toxicity test exposures exceeding 24 h, fresh elutriate should be consulted prepared daily.

12.6.4 Filtering the elutriate is generally discouraged, but it might be prescribed for further information (13, 139-141).

12.2 The moisture content some toxicity tests. Filtration can reduce the toxicity of sediments is measured by drying sediment elutriates due to sorption of dissolved chemicals on the sediments at 50 filtration membrane and retention of colloids. If colloidal material needs to 105°C to be removed, serial or double centrifugation is generally a consistent weight (13).

12.3 Volatile matter content preferred alternative. If an elutriate is often measured instead of, filtered, it is recommended that only pre-treated filters be used and in some cases in addition to, organic carbon content as a measure of that the total amount first 10 to 15 mL of organic matter in a sample. This measurement is made by ashing the sediments at high temperature and reporting elutriate to pass through the percent ash-free dry weight filter be discarded (Environment Canada, 1994 (142-144). Although(2)). Testing with a filtered elutriate should include an assessment to determine the exact method for ashing extent of analyte adsorption or desorption to or from the filter.

### 13. Collection of Interstitial Water

13.1 Sediment interstitial water, or pore water, is often not specified, defined as the water occupying the spaces between sediment or soil particles (Terminology E 943). Interstitial water might occupy about 50 % (or more) of the volume of a depositional (silt-clay) sediment. The interstitial water is 550± 50°C (13, 39) for 2 in contact with sediment surfaces for relatively long periods of time and therefore, might become contaminated due to 24 h.

12.4 Carbon fractions that may be partitioning of the contaminants from the surrounding sediments. In addition, interstitial waters might reflect ground water - surface water transition zones in determining toxicant fate and bioavailability include upwelling or downwelling areas. In these areas, their chemistry might be more reflective of ground or surface waters at the site. Therefore, flow, residence time, and other physicochemical factors (for example, pH, temperature, redox potential, organic carbon (39, 145-147), dissolved organic carbon (84), dissolved inorganic carbon, sediment sulfides, carbonates, mineralogy) might have varying roles in determining whether interstitial waters are contaminated.

13.1.1 In many depositional sediments, interstitial waters are relatively static, and reactive particulate carbon (148, 149). Reactive particulate carbon is that portion which equilibrates with therefore, contaminants in the aqueous phase. Sediment organic carbon content has been measured by wet oxidation, which is also interstitial water and in the solid phase are expected to be at thermodynamic equilibrium. This makes interstitial waters useful for assessing contaminant levels and associated toxicity. Interstitial water is often isolated to provide either a matrix for toxicity testing, or to provide an indication of the organic carbon content of concentration or partitioning of contaminants within the sediment matrix.

#### 13.2 General Procedures:

13.2.1 Interstitial water (150). Organic carbon analyses have also been conducted sampling has become especially important because interstitial water toxicity tests yield additional information not provided by whole-sediment elutriate or sediment extract tests (Carr and Chapman 1992 (149); SETAC 2003 (150)). Furthermore, interstitial water toxicity tests are useful in sediment toxicity identification evaluation (TIE) studies (for example, Burgess 1996 (151), modification of the titration method; Carr 1998 (152), or combustion after the removal of carbonate by the addition of HCl and subsequent drying; Burton et al. 2001 (67)).

12.5 Sediment particle size (153) as test procedures and sample manipulation techniques can be measured by numerous methods (139, 153, faster and see Guide D 4822), depending on easier to conduct than whole-sediment toxicity tests (SETAC, 2003 (150)). Thus, the particle properties collection of interstitial water has become increasingly important in sediment quality monitoring programs.

13.2.2 Interstitial water sampling is most suitable for sediment types ranging from sandy to uncompacted silt-clays (Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154); SETAC, 2003 (150)). Such sampling is not typically performed on sediments with coarse particle size (such as gravel) or on hard, compacted clays, as the potential for interstitial water contamination in these sediment types is relatively low.

13.2.3 As with all sampling discussed in this standard, the principle aim is to use procedures that minimize changes to the in situ condition of the water. It should be recognized that most sediment collection and settling processing methods have been shown to alter interstitial water chemistry (for example, Schults et al. 1992 (135) ; Bufflap and Allen, 1995 (155) ; Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154)), thereby potentially altering contaminant bioavailability and toxicity.

13.2.4 Laboratory-based methods (for example, centrifugation, pressurization, or suction) are commonly used as alternatives to in-situ interstitial water collection (see 13.3). While these methods have been shown to alter interstitial water chemistry, they are sometimes necessary or preferred, especially when larger sample volumes are required (for example, for toxicity testing).

13.2.5 Both in-situ and laboratory-based or ex-situ methods might be appropriate for many study objectives. It is important that the clay fractions same procedures are greater than 15 % (155). Particle size distribution used for all stations sampled in a study so that appropriate comparisons can be made. Furthermore, the sediment depth at which interstitial water is often determined by wet-sieving sampled (either using in-situ or ex-situ extraction methods) should match the depth of interest in the study (see 10.1, SETAC 2003 (4, 13, 39, 139, 155). Particle size classes might also (150)). For example, samples for dredging remediation should be determined sampled to the depth to be disturbed by dredging activity, whereas samples for a status and trends survey should be collected at the biologically active depth (often <15 cm). Fig. 10 summarizes the major considerations for selecting in-situ or ex-situ procedures in a given study.

13.2.6 The two major issues of concern regarding interstitial water sample integrity are: (1) the ability of the sampling device to maintain physicochemical conditions in the natural state by minimizing adsorption or leaching of chemicals to or from the device, and (2) the ability to maintain the sample in the redox state existing at the site. Precautions required to reduce sample artifacts will vary with each study as indicated in the following sections.

### 13.3 In-situ Collection:

13.3.1 In situ methods might be superior to ex-situ methods for collecting interstitial water, as they are less subject to sampling or extraction related artifacts and therefore, might be more likely to maintain the chemical integrity of the sample (Sarda and Burton 1995 (156, 157) (154), pipet method SETAC 2003 (139, 158), settling techniques (150) (159), X-ray absorption). However, in situ methods have generally produced relatively small volumes of interstitial water, and are often limited to wadeable or diver-accessible water depths. These logistical constraints have limited their use and applicability in sediment monitoring studies.

13.3.2 The principal methods for in situ collection of interstitial water involve either deployed “peepers” (Bufflap and Allen, 1995 (155); Brumbaugh et al. 1994 (155, 158)(27); Adams, 1991 (156); Carignan and laser light scattering Lean, 1991 160). The pipet method may be superior to the hydrometer method (157); Carignan et al. 1985 (292); Bottomley and Bayly, 1984 (158)) or suction techniques (Watson and Frickers, 1990 (159); Knezovich and Harrison, 1988 (96); Howes et al. 1985 (160)). A summary of these method-as is provided in Table 13. Both methods have a Coulter (particle size) counter might high likelihood of maintaining in situ conditions. In cases where in situ deployment is impractical, peepers or suction devices can be placed in relatively undisturbed sediments collected by core or grab samplers (see Section 10).

#### 13.3.3 Peeper Methods:

13.3.3.1 Peepers are small chambers with membrane or mesh walls containing either distilled water or clean water of the appropriate salinity or hardness. Samples are collected by burying the devices in sediments and allowing surrounding interstitial waters to infiltrate. In principle, dissolved solutes will diffuse through the porous wall into the peeper and the contained water will reach equilibrium with the ambient interstitial water. The design concept for sediment peepers originated as modifications of the dialysis bag technique used by Mayer (1976 (162, 163)(161) to obtain definite particle sizes) and Hesselein (1976 (162)), and has been modified for use in laboratory sediment toxicity tests (Doig and Liber, 2000 (163)). The initial designs consisted of either a flat base plate or a cylindrical dialysis probe (Bottomley and Bayly, 1984 (158)) with compartments covered by dialysis membranes and a manifold for collection of multiple samples at various depths in the fine material. This device gives the fraction sediment profile Fig. 11. Further modifications to these designs have incorporated sampling ports, large sample compartments, and various types of particles membranes with an apparent spherical diameter. The Coulter was found different pore sizes. These modifications are usually required based on specific project objectives regarding sample volumes and contaminants of interest.

13.3.3.2 Various peeper devices have been recently used effectively to collect interstitial water. For example, a simplified design using a 1 µm polycarbonate membrane over the most versatile method overall opening of a polyethylene vial was successful in capturing elevated levels of copper and zinc (Brumbaugh et al. 1994 (27)). Other designs have been used to collect non-ionic organic compounds in a review by Swift, variety of aquatic systems (Bennett et al. 1996 (164)); however, this method does not provide settling information. Another method for determining the particle size distribution of a very fine fraction is through the use of electron microscopy Axelman et al. 1999 (165). The collection technique for the very fine materials can result) and in aggregation overlying water (Huckins et al. 1990 (166) ).

13.3.3.3 Peepers have also been used to larger colloidal structures expose organisms to sediments in situ (Burton et al. 2001 (165-3) ). Burton et al. (1999 (1687)) successfully introduced organisms to aerobic sediments using peepers. However, anoxic sediments are not amenable to in situ organism exposure.

13.3.3.4 Different materials might be advisable in constructing peepers depending on the contaminants of particle sizing methods have shown that some produce similar results and others do not. These differences concern. For example, for many

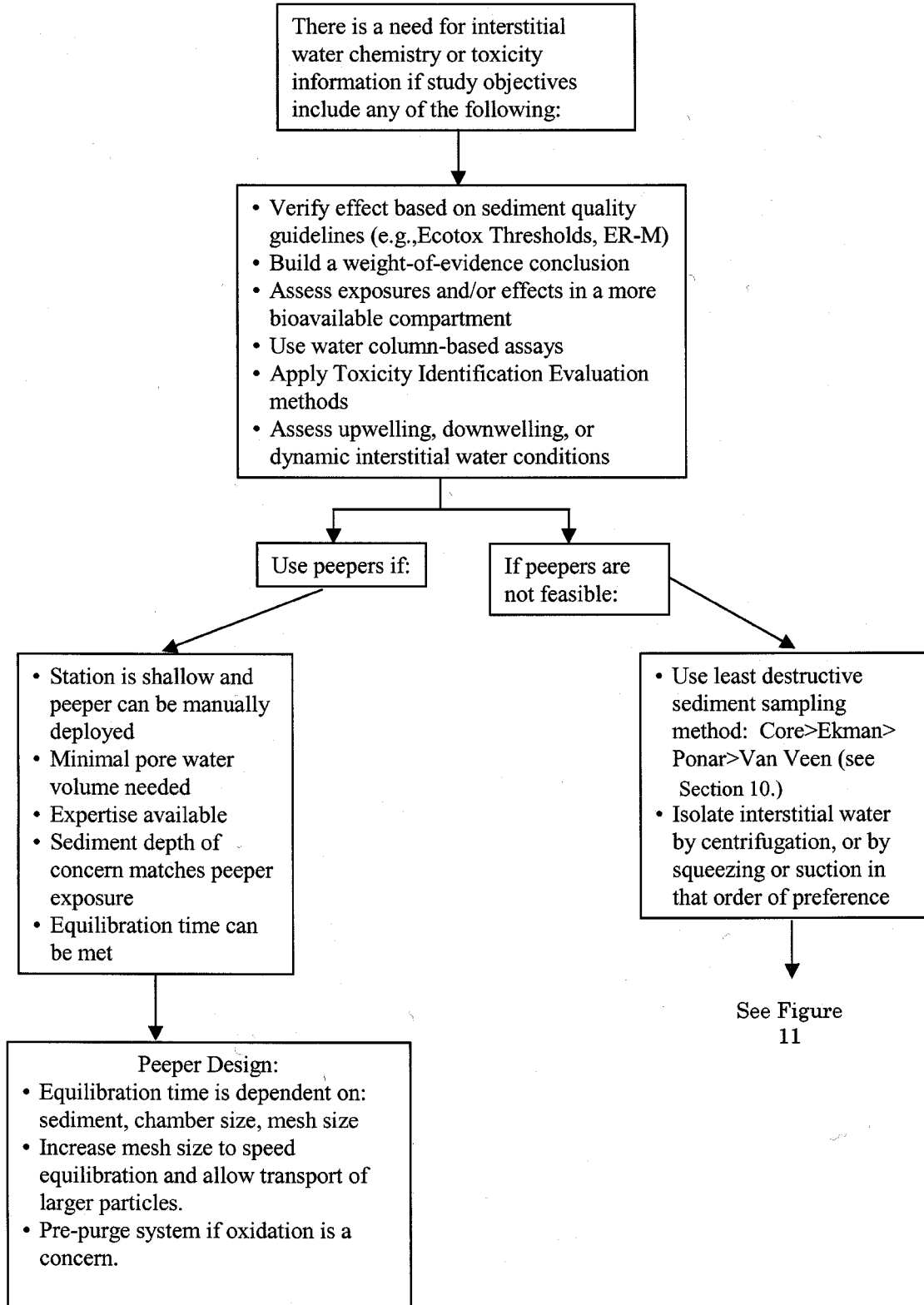


FIG. 10 Considerations for Selecting the Appropriate Type of Interstitial Water Sampling Method (USEPA 2001 (1))

contaminants, peepers constructed from acrylic material appear to yield interstitial water samples with minimal chemical artifacts (Burton et al. 2001 (153)). Some polymer materials might be inappropriate for studies of certain non-ionic organic compounds. Cellulose membranes are also unsuitable, as they decompose too quickly. Plastic samplers can contaminate anoxic sediments with diffusible oxygen (Carignan et al. 1994 (168)).

**TABLE 13 In-situ Interstitial Water Collection Methods (Sarda and Burton 1995(154), SETAC 2003 (150))**

NOTE—Incorporation of filtration into any collection method might result in loss of metal and organic compounds.

Device	Sediment Depth, cm	Sample Volume, L <sup>3</sup>	Advantages	Disadvantages
Peepers	0.2 to 10	≤ 0.5	Most accurate method, reduced artifacts, no lab processing; relatively free of effects from temperature, oxidation, and pressure; inexpensive and easy to construct; some selectivity possible depending on nature of sample via specific membranes; wide range of membrane/mesh pore sizes, and/or internal solutes or substrates available.	Requires deployment by hand, thus requiring diving in >0.6 m depth water; requires hours to days for equilibration (varies with site and chamber); some membranes such as dialysis/cellulose are subject to biofouling; must deoxygenate chamber and materials to prevent oxidation effects; some construction materials yield chemical artifacts; some chambers only allow small sample volumes; care must be used on collection to prevent sample oxidation.
In situ Suction	0.2 to 30	≤ 0.25	Reduced artifacts, gradient definition; rapid collection, no lab processing; closed system which prevents contamination; methods include airstone, syringes, probes, and core-type samplers.	Requires custom, non-standard collection devices; small volumes; limited to softer sediments; core airstone method; difficult in some sediments and in deeper water (> 1 m); method might require diving for deployment in deep waters; methods used infrequently and by limited number of laboratories.

13.3.3.5 In preparation for interstitial water collection, peeper chambers should be filled with deoxygenated water, which can be prepared by nitrogen purging for few minutes before insertion. If sediment oxidation is a concern, the peepers should be transported to differenees the deployment site in a sealed oxygen-free water bath to minimize changes to the partiele property being measured. That is, the Malvern Laser Sizer and Electrozone Particle Counter sediment-water equilibrium caused by dissolved oxygen interactions. However, during peeper equilibration periods, anoxic conditions are sizing techniques; likely to be quickly reestablished. In addition, when samples are collected and processed, exposure to oxygen should be minimized. It may be useful to measure concentrations of oxygen in sediment where in situ samples are deployed for collection of interstitial water.

13.3.3.6 Following initial placement, the hyd equilibration time for peepers may range from hours to a month, but a deployment period of one to two weeks is most often used (Adams, 1991 (156); Call et al. 1999 (169) ; Steward and SediGraph determine sedimentation diameter based on particle settling Malley, 1999 (154, 169-171). It(170) ). Equilibration time is a function of sediment type, study objectives, contaminants of concern, and temperature (for example, Skalski and Burton, 1991(171); Carr et al. 1989(172); Howes et al. 1985 (160); Simon et al. 1985 (174); Mayer, 1976 (161) ). Membrane pore size also affects equilibration time, with larger pore sizes being used to achieve reduced equilibration times (Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154)). For example, using a peeper with a 149-µm pore size, Adams (1991 (156)) reported equilibration of conductivity within hours of peeper insertion into the sediment. Thus, it appears that incorporates particle settling as equilibration time is a measure, as opposed to strictly sediment sizing.

12.6 Various methods have been recommended for determining function of the bioavailable fractions type of metals in sediments (71, 172-174). One extraction procedure, cation-exchange capacity, provides information relevant contaminant, sediment type, peeper volume, and mesh pore size.

13.3.3.7 Peepers with large-pored membranes, while shortening equilibration time, also allow particulates to metal bioavailability studies (140). Amorphous oxides enter the chamber. The larger solids tend to settle to the bottom of iron the peeper chamber, and manganese, and reactive particulate carbon, have been implicated as caution should be used to avoid collecting the solids when retrieving the primary influences on water sample from the metal sorption potential chamber. Colloidal particles will remain suspended in the sample and thereby present an artifact, but the concentration of such particles is typically lower than that found in laboratory- centrifuged samples (Chin and Gschwend, 1991 (75, 173, 175-177):(173)).

13.3.3.8 In several studies, analysis of interstitial water from replicate peepers has demonstrated variable heterogeneity in water quality characteristics (Frazier et al. 1996 (175) ; Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154)). The m potential for high variability in intersutitital water chemical characteristics should be taken into account when developing the sampling design.

13.3.4 Suction Methods—There are a variety of acid volatile sulfide (AVS) suction devices for collecting interstitial water. A typical suction device consists of a syringe or tube of varying length, with one or more ports located at the desired sampling positions. The device is inserted into the sediment to the desired depth and divalent metal concentrations associated a manual, spring-operated, or vacuum gas suction is applied to directly retrieve the water sample. A variation on this approach employs a peeper-like porous cup or perforated tube with AVS extraction provides insight filters. The unit is inserted into the sediment for a period of time, allowing interstitiavl water to infiltrate the chamber before suction is applied. The samples are then retrieved by suction. Another variation that has been used successfully employs an air stone embedded into the sediment that forces interstitial water upward where it can be collected via syringe or tube. All of these suction methods generally yield smaller quantities of interstitial water than peepers, and chemical (toxicological) artifacts are more likely due to greater potential exposure of interstitial water to oxygen.

### 13.3.5 Processing of Field-Collected Interstitial Water Samples:

13.3.5.1 Following sample retrieval, interstitial water might need to be recovered and stabilized quickly to prevent oxidative changes or volatilization (Carignan, 1984 (7176) ).-E Containers should be filyexd with no headspace to minimize changes in dissolved oxygen and contaminant bioavailability. Procedures for staebilizations are usually removed dependent on the analyses to be performed. When non-volatile compounds are the target analytes, acidification is often stipulated, while organic carbon and

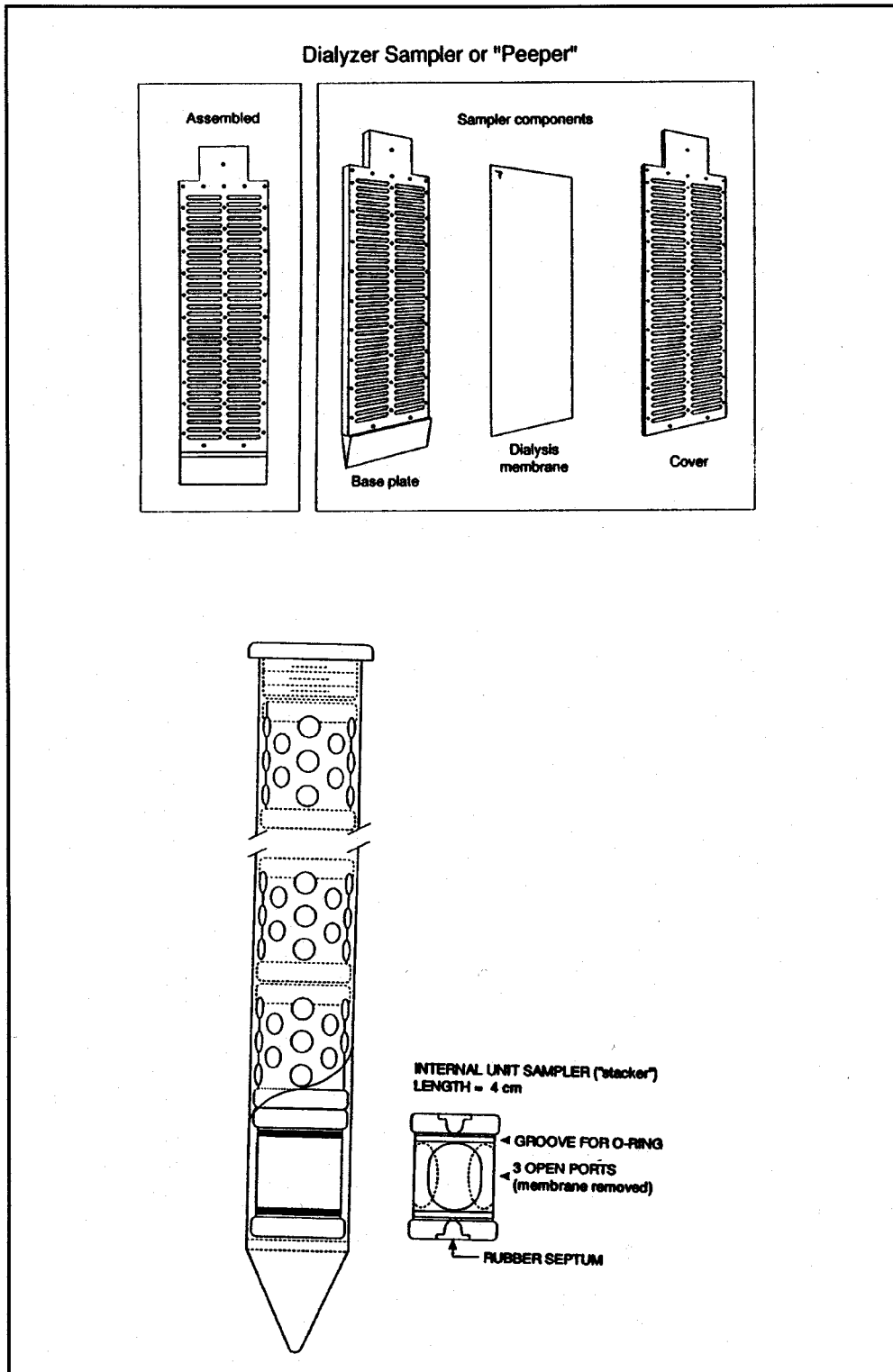


FIG. 11 Front View and Components of Peeper Sampling Devices (Top: Plate Device; Bottom: Cylindrical Probe; USEPA 2001 (1))

methane may be stabilized with cation displacing solutions, saturated mercury chloride (Mudroch and MacKnight, 1994 (36)). Samples for example, neutral ammonium acetate, chloride, sodium acetate, chemical analyses should be preserved immediately, if appropriate, or cooled to 4°C as soon as possible.

13.3.5.2 Samples to be analyzed for toxicity are normally cooled to 4°C as soon as possible for transport to the laboratory. USEPA methods for toxicity testing of surface waters and effluents (USEPA 1991 (177)) recommend that samples not be frozen



in storage or transport. However, recent information suggests that freezing of interstitial water may not affect toxicity in some cases (Ho et al. 1997 (178). However, the extraction, Carr and Chapman, 1995 (179), SETAC 2003 (150)). Unless a demonstration of saltwater or calcareous sediments, acceptability is often complicated by complexation effects or made for the dissolution sites of other sediment components (174, 179). Other extractants and associated advantages and disadvantages have been discussed (174, 177, 180, 181). Some extractants that have been used successfully in evaluations interest, interstitial water samples should not be frozen before biological testing.

13.4 *Ex-situ Extraction of trace metals in nondetriral fractions Interstitial Water:*

13.4.1 Ex-situ interstitial water collection methods are often necessary when relatively large volumes of sediments interstitial water are EDTA or HCl (174, 182, 183). Metal partitioning in sediments might be determined by using sequential extraction procedures that fractionate the sediments into several components such required (such as interstitial water, ion exchangeable, easily reducible organic, and residual sediment components (95, 180, 184, 185). Unfortunately, no one method for toxicity testing), when in-situ collection is clearly superior to the others at this not viable, or when a brief sampling time (179). This might partly be due to site-specific characteristics that influence bioavailability, for example, desorption and equilibration processes.

12.7 pH is important for many chemicals and important. While these extraction methods can be measured directly (13) or done in a 1 to 1 mixture of sediment and soil to water (186):

12.8 Eh measures are particularly important for metal speciation and for determining the extent of sediment oxidation. Redox gradients field or in sediments often change rapidly over a small depth and are disturbed easily. Care must be taken the laboratory, extraction in probe insertion the laboratory, just before analysis or testing, is preferable to allow equilibration maintain as close to occur when measuring Eh. These measurements are potentiometric its original state as possible during transport and measured with a platinum electrode relative to a standard hydrogen electrode storage (SETAC 2003 (13):

12.9 Biochemical oxygen demand and chemical oxygen demand might provide useful information (150), Table 14). Guidance in some cases (13). Sediment oxygen demand might also be a useful descriptor; however, a wide variety of methods exists (86, 137-190):

12.10 The analysis of toxicants this section reflects recommendations presented in sediments is generally performed by standard methods such as those of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (4, 13, 191). Acid digests are necessary for bound metal extraction. Soxhlet several recent publications, including proceedings from two workshops dealing with interstitial water extraction is generally best for organics but depends on the extraction parameters (192, 193). Concentrations are generally reported on a dry weight or organic carbon basis. The sample size requirements for chemical and physical analysis are generally as follows: organics, 250 g (wet); metals, 100 g; ammonia, 100 g; grain size, 500 g; total organic carbon, 50 g; handling methods, and total solids, 50 g.

**13. Manipulations**

13.1 Manipulation of sediments is often required to yield consistent material for toxicity testing and laboratory experiments. The manipulations reviewed use in this section are as follows: toxicity applications: ( 1) a dredged materials management program workshop on interstitial water extraction methods and sample storage in relation to tributyltin analysis (Hoffman, 1998 (180)) and (2) spiking, (3) sieving, (4) dilutions for concentration-effect determinations, (5) elutriates; a workshop on interstitial water toxicity testing including interstitial water extraction methods and (6) capping. See 9.7 applications (SETAC 2003 (150)).

**TABLE 14 Recommended Procedures for Extraction of Interstitial Water in the Laboratory (USEPA 2001 (1))**

Centrifugation is the generally preferred laboratory method for the extraction of interstitial water.

Extraction of interstitial water should be completed as soon as possible.

Interstitial water that has accumulated on the surface of the homogenized sediment sample should be mixed into the sediment before the sample is partitioned among centrifuge bottles.

Unless other program-specific guidance is available, sediments should be centrifuged at high speed (for example, 8000 to 10 000 × g) for 30 min.

Unless site-specific information suggests otherwise, centrifuging should be at 4°C to minimize temperature-mediated biological and chemical processes.

Interstitial water should be preserved immediately for chemical analyses or analyzed as soon as possible after extraction, unpreserved. For toxicity testing, interstitial water should be stored at 4°C for not longer than 24 h, unless the test method dictates otherwise.

Filtration should be avoided unless required by a test method because it might reduce interstitial water toxicity. Double (serial) centrifugation (low speed followed by high speed) should be used instead.

### 13.4.2 *General Procedures:*

13.4.2.1 Centrifugation and squeezing are the two most common techniques for discussions of subsampling, compositing, collecting interstitial water, and are generally preferred when large volumes are required. Other methods include pressurization (for example, sediment squeezing, 13.3.4 or homogenization:

13.2 Mixing of sediments is conducted vacuum filtration, 13.3.5) devices, which can be used to recover small volumes of interstitial water.

13.4.2.2 Regardless of the method used, interstitial water should be preserved immediately for chemical analyses, if appropriate, or analyzed as soon as possible after sample collection if unpreserved (such as for toxicity testing; Hoffman, 1998 (180) ; SETAC 2003 (150)). Significant chemical changes can occur even when interstitial water is uniform in color, texture, stored for periods as short as 24 h (Hulbert and moisture Brindle, 1975 (182) ; Watson et al. 1985 (181); Kemble et al. 1999 (85); Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154); SETAC 2003 (150)).

13.4.2.3 If sediments are anoxic, as most depositional sediments are, sample processing, including mixing of interstitial water that yields precise results has separated from the sediment, should be conducted in an inert atmosphere or with minimal atmospheric contact. Exposure de to air can result in oxidation of toxicity. For field-collected sediments, contaminants, thereby altering bioavailability (Bray et al. 1973 (183); Lyons et al. 1979 (184) ; Howes et al. 1985 (160)). Air exposure can also result in loss of volatile sulfides, which might increase the availability of sulfide-bound metals (Allen et al. 1993 (185); Bufflap and Allen, 1995 (155)). In addition, iron and manganese oxyhydroxides are quickly formed upon exposure to air. These compounds readily complex with trace metals, thus altering metals-related toxicity (Bray et al. 1973 (183); Troup et al. 1974 (186); Burton, 1991 (126) ; Bufflap and Allen, 1995 (155) ). Maintaining anoxic processing conditions is not necessary when study objectives are concerned with exposures to aerobic sediments, or if target contaminants are unaffected by oxidation in short-term toxicity testing.

### 13.4.3 *Centrifugation:*

13.4.3.1 Centrifugation is the generally preferred laboratory method for collection of sampling, depth interstitial water (SETAC 2003 (150)). It is a relatively simple procedure that allows rapid collection of biological activity, contaminant solubility and partitioning characteristics, and depth large volumes of interstitial water. It also facilitates the maintenance of antoxic conditions (if required). However, centrifugation, like other ex-situ procedures, might yield chemical or toxicological artifacts due to the extraction procedures themselves, which is dependent on might alter the historical contamination natural equilibrium between interstitial water and sedimentation rates for sediment.

13.4.3.2 Before centrifugation, the study site. As a result, mixing of various layers of sediments sediment sample is homogenized and placed into centrifuge bottles. If the homogenized sample is stored before centrifugation, interstitial water might result in either accumulate on the dilution or enhancement surface of concentrations (see Section 10 the sediment. This overlying water should be mixed into the sediment before subsampling for additional relevant discussions). Hand mixing centrifugation. Samples are then partitioned among centrifuge bottles. In general, about 50 % of sediment moisture content can be accomplished by blending with a spatula (45, 61, 194-198), rolling the extracted as interstitial water. If interstitial water volume requirements are lower, smaller sediment out flat on subsamples can be used.

13.4.3.3 Interstitial water has been isolated over a sheet range of plastic or pre-combusted foil centrifugal forces and tumbling by raising each corner of the sheet in succession, or by coning (mounding the sediment) followed by quartering durations (Landrum et al. 1987 (187); Giesy et al. 1988 (188); Schults et al. 1992 (135) ; Burgess et al. 1993 (145); Ankley et al. 1990 (189); Schubauer-Berigan and remixing Ankley, 1991 (199, 200). A variety (190); Ankley and Schubauer-Berigan, 1994 (191); Kemble et al 1994 (69)). For toxicity testing of mechanical mixers, such as interstitial waters, some sources recommend that sediments be centrifuged at 10 000 × g for a hand-held drill equipped with a polypropylene stirrer (for example, 30 min period (Environment Canada, 1994 62, 201), a rolling mill(2)). Such high speed centrifugation is often necessary to remove most colloids and dispersible clays (Adams, 1991 (201-203), or gyro-rotary(156); Chin and Eberbach shakers Gschwend, 1991 (173); Brownawell and Farrington, 1986 (192); Ankley and Schubauer-Berigan, 1994 (191)), which can introduce interferences to chemical or toxicological analysis. However, such high speed centrifuges are not commonly available. Furthermore, many materials (glass, plastic) are not able to withstand high centrifugation speeds. Finally, it should be noted that differ in color, texture, moisture, volume, toxicity is typically reduced with high speed centrifugation due to the removal of particle-associated contaminants (Sasson-Brickson and Burton 1991(193) ; Schults et al. 1992 (135); Ankley and Schubauer-Berigan, 1994 (191) ; Bufflap and Allen, 1995 (155) ).

13.4.3.4 Based on research to date, both slower and faster centrifugation speeds (and associated differences in colloidal or suspended solids removal) may be appropriate depending on the study objectives. High speed centrifugation may not be appropriate because one is interested in toxicity potential of the interstitial water in its entirety (that is, including colloidal material). However, if one is interested in comparing interstitial water contaminant concentrations to several minutes model exposure compartments for example (EPRI, 2000 (201, 204). Mechanical mixing may alter the particle size distribution. It(194)), then high speed centrifugation might be necessary. As our knowledge is therefore recommended still limited in this area, it is perhaps most important to note that centrifugation speed can have an effect on the observed toxicity and chemical characteristics. Therefore, a consistent centrifugation procedure (including speed and time) should be determined prior to identified and used throughout a study for all samples.

13.4.3.5 Centrifugation has been performed at various temperatures. It may be desirable to select a centrifugation temperature that reflects the mixing process in order to monitor potential changes in grain size due to situ sediment temperature so that equilibrium between the mixing process. Regardless particulate and interstitial water is not substantially altered. Alternatively, a temperature of the mixing method, the efficiency of mixing must also 4°C may be demonstrated by determining the coefficients of variation (205) for preferred to minimize temperature-mediated chemical or physical analyses from replicated samples (see 13.5 for further discussion).

13.3 *Spiking*—Whole sediments may and biological processes (Environment Canada, 1994 (2) ).

13.4.3.6 When centrifuging coarse sand, it might be spiked with specific chemicals in order desirable to determine the effects of single toxicants or mixtures of toxicants on biota use a modified centrifuge bottle to aid interstitial water recovery (USEPA/USACE, 1998 (45, 74, 76, 142, 200, 206-210)-(34)). The primary methods used to spike sediments modified bottle is equipped with contaminants involve dry and wet spiking techniques. Air-dried sediments have been spiked successfully with organic compounds in dose-response toxicity tests (45, 143, 208, 210, 211). However, air drying may result in losses an internal filter that can recover 75 % of volatile compounds the interstitial water, as well as changes compared to 25 to 30 % recovery from squeezing (Saager et al. 1990 (195)).

13.4.3.7 As discussed in sediment characteristics, especially particle size. The presence 11.2, all containers have limitations with regards to adsorption or leaching of air chemicals, ease of use, and air drying reliability. For example, polytetrafluoroethylene (PTF) bottles have also been shown used successfully up to change metal availability and complexation, and dry spiking is therefore not recommended. Wet spiking techniques are currently the most acceptable for the preparation 2500 × g when filled to 80 % of a spiked sediment, and several techniques capacity, but collapse at 3000 g (Burgess et al. 1993 (145)). Polycarbonate bottles have been used, depending on the chemical used successfully for tributyltin analyses in spiking interstitial water (Hoffman, 1998 (74, 200, 201, 206, 207, 210, 212, 213)).

13.4 Wet-spiking methodologies differ mainly in the amount (180). If small volumes of water are required for testing, higher speed centrifugation can be performed with glass tubes (up to 10 000 g, Word et al. 1987 (101) ). Larger glass tubes, however, can not be centrifuged at such high speeds. If metal toxicity is not a concern, then high speed centrifugation in larger stainless steel centrifuge tubes is suitable. If test samples are contaminated with photoreactive compounds such as PAHs, exposure of the mixture during spiking, solvent used sample to apply the toxicant; light should be minimized to limit degradation or alteration of potentially toxic compounds.

#### 13.4.4 *Sediment Squeezing:*

13.4.4.1 Isolation of interstitial water by squeezing has been performed using a variety of procedures and devices (Reeburgh, 1967 (196); Kalil and Goldhaker, 1973 (197); Jahnke, 1988 (198); Carr et al. 1989 (172) ; Long et al. 1990 (28); Watson and Frickers, 1990 (159); Adams, 1991 (156); Carr and Chapman, 1995 (179); Carr, 1998 (152)). Low-pressure mechanical squeezers can be constructed, and may provide specialized capacities such as collection of mixing, interstitial water profiles from core samples (Bender, et al. 1987 (199)). In many all cases, the compound interstitial water is either coated on the walls passed through a filter that is a part of the flask, squeezing apparatus.

13.4.4.2 Squeezing has been shown to produce a number of artifacts due to shifts in equilibrium from pressure, temperature, and an aqueous slurry (sediment gradient changes (for example, Froelich et al. 1979 (201) ; Kriukov and Manheim, 1982 (200) ; Bollinger et al. 1992 (206); Schults, 1992 (135)). Squeezing can affect the electrolyte concentration in the interstitial water particularly with a decrease in various proportions) added, or chemical concentrations near the carrier-containing mixture is added directly to end of the slurry. When the sediment-to-water ratio is adjusted for optimal mixing, sediments squeezing process. However, others reported that are too dense to mix by slurring squeezing did not produce artifacts in interstitial water have been mixed successfully using the rolling mill toxicity studies (Carr and Chapman 1995 (201-203). In addition to the rolling mill technique, thorough mixing of spiked sediments has been accomplished using Eberback(179) ; Carr 1998 (152); SETAC 2003 (150)). It is therefore recommended that if squeezing is performed, moderate pressures be applied along with electrolyte (conductivity) monitoring during extraction (Kriukov and gyro-rotary shakers Manheim, 1982 (62). A chemical can(200)). Squeezing should also be added performed at in situ ambient temperatures, as significant alterations to the interstitial water composition can occur when squeezing is conducted at temperatures different from ambient conditions (for example, Mangelsdorf et al. 1969 (202); Bischoff et al. 1970; Sayles et al. 1973 (203)).

13.4.4.3 Other sources of interstitial water alteration during squeezing are: contamination from overlying water; internal mixing of interstitial water during extrusion; and solid-solution reactions as interstitial water is expressed through the overlying sediment. As interstitial waters are displaced into upper sediment and allowed zones, they come in contact with solids with which they are not in equilibrium. This inter-mixing causes solid-solution reactions to occur. Most interstitial water chemical species are rapidly transformed, as observed with ammonia and trace metals (Rosenfeld, 1979 (204); Santschi et al. 1997 (205)). Bollinger et al. (1992) (65, 214-220). A carrier has occasionally been added directly (206) found elevated levels of several ions and dissolved organic carbon in squeezed samples as compared to samples collected by in situ peepers. The magnitude of the artifact will depend on the characteristics of the contaminant and redox potential.

#### 13.4.5 *Pressurized and Vacuum Devices :*

13.4.5.1 Other methods for extraction of interstitial water from sediment samples can include vacuum filtration (Jenne and Zachara, 1987 (41, 76-78, 169, 211, 213, 221-224)(127); Knezovich and Harrison, 1987 and the carrier evaporated before the

**addition (207); Winger and Lasier, 1991 (208)), gas pressurization (Reeburgh, 1967 (196)), and displacement (Adams, 1991 (156)). These methods typically recover only small volumes of interstitial water; and are not commonly used.**

13.4.5.2 Use of a hand vacuum with an aquarium stone is an effective vacuum filtration method (Winger and Lasier, 1991 (208); Sarda and Burton, 1995 (154)). The procedure typically involves attaching the chemical in air stone to a crystalline form; 50 mL syringe via plastic tubing, inserting it into the sediment to the desired depth, and then applying suction. This approach does not seem method can recover relatively large volumes of interstitial water; Santschi et al. (1997 (205)) used this procedure to result in compounds being sorbed extract up to sediment at the same sites as dosing under aqueous conditions 1,500 mL from 4 L of sediment. Sarda and Burton (1995 (205). Care should be taken (154) ) found that ammonia concentrations in water obtained by this procedure were similar to those collected by in situ peepers. Drawbacks to this method include loss of equilibrium between the interstitial water and homogenous mixing (see 13.2) no matter what technique the solids, filter clogging, and oxidation (Brinkman et al. 1982 (209)).

#### 14. Physicochemical Characterization of Sediment Samples

14.1 *General Information*—It is used for spiking. In addition, chemical analyses should be conducted often necessary or desirable to ensure that spiking is uniform determine certain physicochemical characteristics of sediments in the mixed material (see 13.5). The mixing time following spiking laboratory, in conjunction with toxicity testing or chemical analysis for inorganic or organic contaminants. This characterization should be limited include measurement of certain parameters known to a few minutes or hours (1-26), and temperatures mediate the availability of contaminants in sediment (Test Method E 1706). Bulk chemical concentrations alone should not be kept used to evaluate bioavailability (USEPA 1998 (210)). The following parameters are generally measured: pH (pore water), ammonia (pore water), total organic carbon, particle size distribution (for example, 4°C) due to percent sand, silt and clay), percent water content, salinity or hardness of pore water, and conductivity of pore water. Depending on the experimental design or study objectives, more extensive characterization may be necessary. Several additional characteristics that may occur assist in study implementation, data interpretation, or QA/QC (that is, assessing sediment integrity, artifact production, optimal extraction and test procedures) include: sediment biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), sediment chemical oxygen demand (COD), sediment oxygen demand (SOD), cation exchange capacity (CEC), Redox (Eh) or oxidation-reduction potential (ORP), total inorganic carbon, total volatile solids, acid volatile sulfides (AVS), simultaneously extracted metals (SEM), metals, petroleum hydrocarbons, other organic compounds (pesticides, PCBs, PAHs, and TCDD-dioxin), oil and grease, and dissolved organic carbon (DOC) in the pore water. Measurements of many sediment's physicochemical and microbiological characteristics that could alter bioavailability use analytical techniques originally developed for soils and toxicity. The mixing time might waters, and the literature should be extended consulted for details regarding recommended methodology (Black, 1965 (211); USGS, 1969 (212) ; Plumb, 1981(213); Page et al. 1982 (214)). The following sections provide rationale for making each type of sediment physicochemical measurement, along with brief descriptions of measurement techniques, and some metals (for example, cadmium and copper) without adverse effects (see Sections 9-12 references for additional discussion):

13.5 One further information and specific procedures.

##### 14.2 pH in Pore Water:

14.2.1 Sediment pH is often one of the single most important factors controlling speciation and equilibria for many chemicals including sulfides, ammonia, cyanide, and metals, all of both which ionize under the mixing methodology and chemical used influence of pH. The USEPA ammonia water-quality criterion, for example, is dependent in part on pH because ammonia toxicity is largely governed by the unionized ammonia fraction which is pH-dependent (USEPA, 1999 (215)). Metal (Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb, and Zn) speciation and bioavailability are also known to be affected by pH (Schubauer-Berigan and Ankley, et al. 1991 (190); Ho et al. 1999 (216)).

14.2.2 Generally, pH is measured using a pH meter consisting of a spiked sediment potentiometer, a glass electrode, a reference electrode, and a temperature compensating device. A circuit is completed through the potentiometer when the electrodes are submersed. General purpose process pH electrodes are available in a wide variety of configurations for in-line and submersion applications. Generally, electrodes with gel-filled references require less maintenance than electrodes with liquid-filled references. The latest instruments have microprocessors that homogeneous mixing occurs within automatically calculate and display the slope. Some older instruments have a percent-slope readout or (and) millivolt readout. For instruments with a millivolt readout, the measured electrode potential is calculated as the difference between millivolts measured at the known pH of two buffers.

14.2.3 Plumb (1981 (2013) found that coefficients of variation (CVs) ranged from 2.2 to 10.9 % (mean of 4.8 %) and Gonzalez (1995 (217)) described a method for cadmium levels measuring pH in cadmium-spiked sediment samples collected along using a longitudinal axis of an horizontally lying mixing jar (201). pH probe and meter. The CVs did not increase with nominal cadmium levels (as CdCl<sub>2</sub>, range from 3.5 to 14 mg/kg) added to probe was inserted into the sediment. Sig and pH directly measured after at least a 5 min equilibration time. Electrodes have also been used for direct measurements of pH in cadmium concentration existed among sampling locations within jars sediment pore water, or in some cases. Regarding organics, Ditsworth, et al a 1 to 1 mixture of sediment to water (Jackson, 1958 (201) reported that mixing fluoranthene into one jar(218)). Direct measurement of sediment pH is also possible using electrodes with "spear tip" designs allowing for greater penetration into the rolling-jar technique provided a CV of 11.5 % between sample locations within the jar, and no significant effect of the sample location was found. Good mixing efficiency sample. Detailed methods for fluoranthene was measuring pH in water and sediment are also shown described by Suedel, et al USEPA (1979 (219);1983 (52);1986 with(220) ;1987 (43)).

### 14.3 Ammonia in Pore Water:

14.3.1 Nitrogen, a CV nutrient associated with over-enrichment of 10.3 % when the chemical was added directly to sediment, the carrier evaporated, aquatic environments, exists in several forms, including ammonia. Ammonia is highly soluble in water where it is found in an un-ionized form ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) and the sediment mixed by hand for 60 s before the addition in an ionized form as  $\text{NH}_4^+$ . The extent of test water Landrum ionization is dependent on pH, temperature, and coworkers have found the following CVs for salinity (in seawater). Ammonia in sediments and pore water is generally the result of microbial degradation of nitrogenous organic material such as amino acids (Ankley et al. 1990 (189)). Pore water concentrations of ammonia as high as 50 mg/L have been measured in different experiments otherwise uncontaminated sediments (Murray et al. 1978 (221); Kristensen and using the slurry technique: pyrene, 4.8 Blackburn, 1987 (222)), while ammonia in pore waters from contaminated sediments can range from 50 to 6.9 %; phenanthrene, 4.7 to 9.3 %; BaP,  $5.8 \pm 3.2$  %; hexachlorobiphenyl,  $7.8 \pm 4.5$  %; more than 200 mg/L (Ankley et al. 1990 (189); Schubauer-Berigan and tetrachlorobiphenyl,  $9.1 \pm 5.0$  % (200, 210, unpublished data). CVs should be  $\leq 20$  % for the homogeneity Ankley, 1991 (190) ). Elevated concentrations of mixing to be considered valid ammonia (Sims et al. 1995a (223); Moore et al. 1997 (224)) and hydrogen sulfide (Sims et al. 1995b (225)). However, it should be noted that the concentrations of total chemical determined have frequently been found in the deeper dredged sediment matrix do not reflect the bioavailable fraction of the chemical.

13.6 The spiking method samples compared to be used is contingent on the study objectives, surficial sediment type, and compound(s) of interest. For example, when attempting to mimic in situ conditions, sediment cores should be spiked by adding an aqueous or suspended sediment solution of toxicants to the overlying water column, as would occur in the natural environment; or, when investigating the dredging samples.

14.3.2 The toxic effects or conditions of sediment perturbation where toxicant sorption processes ammonia are accelerated, mixing toxicants into sediment slurries may be advantageous. When investigating the source of sediment toxicity or interactive effects of sediment toxicants, it is useful generally considered to spike both the reference and control sediments be associated with the toxicant of concern present in un-ionized fraction ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) rather than the test sediment.

13.7 Organic compounds are generally added by means of a carrier solvent, such as acetone or methanol, to ensure that they are soluble ionic components ( $\text{NH}_4^+$  and remain  $\text{NH}_4\text{SO}_4^-$ ), which co-exist in solution during mixing. Word, et al (114) compared several sediment-labeling techniques using methylene chloride, ethanol, equilibria. This equilibrium is highly dependent on pH, temperature, pressure, salinity, and glycine as carriers. They found that glycine was superior when mixed with sediment for seven days. ionic concentrations of ammonia. The more toxic un-ionized ammonia fraction can be calculated using known total ammonia values and measurements of a polar water-soluble carrier such pH, pressure, salinity, and temperature as methanol has little effect on the partitioning of nonpolar compounds to dissolved organic matter at concentrations up to 15 % carrier described by volume Whitfield (1978 (226)). However, another study shows that changes in partitioning by a factor of approximately two might well occur with 10 % methanol as a cosolvent for anthracene sorption) and Thurston et al (1981 (227)). Caution should thus be taken).

14.3.3 USEPA (1983 (52) ), and APHA (1995 (228)) describe five methods available to minimize measure ammonia in the amount of carrier used. Metals pore water: the titrimetric method; the ammonia-selective electrode method; the ammonia-selective electrode method using known addition; the phenate method; and, the automated phenate method.

14.3.4 A preliminary distillation step may be required if interferences are added in aqueous solutions while organic compounds present (APHA, 1995 (228) ). Interferences (for example, sample constituents that interact with procedural reagents) are generally added described in an organic carrier.

13.8 A variety of methods have been used to spike sediments with metals, but detail in the two principal categories APHA 1995 (228) and Guide D 1426. Once distilled, the sample can be analyzed using any of the methods listed above.

14.3.5 The distillation and titration methods are as follows: metal addition directly to the sediment, which frequently used when ammonia concentrations are greater than 5.0 mg/L. The ammonia-selective electrode method is mixed appropriate when concentrations range between 0.03 and then water added (62, 87, 207, 212, 228); 1400 mg  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$ . Ammonia readings are calibrated against ammonia standards. To verify meter readings, confirmatory subsamples can be preserved and addition of analyzed for ammonia using the metal to the overlying waters standard Nessler technique described in APHA (1995) (74, 229-231)(228).

13.9 Highly volatile compounds have been spiked into sediments using cosolvents followed by shaking For the phenate method, APHA (1995) (228) recommends distillation with sulfuric acid when interferences are present (Bower and Holm-Hansen, 1980 (229)). The automated phenate method is suitable for pore waters with ammonia concentrations in the range of 0.02 and 2.0 mg  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$ .

### 14.4 Total Organic Carbon Content (TOC):

14.4.1 The total organic carbon (TOC) content of sediment is a measure of the total amount of oxidizable organic material. TOC is the sum of dissolved organic carbon (DOC), particulate organic carbon (POC) or suspended organic carbon (SOC), and colloids. TOC is an aqueous slurry. Immediate testing important parameter to measure in covered flow-through systems sediments because it is recommended a major determinant of non-ionic organic chemical bioavailability (Di Toro et al. 1991 (232)(86) when highly volatile compounds are used.

13.10 If). Metal bioavailability is also affected by the amount of TOC present in sediments. TOC is usually expressed as a solvent other than water percentage of the bulk sediment, and is used, b to normalize the dry-weight sediment

concentration of a chemical to the organic carbon content of the sediment. USEPA Equilibrium Partitioning Guidelines estimate bioavailability as a function of contaminant concentration sorbed to sediment-solvent-control organic carbon and sediment-negative control or reference sediment, or both, must be included contaminant concentration in the test. The solvent control must contain pore water under equilibrium conditions (USEPA, 1998 (210)). Recently, the highest concentration presence of solvent-present and must use solvent soot carbon from the same batch used to make the stock solution.

13.11—Once combustion of organic carbon (for example, fossil fuels) has been recognized as a fraction of the TOC in sediment. Soot carbon may alter the geochemistry and bioavailability of some organic contaminants (Gustafsson et al. 1997 (230)). Methods for determining organic carbon in sediment have been reviewed (Schumacher 2002 (231)).

14.4.2 The organic carbon content of sediments has been spiked with measured using several methods including: wet oxidation titration, modified titration, and combustion after removal of carbonate by the toxicant addition of choice, it is necessary HCl and subsequent drying. USEPA methods (1986 (220); 1987 (43)), including SW-846 and 430/9-86-004, are often used to allow the mixture measure TOC. Plumb (1981) (213) recommends one of two methods to reach equilibrium separate organic from inorganic carbon before commencing a whole-sediment toxicity test. Equilibrium is defined as in equilibrium partitioning analyzing for TOC: (a) ignition and using HCl as the acid for pre-treating sediment, or (b) differential combustion, which uses thermal combustion to separate the assumption two forms of carbon.

14.4.3 USEPA/USACE guidance (1998) (34) recommends that an equilibrium exists between the TOC analyses be based on high-temperature combustion rather than on chemical oxidation because some classes of organic compounds are not fully degraded by combined chemical and ultraviolet oxidation techniques. Inorganic carbon (for example, carbonates and bicarbonates) can be a significant proportion of the total carbon in some sediments. Therefore, samples should be treated with acid to remove the inorganic carbon before TOC analysis. The procedure described by the Puget Sound Estuary Program (PSEP, 1997a (33)) is recommended for TOC analysis because this method uses high-temperature combustion using an induction furnace. USEPA recommends a similar method using catalytic combustion and non-dispersive infrared detection (Leonard, 1991 (232)) for quantifying TOC. Because of interferences associated with TOC measurement in high carbonate sand areas in Florida and in Hawaii, some investigators have not been able to use acid addition to remove inorganic carbon and have instead used the pore water Lloyd Kahn method (Kahn 1988 (233)). The equilibration times and storage procedures; David Moore MEC Analytical, Carlsbad, CA; personal communication).

14.4.4 Several methods for spiked measuring the total organic carbon (TOC) content of sediments vary widely among studies exist (See Nelson and Sommers 1996 (234)), and there has been no attempt to standardize them. This is partly because accurate methods for measuring true equilibrium scientifically (that is, accurately isolating interstitial water and measuring a review). However, acceptable methods should at a minimum include the freely dissolved fraction of the compound of interest) following steps:

14.4.4.1 Sample Collection—Sediment samples are currently lacking, collected and little information exists on how long it will take for equilibrium to stored in non-organic containers.

14.4.4.2 Sample Preparation—Each sediment sample should have macroscopic pieces of shells (for example, >1 mm) removed and then be established for any compound. In addition, the time to reach equilibrium will differ for compounds pulverized and sediments of differing characteristics. For metals, the time could homogenized. Each sediment sample should be as short as 24 treated by direct addition with a strong non-oxidizing acid (for example, HCl) for about 18 h to remove inorganic carbon; sample pH should be about 2 after acidification (Yamamuro and Kayanne, 1995 (230, 235)) or as long as 120 days. Similarly, for organics, the time allowed for the (235)). Each sediment sample is oven dried following acid treatment (60 to equilibrate has been as short as 24 h 70°C; Weliky et al. 1983 (236)) or as long as 5 weeks (203). The duration of contact between the toxicant; Yamamuro and sediment particles can affect both the partitioning and bioavailability of the toxicant. For example, Landrum, et al Kayanne, 1995 (200) found that the partitioning of pyrene and phenanthrene between (235)). Each sediment sample is stored in a desiccator until analysis. As noted, desiccation is highly recommended, however if not possible, a pre- and interstitial post-acidification sample weight should be performed to correct for water-increased significantly, whereas the uptake rate coefficients for the amphipod; (Hedges and Stern, 1984 *Diporeia sp.*, decreased significantly for both chemicals as the contact time increased. This effect occurs apparently because (237)).

14.4.4.3 Sample Analysis—Each post-acidification sediment sample should be analyzed using acceptable instrumentation. Instrumentation should have a detection limit of an initial rapid labile sorption followed by movement about 100 mg/Kg. Quantification of organic carbon should be based on a sample's weight, measured before acidification.

#### 14.5 Particle Size Distribution (Percent Sand, Silt, and Clay):

14.5.1 Particle size is used to characterize the toxicant into resistant sorption sites or in the physical characteristics of sediments. Because particle (237-239). The contact time size influences both chemical and biological characteristics, it can be important when spiking sediments because used to normalize chemical concentrations and account for some of the kinetically controlled changes variability found in the partitioning that results in changes in bioavailability biological assemblages (USEPA 1998 (200, 210, 227, 240)). Bounds on the sorption time can be estimated from the partition coefficient for the sediment following the calculations (210)) or in Kariakhoff and Morris laboratory toxicity testing (USEPA, 2000d (35); Hoss et al. 1999 (238)). In addition, it is important to recognize). Particle size can be characterized in varying detail. The broadest divisions that the quantity generally are considered

useful for characterizing particle size distributions are percentages of toxicant spiked might exceed the complexation capacity of the test sediment system gravel, sand, silt, and not allow reactions to attain equilibrium. These phenomena will complicate the interpretation clay. However, each of test results (62, 180). Until more definitive information is generated, it is recommended that a standard equilibration time (for example, 2 weeks at 4°C) these size fractions can be established between the initial contact of the contaminant with the sediment and the initiation of toxicity tests.

13.12 The organic carbon content of sediments may be one of the most important subdivided further so that additional characteristics affecting the biological availability of contaminants. Modifications of the carbon content have therefore been made in many studies. Methods for modification include dilution with clean sand size distribution are determined (PSEP, 1996 (44, 45, 51, 232) or humics (224), and other organics such as sheep manure (41, 64),(239)).

14.5.2 Particle size determinations can either include or the addition of exclude organic detritus such as feces of *Crassostrea gigas* or *Callinassa californiensis* (203). Such dilutions also change material. If organic material is removed before analysis, the “true” (that is, primarily inorganic) particle composition and size distribution of the particles; results from such experiments should thus be interpreted with care. The is determined. If organic carbon content has also been altered by material is included in the use of combustion (41, 241). Combustion may alter analysis, the type of carbon as well as oxidize some of the inorganic components, thus altering the characteristics of the sediment greatly.

13.13 Although the sieving of field-collected sediments “apparent” (that is, organic plus inorganic) particle size distribution is known to disrupt chemical equilibrium, such manipulations determined. Because true and apparent distributions may be necessary before toxicity tests differ, detailed comparisons between samples analyzed by these different methods are questionable. Therefore, if comparisons among samples between studies is desired, sediment particle size should be measured using consistent methods (PSEP, 1996 (18, 41, 47-49, 61, 64, 143, 144, 206, 208, 209, 211, 217, 223, 242). Justifications for sieving include the removal (239)). For interpretation of large stones and other debris; removal of endemic species; improved sample homogeneity and replication; improved counting efficiency of organisms; increased ease of sediment handling and subsampling; and ability biological effects or chemical partitioning in sediment, the “apparent” particle size distribution may be more desirable to study determine compared to the influence measurement of the “true” particle size on toxicity, bioavailability, or contaminant partitioning. Sediments distribution (Word et al. 2004 (239)).

14.5.3 Sediment particle size can be measured by a number of different methods (Allen, 1975 (241) ; Plumb, 1981 (213); PSEP, 1996 (239)). The best method will depend on the particle properties of the sample (Singer et al. 1988 (242)). Particle size distribution is often determined by either wet sieving the sample (USEPA, 1979 (62, 194, 198, 199, 243) (219); Plumb, 1981 or pressure-sieved (213) ; PSEP, 1996 (239); Singer et al. 1988 (242)), the hydrometer method (Day, 1965 (243); Patrick, 1958 (244). Wet sieving involves agitating or swirling), the sieve containing sediment in water so that particles smaller than the selected mesh size are washed through the sieve into a container. The sieve may be placed on a mechanical shaker, or the sediments on the screen can be stirred with a nylon brush pipette method (USGS, 1969 (199), to facilitate the process. Alternatively, the particles may be washed through the sieve with a small volume of running water (245). Particles retained in the sieve (the coarse fraction) are examined (212); Rukavina and retained if they are of interest to the study. Pressure sieving involves the pressing of sediment particles through a sieve having an appropriate mesh size with a mechanical, piston-type arrangement, or with a flat-surfaced, hand-held tool. This technique works well with sediments containing few stones or other large objects Duncan, 1970 (245)), settling techniques (Sanford and with a low to moderate clay content. Also, the method is applied best using sieves with mesh sizes >0.50 mm. Sieves used in toxicity tests can be constructed of stainless steel or plastic (for example, polyethylene, polypropylene, nylon, and PTFE), with mesh sizes varying from 0.25 to 2.0 mm Swift, 1971 (62, 114, 195, 198, 208, 209, 244, 246). The mesh size used most frequently for sieving is 1.0 mm, but the choice (246)), by use of mesh size is dependent on the objectives of the study and whether indigenous organisms must be removed from the test sediment (see 13.14 and 13.15).

13.14 The sieving of sediments may also (increase laser diffraction, or decrease) the concentrations of contaminants contained in test sediments. Particles X-ray absorption (Duncan and their attendant contaminant loads may be either concentrated or removed. Also, sieving may disrupt chemical equilibria through the volatilization or modification of sorption and desorption characteristics. For example, Day, et al Lattaie, 1979 (247) found that sieving contaminated sediment through 250-µm mesh decreased concentrations of PCBs; Rukavina and PAHs as much as four-fold. Surface areas (in relation to the weight of the sample) and sorptive capacities are higher in fine-grained sediments (that is, clay and silt), and organic carbon concentrations as well as toxic chemicals thus tend to be higher in these sediments. Measuring size fractions of less than 63 µm has been recommended in contaminant studies with sediments, particularly for metals Duncan, 1970 (225, 248). In studies of metal concentrations in sediments, normalizing to the < 63-µm size fractions was (245)). The pipet method may be superior for describing metal binding in sediments, compared to sediment concentrations normalized to dry weight, by organic carbon content, or corrected by a centrifugation procedure (225). Small-size fractions are characteristic of depositional areas in aquatic systems; however, the sieving of sediments from non-depositional sites to obtain the fine fraction might alter the sediment characteristics significantly. It is recommended that sediments not be sieved, unless the sediments contain excessive quantities of large organic debris or if the contamination is being normalized to a specific grain size.

13.15 The suspected presence of endemic organisms that will interfere with the results of chronic toxicity tests (for example, oligochaete worms, leeches, chironomids, etc.) will also necessitate the sieving of some field-collected sediments.

13.16 The presence of endemic species in sediments used in toxicity tests has been shown to complicate the interpretation of acute hydrometer method (Sternberg and chronic endpoints Creager, 1961 (196, 247, 249, 250). Swartz, et al (202) demonstrated that the optimum mesh size for the removal (248)). Combinations of endemics was 0.50 mm for marine sediments. In freshwater sediments, the removal multiple methods may provide refined measurements of large predators such as leeches can be accomplished by hand-picking with tweezers, but species of invertebrates that are morphologically similar to or in competition for space particle size distribution. Gee and food with species Bauder (1986 (249)) used in toxicity tests, or both, can be eliminated only by sieving with a mesh size of  $\leq 0.25$  mm and pipeting after soluble salts were removed. Gonzalez (1995 (246, 248)). In order to eliminate potential interferences from endemic species in freshwater samples, but limit the unnecessary sieving of sediments, it is recommended that (217)) used a subsample combination of field-collected sediment be examined under low magnification using a stereomicroscope and, if cocoons, juvenile instars, or adults of endemic species such as oligochaete worms or chironomids are noted, that sieving of test sediments be conducted.

13.17 Methods other than sieving to inhibit endemic biological activity in field-collected sediments include autoclaving, freezing, sieve and gamma irradiation of sediments (247, 251). Caution is required in the use of these techniques, depending on the objectives of the study hydrometer methods. Folk (1968 (250)) and test species Buchanan (1984 (251)) discuss additional methods to be used in the subsequent toxicity test. For example, Day, et al (247) found that survival of the amphipod, *Hyatella azteca*, was reduced significantly in any sediment that was frozen, autoclaved, or gamma irradiated. The reasons measure particle size.

14.5.4 Recommended methods for this response measuring sediment particle size distribution are unknown but may relate to changes in the physical structure those of sediments during these manipulations, an increased bioavailability of toxic compounds within the sediment matrix due to changes in chemical equilibria, or a reduction in sources of food for PSEP (1996 *H. azteca* (239) due to sterilization. Malueg, et al (61) found that freezing sediment attenuated the release of total and soluble copper from the sediment into the overlying water. In contrast to the studies with *H. azteca*, growth of the chironomid, *Chironomus riparius*, and reproduction of the tubificid worm, *Tubifex tubifex*, were enhanced in sediments that had been sterilized by autoclaving or gamma irradiation (247). Tubificid worms and chironomids feed on organic material as well as particles of sediment within the benthos, and the sterilization of sediments may increase organic material USEPA (1995 (252), thereby providing more food for the test organisms. Percent gravel, sand, silt, and thus better growth. Other sterilization techniques have included the use of antibiotics such as streptomycin and ampicillin (Danso, et al, 1973; Burton, et al, 1987) or the addition apparent distribution using a minimum sediment sample size of chemical inhibitors such as  $HgCl_2$  or sodium azide. Information on 100 g taken from a homogenized sediment sample. Organic matter should be removed before analysis by oxidation using hydrogen peroxide. Wet-sieving followed by dry sieving (mechanical shaking) separates the effects of sediments into two coarse particle size groups. The silt-clay fraction is subdivided using a pipet technique that have received these treatments depends upon the differential settling rates of the two different particle size fractions. All fractions are dried to toxicity test responses is not available. Some antibiotics a constant weight. Cooled samples are stable stored in a desiccator and light sensitive or bind readily weighed.

14.5.5 Particle analyzers may be preferable over pipette methods for the evaluation of fine fractions due to organic matter, so their use the introduction of human error in the sampling process (for example, Beckman Coulter LS100Q laser diffraction particle size analyzer or Micromeritics Sedigraph; Syvitski et al. 1991 (253)). To obtain an accurate determination of particle sizes for the fine fraction, the Coulter (particle size) counter method may not be appropriate. Mercuric chloride appears employed (McCave and Jarvis, 1973 (254) ; Vanderploeg, 1981 (255)). This method gives the fraction of particles with an apparent spherical diameter. In a review of the available methods, Swift et al. (1972) (256) found the Coulter counter method to be the most versatile method overall; however, it does not provide settling information. Another potential method for determining the particle size distribution of a bactericide. It very fine fraction is through the use of electron microscopy (Leppard et al. 1988 (257)). Collection techniques for very fine material can result in aggregation of larger colloidal structures (Leppard, 1986 (258); Leppard et al. 1988 (257)). In general, particle settling methods are preferred to sediment sizing methods. Unless there is a sterility control large amount of organic matter, particle size should be incorporated in studies requiring sterility.

13.18 Diluting determined with the organic matter present.

#### 14.6 Percent Water or Moisture Content :

14.6.1 Water content is a measurement of sediment with moisture usually expressed as a clean, non-contaminated percentage of the whole sediment has been suggested weight. Sediment moisture content is measured as an approach in order the difference between wet weight of the sediment and dry weight following oven drying at 50 to 105°C to a constant weight. Percent water is used to convert sediment concentration-s of substances from wet-weight to a dry-weight. Methods for determining moisture content are described by Plumb (1981 (213)) and Vecchi (1999 (259)). Additional methods are provided in solid phase toxicity testing USEPA (1987 (234, 253, 254)(43)).

#### 14.7 Salinity of the Pore Water (Marine Sediments):

14.7.1 Salinity is a measure of the mass of dissolved salt in a given mass of solution. The most reliable method to determine the true or absolute salinity is by complete chemical analysis. However, this is time consuming and costly. Therefore, indirect methods are more suitable. Indirect methods include conductivity, density, sound speed, or refractive index (APHA, 1995) (228). Salinity is then calculated from the empirical relationship between salinity and the indirect measurement. Conductivity



measurements have been performed with reference sediments the greatest precision, but respond only to ionic solutes (APHA, 1995 (236, 244, 255-258)(228) or clean sand). Density measurements respond to all solutes. APHA (1995 (2528)) recommends the electrical conductivity method, ~~25~~ because it is sensitive and easily performed. APHA (1995 (228)) also recommends the density method, using a vibrating flow densitometer. ~~D~~

14.7.2 A salinity refractometer can be used for quick readings of salt density in solutions such as sea water. These refractometers are easy to read, non-corrosive, and lightweight. They have generally had dual scales and an adjustable focus. Temperature and non-temperature compensating refractometers are available. Most refractometers are accurate to ~~reductions~~ 1 ppt and read specific gravity (1.000 to 1.070 in 0.001 divisions) and parts per thousand (0 to 100 in 1 part per thousand divisions).

#### 14.8 Conductivity of the ~~t~~ *Pore Water (Freshwater Sediments)*:

14.8.1 Conductivity is a measure of the ~~diluted material~~ relative ability of an aqueous solution to carry an electric current. This ability is dependent on the ~~test sediment~~. However, presence of ions in the ~~toxicity decreased~~ solution, the concentration of the ions, their mobility and ~~then increased~~ subsequently for some sediments (258) when sand was valence, and temperature. Solutions of inorganic compounds are usually good conductors while those of organic compounds are usually poor conductors. Conductivity is enhanced by calcium, potassium, sodium, and magnesium chlorides and sulfides. Meters can be used ~~as a diluent, although to measure the sand alone was not toxic compared~~ degree to controls, which electrical current can travel through water. The mechanism for this effect unit of measure is ~~not known~~.  $1 \text{ mS/m} = 1 \text{ millisiemens/metre}$  or  $1 \text{ }\mu\text{S/cm} = 1 \text{ microsiemens/centimetre}$ . The reading indicates the amount of ions in the water. While ~~g~~ traditional chemical tests for hardness measure calcium and magnesium, they fail to ~~visual homogeneity where described~~, provide an indication of other ions (for example, sodium). The conductivity meter provides a much better measure of ionic strength.

#### 14.9 Acid Volatile Sulfide (AVS) :

14.9.1 Measurement of acid volatile sulfides (AVS) and simultaneously extracted divalent metal (SEM) concentrations associated with AVS extraction can provide insight into the ~~only report~~ bioavailability of a ~~definitive storage time after mixing was for 10 days~~ metals in anaerobic (anoxic) sediments (Di Toro et al. 1990 (244, 259)(50) and; Ankley et al. 1996 (51)). AVS is the **reactive solid-phase sulfide fraction that is extracted by cold hydrochloric acid. AVS appears to affect the bioavailability of most divalent metal ions as the sulfide ions have a high affinity for divalent metals. This affinity results in the formation of insoluble metal sulfides with greatly reduced bioavailability. AVS concentrations in freshwater and marine sediments was 4°C can range from less than 0.1 to greater than 50  $\mu\text{mol AVS/g}$  of sediment (Di Toro et al. 1990 (244). No definitive testing(50)).**

14.9.2 The bioavailability of metals in sediments has been ~~performed on~~ predicted by comparing the ~~appropriate length molar concentration of storing dilutions~~. The actual amount AVS to the molar concentration of SEM (methods described below). If AVS is greater than SEM, the metals are bound in sulfide complexes with greatly limited bioavailability. However, if SEM is greater than AVS, metals may or may not be toxic due to other controlling factors (for example, TOC).

14.9.3 The easily extractable sulfide fraction can be ~~estimated by determining~~ measured using the ~~fraction of fine material acid purge and organic carbon content trap~~ technique. The sample sulfide is solubilized in cold hydrochloric acid. The analytical method involves conversion of sulfides to aqueous  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ . This may be measured with a sulfide probe or by following a wet chemistry method. In the ~~reference sediment, test sediment, latter method~~, silver sulfide is precipitated in a gas-tight assembly and flushed with nitrogen to ~~eliminate~~ oxidation. The precipitate is filtered, dried, and weighed. The weight is compared with the weight obtained from a non-acidified sample, and the difference is attributed to the AVS fraction (Di Toro et al. 1990 (50)).

#### 14.10 Simultaneously Extracted Metals (258). ~~Little information remains:~~

14.10.1 A model for predicting toxicity from divalent trace metals (Di Toro et al. 1990 (50)) is based on the ~~most appropriate method for diluting test sediments~~ binding of these metals to obtain ~~graded contaminant concentrations~~. Little is known concerning AVS. Where the ~~role sum~~ of sediment composition, equilibrium time, the moles of the SEM, including Ag, Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb, and Zn is exceeded by the ~~molar concentration of chemistry during mixing on AVS~~, the ~~exposure~~ metals are insoluble and largely unavailable to biota. The extraction of AVS and SEM metals should be achieved using a single methodology so that recoveries associated with each measure are consistent. Simultaneous extraction improves the ~~test sediment contaminants in~~ efficiency of the ~~diluted material~~. A clean, noncontaminated sediment should ~~methodology~~.

14.10.2 SEM can be measured in filtered aliquots by atomic absorption methods (Di Toro et al. 1990 (50) ). Recent SEM analysis methods use inductively coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometry (ICP-AES; Berry et al. 1999 (260)). Other methods for analysis of metals are described in 14.11.

#### 14.11 Metals:

14.11.1 Low levels of trace metals occur naturally in the ~~diluent~~. This environment but highly elevated levels in sediment ~~should~~ optimally have characteristics similar to the test sediment, such are generally associated with anthropogenic contaminant loads. Metals are partitioned in sediments as soluble free ions, soluble organic-matter and ~~carbon concentration~~ inorganic complexes, easily exchangeable ions, precipitates of metal hydroxides, precipitates with colloidal ferric and ~~particle size distribution~~, manganic oxyhydroxides, insoluble organic complexes, insoluble sulfides, and ~~should not contain elevated levels of residual forms~~ (Gambrell et al. 1976 (261) ).

14.11.2 Current instrument methods available for the ~~toxic analysis of trace metals~~-P include electrochemistry (for example,

differential pulse polarography), spectrophotometry (for example, silver diethyldithiocarbamate), atomic absorption spectrophotometry, atomic emission spectrophotometry, x-ray fluorescence (XRF), and neutron activation (PSEP 1997b (262)). The most commonly used instrumental method to analyze sediments for metals is atomic absorption spectrophotometry (PSEP, 1997b (262)). Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) or ICP-AES allow for simultaneous determination of many metals at concentrations below a part per billion with little pretreatment (Creelius et al. 1987 (263); Berry et al. 1999 (260)).

14.11.3 The concentration of salt in marine or estuarine samples may interfere with metals analyses (USEPA/USACE, 1998 (34)). Therefore, acid digestion and atomic absorption spectroscopy should be coupled with an appropriate dilution material because technique to control for this interference. Methods in USEPA (1986 (220) ) are recommended for the analysis of mercury in sediments and EPRI (1986 (264)) methods are recommended for the analysis of selenium and arsenic. USEPA methods for cadmium, hexavalent chromium, copper, lead, mercury, nickel, selenium, silver, and zinc are described by USEPA (1986 (220)). PSEP (1997b (262)) suggests that mercury can be extracted using vacuum distillation and analyzed by gas chromatography/mass spectrophotometry.

#### 14.12 *Petroleum Hydrocarbons and Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons:*

14.12.1 Petroleum hydrocarbons are oil and grease constituents which remain in ~~toxicity~~ solution after contact with differing dilutions.

14.12.1.1 Elutriate tests, silica gel. Petroleum distillates, also called hydrocarbons or ~~aqueous extractions~~ petrochemicals, refer to a broad range of compounds that are extracted by distillation during the refining of crude oil. During the fractional distillation of petroleum, crude oil is heated to allow various compounds to turn from liquid into gas, and then are captured as they rise, cool, and condense. Lighter, more volatile compounds rise higher before they condense and are collected on distillation trays. Heavier, less volatile compounds such as ~~and diesel fuel and oil~~ are collected on lower distillation trays. Waxes and asphalts are collected from the bottom after the other products have volatilized.

14.12.2 Petroleum distillates contain both aromatic hydrocarbons (carbon rings) and aliphatic hydrocarbons (92, 260, 261 straight carbon chains). The ~~method~~ chemical structure of the hydrocarbon largely defines the nature and behavior of these compounds. Aromatic hydrocarbons are the most toxic compounds found in petroleum products. Most aromatic hydrocarbons are chronic toxicants and known carcinogens. Aromatic compounds are found in all crude oils and most petroleum products. Many aromatic hydrocarbons have a pleasant odor and include such substances as naphthalene, xylene, toluene, and benzene. Aliphatic hydrocarbons are flammable and may be explosively flammable. Aliphatic hydrocarbons include methane, propane, and kerosene.

14.12.3 Aromatic and aliphatic hydrocarbons were analyzed in sediments by Page et al. (1995a, b (262)(44) ~~to simulate processes that might disturb~~(45)). **Sediment samples were spiked with the appropriate surrogates, mixed with equal amounts of sodium sulfate to dry the samples, and thus bring contaminants extracted with a methylene chloride acetone mixture (Method 3550, USEPA, 1986 (220) ). The concentrated extracts were partitioned on an alumina column into saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbon fractions (Method 3611, USEPA, 1986 (220)). The fractions were concentrated using the water column, that is, dredging activities, but appropriate pre-injection volume, spiked with the appropriate internal standards, and analyzed by gas chromatography with flame ionization detection (GC/FID) and gas chromatography with mass spectrometry detection (GC/MS) operating in the selected ion monitoring (SIM) mode. The method of internal standards (Method 8000, USEPA, 1986 (220) ) using the average relative response factors generated from the linear initial calibration was used to quantify the target compounds. All data were corrected for the recovery of the appropriate surrogate compound. Their relative abundances could then be used for identification and quantification purposes.**

14.12.4 TPH (total petroleum hydrocarbons) and PAH (polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons) have also been analyzed by first acidifying the sample with concentrated hydrochloric acid and then extracting hydrocarbons with a mixture of methanol and hexane. The hexane extracts were then spiked with an internal standard and analyzed by GC-FID for TPH content and by GC/mass spectrometry (MS) for PAH analysis.

14.12.5 Kaplan et al. (1996 (265) ) extracted hydrocarbons using anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  with methylene chloride and sonication. The total solvent extract was then concentrated with Kuderna-Danish equipment. The concentrate was further concentrated using a gentle stream of dry nitrogen. An aliquot was then injected directly into the gas chromatography.

#### 14.13 *Other Organic Compounds (Pesticides, PCBs, TCDD-Dioxin):*

14.13.1 Analytical techniques for measuring organic compounds require five general steps: drying the sample, extraction, drying the extract, clean up of ~~other common events that disrupt~~ the extract, and analysis of the extract. PSEP (1997c (266)) recommends centrifugation or sodium sulfate to dry the sample and a solvent extraction, with application of shaker/roller, or sonication. Sample drying with sodium sulfate is recommended for samples weighing about 10 g (after overlying water quality, is decanted). The sediment and sulfate mixture is extracted and the extract is processed (MacLeod et al. 1985 (267)).

14.13.2 Soxhlet® extraction (USEPA, 1986 (220)) involves distillation with a solvent such as ~~bioturbation~~ acetone, dichloromethane/methanol (2:1), dichloromethane/methanol (9:1), and ~~stirrs~~ benzene/methanol (3:2). USEPA (1983 (52) (24, 90). **Elutriates are generally prepared by combining various) recommends sonication with solvent mixtures and a 30-g subsample of sediment.**

14.13.3 Drying the extract can be accomplished through separatory funnel partitioning as needed to remove water and sediment (usually 4:1 ratio, v/v) and shaking, bubbling, sodium sulfate or stirring the mixture by using a Kuderna-Danish apparatus and rotary evaporation with purified nitrogen gas for ~~1 h~~ concentration to smaller volumes (PSEP, 1997c (90, 92, 261, 263). (266)).

Using the separatory funnel partitioning method, the wet sample is mixed with methanol and centrifuged. The water phase supernatant is decanted and extracted later. Extraction of the sample is continued using less polar solvents and the water/methanol and solvent extracts are combined and dried.

14.13.4 According to PSEP (1997c (266)) elemental sulfur can be removed from the sediment sample with vigorous mechanical agitation using a Vortex or Genie<sup>4</sup> or using activated copper. Organic interferences can be removed with gel permeation chromatography (GPC) described in USEPA (1983(52)), bonded octadecyl columns (PSEP, 1997c (266)), high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) described by centrifugation; Metro (1981 (268)), silica gel (PSEP, 1997c (266)), or alumina (USEPA, 1983) (52). Instrumental analyses for volatiles and semivolatiles and pesticides/PCBs are performed using gas chromatography/mass spectrophotometry (GC/MS; PSEP, 1997c (266)) and gas chromatography/electron capture detection (GC/ECD; Burgess and McKinney, 1997 (269)).

#### 14.14 Oil and Grease:

14.14.1 Oil and grease tests for sediments measure material recovered that is used soluble in a non-ionic solvent under acidic conditions. Oil and grease compounds are substances such as hydrocarbons, vegetable oils, animal fats, waxes, soaps, and greases. Many solvents can dissolve other substances (for example, fathead minnow, *Pimephales promelas*; bioluminescence assay; *Photobacterium phosphoreum*; sulfur compounds, organic dyes, and sea urchin (*Arbacia punctulata*), fertilization test). Filtration of chlorophyll). Therefore, oil and grease is operationally defined by the supernatant through filters (0.45 solvent used and the analytical method used to 1.2 µm) may be necessary when perform the elutriate analysis. There are two basic methods used in some toxicity tests such as to analyze oil and grease: the algal growth assay with gravimetric technique and the IR (infrared spectrophotometer) technique. Both are described by PSEP (1996 *Selenastrum capricornutum*. However, as discussed(239)).

#### 14.15 Total Sulfides:

14.15.1 Total sulfides represent the combined amount of acid-soluble H<sub>2</sub>S, HS<sup>-</sup>, and S<sup>2-</sup> in a sample. Sulfides are often measured because they are common in some sediments, particularly those that are anoxic, and they can remove toxicity due to the sorption of dissolved chemicals aquatic organisms. PSEP (1996 (239)) describes a method to measure total sulfides in sediments. Oxygen is removed from the filtration membrane sample using nitrogen gas, methyl orange and hydrochloric acid is added, and the mixture is heated. Amine solution and iron chloride are added to develop a colorimetric reaction product and sample absorbance is measured spectrophotometrically. Elevated concentrations of colloids. Elutriates ammonia (Sims et al. 1995a (223)), Moore et al. 1997 (224)) and hydrogen sulfide (Sims et al. 1995b (225)) have generally frequently been found in deeper dredged sediment samples compared to surficial sediment samples.

14.15.2 Methods for measuring sulfides in aqueous samples include: potentiometric methods described by Practice D 3976 and APHA (Method 4500, 1995 (228)). Sulfide ions are measured using a sulfide ion-selective electrode in conjunction with a double-junction, sleeve type reference electrode (Phillips et al. 1997 (270)). Potentials are read using a pH meter or a specific ion meter having a direct concentration scale for the sulfide ion. Samples are treated with sulfide anti-oxidant buffer that fixes the solution pH at a high alkaline level and retards air oxidation of sulfide ion in solution. This ensures that the sulfide measured represents total sulfides as S<sup>2-</sup> ion rather than bulk sediments the HS<sup>-</sup> or interstitial water fractions H<sub>2</sub>S found at lower pH values.

14.15.3 APHA (Method 4500, 1995 (90, 92)(228)) provides qualitative as well as quantitative methods to determine aqueous sulfide concentrations. Qualitative methods include the antimony test, the silver-silver sulfide electrode test, the lead acetate paper test, and the silver foil test. Quantitative methods include the photometric method, the automated photometric methylene blue colorimetric methods, and the iodometric titration method for standardizing stock solutions.

#### 14.16 Sediment Oxygen Demand (SOD) :

14.16.1 Sediment can exhibit significant rates of oxygen uptake attributable to either: (1) a benthic ecosystem supported by soluble organic substances in the water column, (2) naturally occurring sediments derived from aquatic plants and animals, and (3) detritus discharged into the water body by natural runoff. When numerical modeling is required to predict dissolved oxygen concentrations, the rate of dissolved oxygen consumed by the benthic ecosystem is defined as the sediment (benthic) oxygen demand (SOD) in g O<sub>2</sub>/m<sup>2</sup>-day.

14.16.2 Two approaches for measuring SOD were reviewed by Truax et al. (1995 (271)) including in-situ respirometry and laboratory respirometry methods. Numerous techniques have been developed for each approach. Generally, in-situ methods are considered more credible than laboratory measurements although both apply the same technique. A given amount of sediment is enclosed in which resuspension increased a chamber with a known water volume and oxygen uptake is measured over time. The SOD rate is then calculated based on the bioavailability area of toxicants the enclosed sediment, the volume of water in the chamber, and the rate of uptake.

14.16.3 In situ sediment oxygen demand measurement methods were described by Uchirin and Ahlert (1985 (272)). A cylindrical respirometer, a dissolved oxygen probe with stirring mechanism, and a dissolved oxygen meter were used. Ambient dissolved oxygen was measured using the probe/meter as well as by using the Winkler method (APHA, 1995 (228)) in the laboratory to determine the effect of respiration on total dissolved oxygen uptake. The respirometer was deployed in a level area

at the bottom of the water column. Partitioning body. Dissolved oxygen were recorded initially and at 15-min intervals thereafter to determine the SOD rate.

#### 14.17 *Sediment Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD):*

14.17.1 Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) is a measure of the dissolved oxygen consumed by microbial organisms while assimilating and oxidizing the organic colloids matter in a sample (PSEP, 1996 (239)). The test is an empirical methodology in which consistent laboratory procedures are used to determine the relative oxygen uptake of environmental samples. The test measures the amount of molecular oxygen used during a specified incubation period to biochemically degrade organic material and to oxidize reduced forms of nitrogen (APHA, 1995 (228)).

14.17.2 Plumb (1981 (213)) described a method to analyze BOD in sediments using freshwater bacteria as a possible explanation for “seed” and buffered distilled water. PSEP (1996 (239)) described an alternative procedure to analyze BOD in marine sediments using marine bacteria as the discrepancies between suspended-phase “seed” and interstitial water exposures filtered, oxygenated seawater. USEPA (1987 (90), Toxicity may(43)) methods should also be consulted.

#### 14.18 *Sediment Chemical Oxygen Demand (COD):*

14.18.1 Chemical oxygen demand (COD) is a measure of the oxygen equivalent of organic matter content in a sample that is susceptible to oxidation by a strong chemical oxidant at elevated temperature and reduced pH. The test was devised to augment the biochemical oxygen demand test. Chemical oxygen demand can be related empirically to biochemical oxygen demand, organic carbon, or total volatile solids (PSEP, 1996 (239)).

14.18.2 PSEP (1996 (239)) described a method for analyzing sediment COD using a closed reflux/colorimetric method. Dichromate ( $\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ ) ions are used to oxidize organic matter to carbon dioxide and water and to provide oxygen. The dichromate ions remaining after the reaction are measured by titration and the amount of elutriation; data comparisons should therefore be made only where standardized elutriate oxygen consumed is then calculated.

14.18.3 Four standard procedures for measuring COD in water are available in APHA (1995 (228)): the open reflux method, the closed reflux method, the titrimetric method, and the closed reflux/colorimetric method. USEPA (1983 (52)) methods were used.

13-20 The remediation for the colorimetric and titrimetric method are described in USEPA (1979 (219)). Semi-automated methods are described in USEPA (1993 (48)).

#### 14.19 *Cation Exchange Capacity of Sediments:*

14.19.1 Cation exchange capacity (CEC) is a parameter that provides information relevant to metal bioavailability studies (Black, 1965 (211)). Cations or positively charged elements (such as calcium, magnesium, hydrogen, and potassium), are attracted to negatively charged surfaces of clay and organic matter. There is a continuous exchange of cations between sediment-might include capping and water. CEC is a measure of the sediment’s ability to retain cationic elements. It is also a measure of clay activity and mineralogy, which is used to calculate mineralization rates, leaching rates, and to predict interactions with clean sediments. contaminants. The laboratory design degree of such experiments should vary. CEC is dependent on the depth kind and amount of suitable surfaces such as organic matter and clay. High cation exchange capacities are associated with high clay contents and high organic matter and changes in CEC are typically associated with changes in organic carbon content and pH of the sediment. Organic matter generally supplies a greater number of exchange sites than clay particles.

14.19.2 Various methods have been recommended to determine bioavailable fractions of metals in sediments (Chao and Zhou, 1983 (273); Creelius et al. 1987 (263); Kersten and Forstner, 1987 (274); Di Toro et al. 1990 (50)). CEC can be measured by treating samples with ammonium acetate so that all exchangeable sites are occupied by  $\text{NH}_4^+$  ion, digesting the capping sediment layers samples with sodium hydroxide during distillation, and titrating to evaluate contaminant transport by means determine the ammonium ion concentration. The amount of exchangeable cations are expressed as milliequivalents of ammonium ion exchanged (meq) per 100 g of dried sample. More detailed methods are provided in Bascomb (1964 (275)), Black (1965 (211)), Klute (1986 (276)), and biological (bioturbation) processes.

### 14. Quality Assurance

14.1 The QA guidelines USEPA (1986 (9, 10, 39, 57, 264)(220)).

#### 14.20 *Redox Potential (Eh) of Sediments :*

14.20.1 Redox (Eh) is a measure of the oxidation-reduction potential (ORP) of sediments. Measurements of Eh are particularly important for metal speciation and for determining the extent of sediment oxidation. Eh values below about -100 millivolts would indicate biologically important sulfide concentrations. Some trace metals form insoluble complexes with sulfides. These metal-sulfide complexes bind the metals in a form that is not bioavailable. Since free ionic metals are generally thought to possess the greatest toxicity potential, it is important to understand conditions which control binding dynamics, such as pH and Eh.

14.20.2 Potentiometric measurements of Eh using a millivolt reader can be obtained with a platinum electrode relative to a standard hydrogen electrode (Plumb, 1981 (213)). APHA (1995 (228)) does not recommend the standard hydrogen electrode as it is fragile and impractical. Instead, their method uses a silver-silver-chloride or calomel reference electrode. APHA (1995 (228)) recommends a graphite rather than platinum electrode for sediments. Once the Eh equilibrium is reached, the difference between the platinum or graphite electrode and the reference electrode is equal to the redox potential of the system. For a more detailed explanation on how to calculate the Eh potential see APHA (1995 (228)). Gonzalez (1995 (217)) also describes a detailed method that can be used to measure sediment modeling, QA-QC plans, statistical analyses (for example, sample Eh.

14.20.3 There are a number of problems associated with the accurate measurement and interpretation of Eh in sediments, particularly in marine sediments. Therefore, considerable attention should be paid to the use of proper equipment and techniques. Some of the problems identified by Whitfield (1969 (277)) and Murdoch and Azcue (1995 (46)) include measurement inaccuracy due to disturbance of the sediment sample during insertion of the electrode, instability and poor reproducibility of the measurements, and differential responses of platinum electrodes under different environmental conditions. A comprehensive description of the limitations of sediment Eh measurement is beyond the scope of this standard. Rather, it is recommended that published studies on the problems associated with measuring and interpreting sediment Eh be consulted before any attempt is made to measure these parameters in-depth sediment samples (Bernier, 1963 (5278); Morris and Stumm, 1967 (279); Whitfield, 1969 (277); Tinsley, 1979 (280); Bates, 1981(281) ). The recommended procedure for measuring pH and Eh in the field are described in detail in Table 15.

#### 14.2 Sediment heterogeneity significantly influences studies

##### 14.21 Total Inorganic Carbon:

14.21.1 Inorganic carbon has been measured as a complement to microbial activity (Bregnard et al. 1996 (282) ), to determine the fate of sediment quality, an organic contaminant distribution, in biodegradation studies (West and both benthic invertebrate Gonsior, 1996 (283)), and microbial community effects. Spatial heterogeneity might result from numerous biological, chemical, and physical factors and should be considered both horizontally (such as on to determine the sediment surface) and vertically (that is, depth). Accumulation areas with similar particle size distributions might yield significantly different toxicity patterns when subsampled percent carbon unaccounted for in fate transport predictions of hydrophobic contaminants (Tye, et al. 1996 (284) (73, 265);). **Often the total inorganic carbon (TIC) fraction in samples is many times greater than the TOC fraction and presents an adequate number interference in the measurement of replicates should therefore be processed TOC. There are several options to determine site variance. When determining site variance, one should consider within eliminate TIC interferences when trying to measure TOC. One option is to compensate for the IC interference by measuring total carbon (TC) and total inorganic carbon (see 14.4). The difference between the two is the TOC.**

14.21.2 TIC is determined by acidifying the sample to convert the inorganic carbon (that is, subsample) variance, analytical variance (for example, chemical or toxicological); carbonates, bicarbonates, and dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>) to carbon dioxide. Carbon dioxide is purged from the sampling instruments' accuracy sample and precision. A sampling design can be constructed after these considerations that addresses then detected by a non-dispersive infrared detector (NDIR) calibrated to directly display the resource limitations and study objectives.

**TABLE 15 General Procedures for Measurement of Eh in Bottom Sediments (from Murdoch and Azcue 1995 (46))**

#### Equipment and solutions used in the measurements:

A portable, battery-operated pH/Eh meter, batteries, and a power cord for recharging the meter.  
 Combination glass and platinum electrodes or other electrodes suitable for the measurements.  
 Plastic test-tube-shaped containers or other containers for storing the electrodes in solutions during transport in the field.  
 Commercially-available or laboratory-prepared pH buffer solutions (pH 4 and 7) in plastic bottles with lids.  
 Freshly-prepared solution for calibration of Eh electrode in a plastic bottle with a tight lid.  
 Freshly-prepared solution of saturated potassium chloride for storage of the electrodes.  
 Other solutions necessary for proper functioning of electrodes as outlined by manufacturers.  
 Deionized water and wash bottle for storing and rinsing the electrodes between measurements.  
 Several small and larger plastic beakers for holding solutions, rinsing electrodes, etc..  
 Support stands, rods, clamps to secure electrodes in solutions and during measurements.  
 Large plastic containers for storage and transport of used buffers and Eh-calibration solutions.  
 Notebook and pens, soft paper tissue.

#### Preparation of equipment before the field trip:

Check batteries of the portable pH/Eh meter and replace/recharge them, if necessary.  
 Prepare calibration solutions.  
 Check and test the pH and Eh electrodes.  
 Mark the electrodes vertically at desired intervals for insertion into the sediment samples.  
 Store the electrodes according the manufacturers instructions.  
 Pack all equipment for transport to the field and take spare electrodes if available.

#### Measurements in the field:

Allocate a space where measurements will be carried out. Within this space, all equipment should be assembled, checked for proper functioning, and prepared for measurement of the first sample.  
 Place grab sampler and sediment cores with recovered sediment in such a way that they will remain steady without disturbing the sediment samples during the measurements.  
 Insert electrodes carefully into the undisturbed sediment samples to avoid any air contamination, particularly around the Eh electrode. Care must be taken not to generate any open space between the electrode and the sediment. Proper insertion of the electrode without disturbing the sediment is the most important step in measuring the Eh.  
 Insert electrodes into the sediment to the depth marked. Switch the pH/Eh meter to the pH scale and the value recorded within 1 minute after inserting the electrode into the sample. Switch the meter to the mV scale for recording the Eh value. The potential usually drifts considerably over the first 10 to 15 min, and then stabilizes. After stabilization, record the mV value. In measuring Eh of sediments from waters with low ionic strength, such as most freshwater bodies, it is recommended to "acclimatize" the electrodes in the water prior to measurement, particularly the electrodes that were stored in saturated potassium chloride solution. This will reduce the drifting of the potential after inserting the electrode into the sediment.  
 Remove both electrodes, wash them with distilled water to remove all adhering sediment particles, and dry them gently with a soft paper tissue.  
 Calibrate the electrodes after each five measurements. The electrodes may need less frequent calibration if pH and Eh are being measured in a sediment core.

14.3 As stated in previous sections, mass of carbon dioxide measured. This mass is proportional to the methodological approach used, such as number mass of samples, will depend on TIC. Other instrumentation for the study objectives analysis of TIC is described in West and sample characteristics. There Gonsior (1996 (283)) and Tye et al. (1996 (284)).

#### 14.22 Total Volatile Solids (TVS) :

14.22.1 Total volatile solids represent the fraction of total solids that are lost on ignition at a higher temperature than that used to determine total solids. Total volatile solids are used as a crude estimate of references available for information on sediment heterogeneity; splitting; compositing; controls; the amount of organic matter in total solids (PSEP, 1996 (239)). In this regard, total volatile solids are often measured instead of, or in addition to, organic carbon content.

14.22.2 Total volatile solids are operationally defined by ignition temperature. Total volatile solids content does not always represent the organic content of a sample numbers, sampler accuracy because some organic material may be lost at the drying temperature and some inorganic material (for example, carbonates, chlorides) may be lost at the ignition temperature. Because of the temperature dependence of total volatile solids, valid interstudy comparisons require the use of consistent drying and resource requirements ignition temperatures (PSEP, 1996 (10, 11, 57, 80, 225, 266, 267) (239)).

14.22.3 Total volatile solids measurements are generally made by igniting the sediments at  $550 \pm 10^\circ\text{C}$  until a constant weight is achieved and reporting the percent ash-free dry weight (McLeese et al. 1980 (131); APHA, 1995 (228); Keilty et al. 1988a (78)). Plumb (1981) (213) and PSEP (1996) (239) describe standard methods for determining the total volatile solid content of sediments. Additional methods are provided in USEPA (1987) (43) .

#### 14.4 Quality assurance is an integrated system

##### 14.23 Dissolved Organic Carbon in Pore Water:

14.23.1 Dissolved organic carbon (DOC) often consists of management activities involving planning, implementation, assessment, reporting, humic substances, and quality improvement to ensure that an environmental assessment is the fraction of the type organic carbon pool that is dissolved in water and quality necessary. Quality control passed through a  $0.45 \mu\text{m}$  glass fiber filter. DOC is the overall system an indicator of the chemically reactive organic fraction and accurately measures the dissolved organic load. Sediment pore waters can be rich in humic acids. Fifty to 90 % of the pore water DOC can be colloidal which is a significant factor because organic chemicals will preferentially partition to pore water DOC (Resendes et al. 1992 (285); Burgess 1996 (151)). Dissolved organic carbon (DOC) often consists of humic substances, and controls is the quality fraction of the assessment. The primary mechanism for ensuring organic carbon pool that there is an adequate QA-QC program is dissolved in water and passed through a Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP). This formal document describes,  $0.45 \mu\text{m}$  glass fiber filter. DOC is an indicator of the chemically reactive organic fraction and accurately measures the dissolved organic load. Sediment pore waters can be rich in detail, humic acids. Fifty to 90 % of the necessary QA pore water DOC can be colloidal which is a significant factor because organic chemicals will preferentially partition to pore water DOC (Resendes et al. 1992 (285); Burgess 1996 (151)).

14.23.2 Hermann (1996 (286) ) and Gilek et al. (1996 (287)) measured DOC using a TOC apparatus and infrared detection of  $\text{CO}_2$ . Borga et al. (1996 (288)) measured DOC using atomic emission spectrometry (ECP-AES). The APHA (Method 5310, 1995 (228)) methods for total organic carbon that are implemented can be applied to ensure that the results measurement of DOC are (a) the assessment will satisfy combustion-infrared method; (b) the stated performance criteria. This process persulfate-ultraviolet oxidation method; and (c) the wet-oxidation method. Adjustments for inorganic carbon interference may be required.

##### 14.24 Alkalinity and Hardness of the Pore Water (Freshwater Sediments):

14.24.1 Alkalinity is defined as the acid-neutralizing (that is, proton-accepting) capacity of water. It is the sum of all the titratable bases, and a measure of the quality and quantity of constituents in detail the pore water that result in USEPA (5); a shift in the pH toward the alkaline side of neutrality. The QAPP describes measured value may vary significantly with the following: project description; project organization pH end-point used. Studies have shown that effects of certain contaminants such as metals are influenced by alkalinity as it alters speciation and responsibilities; QA objectives for the measurement data (including data quality objectives, precision, accuracy, test acceptability, representativeness, completeness, bioavailability).

14.24.2 APHA (1995 (228) ) recommends a color-change titration method to measure alkalinity which is also described by Test Method D 1067. The sample is titrated with standard alkali or acid to a designated pH and comparability; sampling; analytical endpoint is determined electrometrically or by the color change of an internal standard. In addition, Test Method D 1067 describes two additional methods: (1) a titration curve is developed to identify inflection points, a standard acid or test procedures (standard operating procedures); alkali is added to the sample custody procedures; calibration procedures by small increments and frequency; internal QC checks pH is recorded after each addition, and frequency; performance the total volume of acid or alkali is plotted against the observed pH values; and system audits; analytical procedures; data reduction, validation, assessment, (2) pH is determined, standard acid is added to lower the pH to 4.0 or less, the solution is boiled with hydrogen peroxide, and titrated, while hot, to the phenolphthalein endpoint or, when cooled, electrometrically with standard alkali to pH 8.2, the desired endpoint. The color-change titration method is most commonly used.

14.24.3 Hardness is the concentration of metallic cations, with the exception of alkali metals, present in water samples. Generally, hardness is a measure of the concentration of calcium and schedules; corrective action; magnesium ions in water. Hardness is usually expressed as a calcium carbonate equivalent in mg/L. Like alkalinity, hardness alters speciation and QA reports bioavailability of certain contaminants particularly many metals.

14.24.4 APHA (Method 2340, 1995 (228)) describes two methods to management. Refer to measure hardness: (1) the

appropriate standard test calculation method guidance (for example, ASTM, USEPA, and APHA) for acceptable quality control limits for test measurements (for example, toxicity assay performance criteria, analytical precision, accuracy, completeness; (2) the EDTA titrimetric method. Test Method D 1126 describes the APHA (1995 (228)) EDTA titrimetric method. Calcium and magnesium ions in water are sequestered by the addition of EDTA. The endpoint of the reaction is measured by means of Chrome Black T3, which is red in the presence of calcium and magnesium and blue when both are sequestered. APHA recommends the calculation method-d because it is more accurate. The method uses direct determinations of calcium and magnesium to determine hardness. The APHA EDTA titration method is most often used.

## **15. Report Quality Assurance**

### **15.1 General Procedures:**

15.1.1 Quality assurance activities provide a formalized system for evaluating the technical adequacy of sample collection and laboratory analysis activities. These quality assurance activities begin before samples are collected and continue after laboratory analyses are completed, requiring ongoing coordination and oversight. The quality assurance program should integrate management and technical practices into a single system to provide data that are sufficient, appropriate, and of known and documented quality.

15.1.2 Developing and maintaining a quality assurance (QA) program requires an ongoing commitment by project management and also includes the following: (1) appointment of a quality assurance officer with the responsibility and authority to develop and maintain a QA program, (2) preparation of a Quality Assurance Project Plan with Data Quality Objectives, (3) preparation of written descriptions of Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) for sediment sampling and manipulations, instrument calibration, sample chain-of-custody, laboratory sample tracking system, and (4) provision of adequate, qualified technical staff and suitable space and equipment to provide reliable data. Program specific guidance for developing and maintaining a QA program should be followed as appropriate. Examples of program guidance for developing a quality assurance program can be found in USEPA (1994 (74); 1995 (252) ; 2000d (35)), PSEP (1997a) (33), WDE (1995) (29), and USEPA/USACE (1991 (32) , 1998 (34)).

15.1.3 Quality control (QC) practices consist of more focused, routine, day-to-day activities carried out within the scope of the overall QA program. QC is the routine application of procedures for obtaining data that are accurate (precise and unbiased), representative, comparable, and complete. QC procedures include activities such as identification of sampling and analytical methods, calibration and standardization, and sample custody and record keeping. Audits, reviews, and complete and thorough documentation are used to verify compliance with predefined QC procedures. Project-specific QA plans (QAPP; 15.3) provide a detailed plan for activities performed at each stage of the study and outline the data quality objectives that should be achieved. Through periodic reporting, QA activities provide a means to track progress and milestones, performance of measurement systems, and data quality. A complete project-specific QA/QC effort has two major components: a QA program implemented by the responsible organization (that is, the data user) and QC programs implemented by the parties responsible for collection and analyses (that is, the data generators).

### **15.2 QA/QC Procedures for Sediment Collection and Manipulation:**

15.2.1 To establish the appropriateness of the sample collection procedure for sample integrity and to establish that data of suitable quality, a program of scheduled field QC samples, such as field replicates (duplicates, splits, field spikes), field blanks (rinstate equipment), bottle, trip, and background (upgradient) samples. All field QC samples should be handled exactly as the sediment samples and should be treated as blind samples so as to minimize bias in the analysis. A random portion of the samples should also be analyzed by a third party to evaluate the primary laboratory's performance. QC replicates (duplicates, splits) should be collected for analysis by the primary laboratory to determine analytical variability (USEPA 1995 (252)).

15.2.2 The procedures for sediment manipulations described in Section 11 should maintain the sample in a chemical condition as similar as possible to that at the time of collection. QA procedures are established to assure that SOPs are followed and that contamination is neither introduced to nor lost from the manipulated sample. For example, samples to be analyzed for trace metals should not come in contact with metal surfaces (except stainless steel). Sample tracking sheets should document date, time, and investigator each time a sample is removed from storage or replaced back into storage. Specific manipulation procedures should follow established SOPs that minimize chemical alteration of the sample (excepting chemical spiking), maintain sediment physical properties, and include replication and blank samples.

### **15.3 The Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP):**

15.3.1 The Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) is a project-specific document that specifies the data quality and quantity requirements needed for the study as well as all procedures that will be used to collect, analyze, and report those data.

15.3.2 The QAPP uses input from the sampling design derived from the Data Quality Objectives Process (see Section 9, 9.6, and USEPA, 2000a (12)) to specify the above elements. This Plan should be reviewed by an independent person (for example, quality assurance officer or staff member not involved in the project directly) for accuracy and completeness. A key element of a QAPP is Standard Operating Procedures (see 15.4). Further information on preparing a QAPP and resources necessary can be found in USEPA (2000e (289)).

15.4 *Standard Operating Procedures*— Standard operating procedures are written descriptions of routine methods and should be provided for all methods used. A large number of field and laboratory operations can be described in standard operating procedures. General types of procedures that benefit from standard operating procedures include field measurements ancillary to sample collection (for example, water quality measurements or mixing model input measurements); chain-of-custody, sample

handling, and shipment; and routine analytical methods for chemical analyses and toxicological analyses. Standard operating procedures are used to establish that all persons conducting work are following the same procedures and that the procedures do not change over time. All personnel should be familiar with the standard operating procedures before work is initiated. Deviations from standard operating procedures might affect data quality and integrity. If it is necessary to deviate from approved standard operating procedures, these deviations need to be documented and approved through an appropriate chain-of-command.

15.5 Sediment Sample Documentation— Bound field logbooks should be used for the maintenance of field records. All entries should be dated and time of entry recorded. All aspects of sample collection and handling as well as visual observations should be documented in the field logbooks. Documentation should be recorded in pre-numbered bound notebooks using indelible ink pens in sufficient detail so that decision logic may be traced back, once reviewed.

15.6 Sample Tracking Documentation :

15.6.1 Samples delivered to the laboratory should be accompanied by a chain-of-custody record that includes the name of the study, location of collection, date and time of collection, type of sample, sample name or number, number of containers, analysis required, and the collector's signatures. When turning over possession of samples, the relinquisher and the receiver sign, date and record the time on the record sheet. The record sheet allows the transfer of a group of samples at one time. When the laboratory takes possession of the samples, each should be assigned a unique laboratory identification designation. This will provide a consistent system for tracking within the laboratory. If the samples arrive at the laboratory when designated personnel are not there to receive them, the samples are put into a secure location and the transfer is conducted when the appropriate personnel are present.

15.6.2 Upon arrival at the laboratory, samples are inspected for condition and temperature, and sample container labels are verified against the chain-of-custody record or sample tracking form. Sample information is entered on laboratory log-in data sheets used to maintain information regarding sample: receipt, shipping, collection date, and storage. To allow for accurate identification of samples, information contained on sample tracking forms needs to match identically with information contained on the sample container labels. The tracking form lists both the collector's and the laboratory's identification designations. Verified tracking forms are signed by the laboratory personnel with date and time in ink. Missing or compromised samples (for example, inappropriate preservation to maintain integrity, inappropriate containers, and unlabeled or mislabeled containers) are documented on the tracking forms.

15.6.3 When samples are removed from storage, the sample tracking form accompanies it and documents date, time, and investigator associated with any manipulations. The manipulation type is noted on the form in detail or by reference to an approved laboratory SOP. Any deviations from the SOP are also noted. Should the sample be modified in such a way that additional subsamples are created, additional tracking forms need to be created.

15.7 Record Keeping—Proper record keeping is essential to the scientific defensibility of sediment sampling and manipulation. A separate file should be maintained for each sampling or manipulation event or closely related events. This file should contain field logs, chain-of-custody forms, sample tracking forms, storage records, and any QA/QC documentation and records. Original documentation should be signed and dated by the originator.

15.8 QA Audits—In addition to the QA/QC procedures conducted on a routine basis, quality audits (that is, performance and quality systems audits) might be conducted. Performance audits refer to independent checks to evaluate the quality of data produced during testing. There are three types of performance audits: sampling, test, and data processing. These audits are independent of normal quality control checks performed by the operator. A systems audit is an on-site inspection and review of the quality assurance system. The systems audit is performed to verify that the organization is following the policies and procedures described in its QA/QC plan and in appropriate SOPs. Systems audits are performed by an auditor typically from an accrediting body.

15.9 Corrective Action (Management of Non-conformance Events):

15.9.1 The QA Officer and the responsible manager are responsible for reviewing the circumstances of all instances of occurrence of nonconformities, to determine whether corrective action should be taken. The manager is responsible for determining if new samples are required, if the customer should be notified, if additional testing is necessary, or whether the results should be confirmed. A good communication plan is invaluable in helping to identify interactions among labs, clients, and agencies during corrective actions.

15.9.2 Corrective action might take two forms: that of addressing technical problems associated with project activities and that of addressing QA/QC infractions based upon performance. Technical problems in meeting project objectives may range in magnitude from failure to meet minor procedural requirements, to major problems associated with inappropriate methods or data loss.

15.9.3 Established procedures for corrective action of minor technical problems are often included in the SOPs for cases where performance limits or acceptance criteria have been exceeded. On-the-spot corrective actions are noted on data sheets. Major or recurrent QA/QC problems which require long-term corrective action, such as modification of SOPs, are reported. Depending upon the nature and severity of the problem, an approach might be developed. Any corrective action is documented by management.

15.9.4 Infractions of QA/QC policies by staff are identified and addressed by the management. Minor infractions are corrected through additional training or closer supervision. Major or recurrent infractions are corrected through re-assignment of technical personnel.

15.9.5 Corrective actions relative to sample collection and manipulation may include, but are not limited to, review of the data



and calculations, flagging or qualification of suspect data, or possible re-sampling. A review that provides a preliminary check of all “out of limit” events is performed as soon as the data for a given parameter or test is tabulated and verified for accuracy. “Out of limit” events are flagged to determine whether new samples are required.

## **16. Report**

**16.1 Documentation**—Include the following information, either directly or by reference to existing documents, in the record of sediment collection, storage, handling, and manipulation. Published reports should contain enough information to identify the methodology used and quality of the results clearly. Specific information should include the following:

156.1.1 Name of the test and investigator(s); name and location of the sample station and test laboratory; field conditions (for example, water depth, sampler penetration depth in sediment, sediment characteristics, collection and storage methods, and dates of starting and ending of sampling and sediment manipulation;

156.1.2 Source of the control, reference, or test sediment; method for handling, storage, and disposal of the sediment;

156.1.3 Source of the water; its chemical characteristics; a description of any pretreatment;

156.1.4 Methods used for, and results (with confidence limits) of, physical and chemical analyses of the sediment; and

156.1.5 Anything unusual concerning the study, any deviation from these procedures, manipulations, and any other relevant information.

## **167. Keywords**

167.1 basket samplers; benthic macroinvertebrates; characterization; collection; interstitial water; manipulation; multiplate samplers; pore water; sediment; sediment grab samplers; spiking; storage; stream net sampling devices; toxicity; transport

## **ANNEX**

### **(Mandatory Information)**

#### **A1. DESCRIPTION OF SAMPLERS USED TO COLLECT SEDIMENT OR BENTHIC INVERTEBRATES**

##### **A1.1 Significance**

A1.1.1 This annex describes sampling devices that can be used to collect sediment or benthic macroinvertebrates. These include grab sampling devices (Table A1.1) and stream-net sampling devices (Table A1.2). This annex also covers methods for deploying basket samplers and multiplate samplers for collecting benthic macroinvertebrates.

A1.1.2 This annex was developed by consolidating information from the following ASTM standards that were subsequently withdrawn when the standard was approved.

D 4387-84 (2002) Guide for Selecting Grab Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates

D 4556-85 (2002) Guide for Selecting Stream-Net Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates

D 4342-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Ponar Grab Sampler

D 4343-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Ekman Grab Sampler

D 4344-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Smith-Mcintyre Grab Sampler

D 4345-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Van Veen Grab Sampler

D 4346-84 (1997) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Okean 50 Grab Sampler

D 4347-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Shipek (Scoop) Grab Sampler

D 4348-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Holme (Scoop) Grab Sampler

D 4401-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Petersen Grab Sampler

D 4407-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Orange Peel Grab Sampler

D 4557-85 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Surber And Related Type Samplers

D 4558-85 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Drift Net

E 1468-92 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Basket Sampler

E 1469-92 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Multiplate Sampler

##### **A1.2 Terminology Specific to this Annex**

A1.2.1 *benthos*—the community of organisms living in or on the bottom or other substrate in an aquatic environment.

A1.2.2 *grab*—any device designed to “bite” or “scoop” into the bottom sediment of a lake, stream, estuary, ocean, and similar habitats to sample the benthos. Grabs are samplers with jaws that are forced shut by weights, lever arms, springs, or cables. Scoops are grab samplers that scoop sediment with a rotating container.

A1.2.3 *habitat*—the place where an organism lives, that is, mud, rock, shoreline, etc.

A1.2.4 *macroinvertebrates*—benthic or substrate dwelling organisms visible to the unaided eye and retained on a U.S. Standard No. 30 (0.595-mm mesh openings) sieve. The standard sieve opening for marine benthic fauna is 1.0 mm, U.S. Standard No. 18

**TABLE A1.1 Classification of Grab Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates**

<u>Grab Sampling Device</u>	<u>Habitat Sampled</u>	<u>Substrate Type Sampled</u>	<u>Effectiveness of Sampling Device; Taxa Sampled</u>	<u>Advantages</u>	<u>Limitations</u>	<u>Preference or Recommendation</u>	<u>Selected Literature</u>
<u>Ponar Grab</u>	<u>Freshwater lakes, rivers, and estuaries, reservoirs</u>	<u>Hard sediments, except hard clay; some-what less efficient in softer sediments</u>	<u>Sample area 523 cm<sup>2</sup>; efficient and versatile; not entirely adequate for deep burrowing organisms in soft sediments; quantitative and qualitative sampling obtained; sediment inhabiting macro-invertebrates</u>	<u>Better penetration than other grabs; side plates and screens pre-vent washout and shock wave that accompany other grabs</u>	<u>Requires boat, winch, and cable; jaws can be blocked and part of sample lost</u>	<u>Better for quantitative sampling than Petersen grab</u>	<u>Brinkhurst (297, 298) Elliott and Drake (299) Elliott and Tullett (300) Flannagan (301) Howmiller (302) Hudson (303) Lewis, Mason, Weber (304) Powers and Robertson (305) Weber (306) Klemm et al. (353)</u>
<u>Petite</u>	<u>Freshwater lakes, rivers, and estuaries, reservoirs</u>	<u>Hard sediments, except hard clay; some-what less efficient in softer sediments</u>	<u>Sample area 232 cm<sup>2</sup>; efficient and versatile; not entirely adequate for deep burrowing organisms in soft sediments; sediment inhabiting macro-invertebrates</u>	<u>Better penetration than other grabs; side plates and screens pre-vent washout and shock wave that accompany other grabs; can be operated by hand</u>	<u>Jaws can be blocked and part of sample lost; insufficient in swiftly moving water to 1 m/s velocity</u>		<u>Klemm et al.(353) Merritt et al. (354)Gerritsen et al. (355)</u>
<u>Ekman Grab</u>	<u>Freshwater lakes, reservoirs, where there is little current; usually small bodies of water</u>	<u>Soft sediments only</u>	<u>Sample area 232 cm<sup>2</sup>; efficient in soft sediments; extra weights can be used for deeper penetration; quantitative and qualitative obtainable; sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Can be operated by hand; can be operated in shallow, sand or mud bottom streams; comes in a range of sizes</u>	<u>Jaws can fail to penetrate; only partial cylinder cut from substrate, small surface area coverage jaws can be blocked and part of sample lost; inefficient in deep water or moderate to strong currents</u>		<u>Beatties (307) Burton and Flannagan (308) Ekman (309,310) Elliott and Drake (299) Elliott and Tullett (300) Flannagan (301) Howmiller (302) Hudson (303) Lanz, (311) Lewis, Mason, Weber (304) Lind (312) Milbrink and Wiederholm (313) Rowe and Clifford (314)Lewis et al.(356) Klemm et al. (353)Merritt et al. (354)Gerritsen et al.(355)</u>
<u>Tall</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Sample area 232 cm<sup>2</sup> Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>		<u>Paterson and Fernando (315) Schwoerbel (316)</u>
<u>Large</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Sample area 523 cm<sup>2</sup> Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>		<u>Rawson (317) Welch (318) Weber (306)</u>
<u>Extra Large</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Sample area 929 cm<sup>2</sup></u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>		
<u>Petersen Grab</u>	<u>Freshwater lakes, reservoirs; adaptable to rivers, estuaries, and oceans</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay</u>	<u>Sample penetration limited sample area from 0.06 to 0.099 m<sup>2</sup>; sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Gives reasonable quantitative samples when used carefully; comes in a range of sizes</u>	<u>Fairly heavy; need boat and power winch; jaws maybe blocked by sand, etc.; inadequate for deep burrowing organisms; questionable value for strictly quantitative samples; hard to use in adverse weather conditions</u>	<u>Least preferred grab sampler</u>	<u>Barnes (319) Birkett (320) Brinkhurst, (297,298) Davis (321) Edmondson and Winberg (322) Davis (321) Elliott and Tullett (300) Holme and McIntyre (323) Hudson (303) Howmiller (302) Lewis, Mason, Weber (304) Lind (312) Petersen (324) Thorson (325) Welch (318) Weber, (306) Petersen and Boysen Jensen (326)Klemm et al.(353)</u>

**TABLE A1.1** *Continued*

<u>Grab Sampling Device</u>	<u>Habitat Sampled</u>	<u>Substrate Type Sampled</u>	<u>Effectiveness of Sampling Device; Taxa Sampled</u>	<u>Advantages</u>	<u>Limitations</u>	<u>Preference or Recommendation</u>	<u>Selected Literature</u>
<u>Smith-McIntyre Grab</u>	<u>Marine and estuaries; adaptable to large rivers, lakes</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates</u>	<u>Sample area limited to 0.1 m<sup>2</sup> with approximately 4 cm deep in hard sand; reasonably quantitative; sediment inhabiting macro-invertebrates</u>	<u>Reasonable quantitative samples; the trigger plates provide added leverage essential to its penetration of substrate</u>	<u>Heavy; need boat and power winch; spring-loaded jaws, hazardous; jaws can be blocked; inadequate for deep burrowing organisms</u>	<u>Widely acceptable sampling device for use in marine and estuary habitats</u>	<u>Carey and Heyamoto (327) Carey and Paul (328) Elliott and Tullett (300) Holme (329,330) Hopkins (331) Hunter and Simpson (332) McIntyre (333) Smith and McIntyre (334) Tyler and Shackley (335) Wigley (336) Word (337) Klemm et al.(353)</u>
<u>Van Veen Grab</u>	<u>Marine and estuaries, adaptable to freshwater areas</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates</u>	<u>Sample area 0.1 m<sup>2</sup> and 0.2 m<sup>2</sup>; reasonable penetration; to depth of approximately 5 to 7 cm; sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Jaws close tighter than Petersen grab; samples most sediment types; comes in a range of sizes</u>	<u>Need large boat, power winch and cable line; blockage of jaws may cause sample loss; not useful for deep burrowing organisms</u>	<u>Limited application</u>	<u>Barnes (319) Beukema (338) Birkett (320) Elliott and Drake (299) Elliott and Tullett (300) Holme (329,330) Lassig (339) Longhurst (340) McIntyre (333)(341) Nichols and Ellison (342) Schwoerbel (316) Ursin (343) Wigley (336), Word (344,345) Word (337) Klemm et al (353)</u>
<u>Orange-Peel Grab</u>	<u>Marine waters, deep lakes</u>	<u>Sandy substrates, cobble, rubble stone</u>	<u>Sample area 0.025 m<sup>2</sup>; penetration depth about 18 cm; qualitative sampler, not a satisfactory quantitative sampler; should not be used in critical quantitative work that is to be compared with results from other sampling areas; sediment inhabiting macro-invertebrates</u>	<u>Comes in a range of sizes</u>	<u>Need large boat, powered which and cable line; blocking of jaws may cause sample loss</u>	<u>Limited application; reconnaissance sampling only</u>	<u>Briba and Reys (346) Elliott and Tullett (300) Hartman (347) Hopkins (331) Merna (348) Packard (349) Reish (350) Thorson (325) Word (344)Klemm et al (353)</u>
<u>Okean 50 Grab</u>	<u>Marine, estuarine, also large rivers</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay, similar substrates</u>	<u>Sample area 0.25 m<sup>2</sup>; should be lowered slowly for quantitative work; moderately deep penetration in hard sand; better for quantitative sampling than Petersen grab; sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Moderately deep penetration in hard sand; gauze covered window at top of each bucket to allow water to escape while grab is closing; offer some resistance to swift currents; lowering of grab desirable for deep sea sampling; may also have hinged doors instead of screened windows; rapid rates of lowering are possible; comes in a range of sizes</u>	<u>Heavy; requires large boat, powered winch and cable line; jaws may be blocked and sample lost; not entirely adequate for deep burrowing organisms; should be lowered slowly for quantitative sampling</u>		<u>Elliott and Tullett (300) Holme (329,330) Holme and McIntyre (323) Lisitsin and Udintsen (351) Zhadin (352)</u>

sieve. Examples of macroinvertebrates are aquatic insects, macrocrustaceans, mollusks, annelids, roundworms, flatworms, and echinoderms.

**TABLE A1.1** *Continued*

<u>Grab Sampling Device</u>	<u>Habitat Sampled</u>	<u>Substrate Type Sampled</u>	<u>Effectiveness of Sampling Device; Taxa Sampled</u>	<u>Advantages</u>	<u>Limitations</u>	<u>Preference or Recommendation</u>	<u>Selected Literature</u>
<u>Shipek Grab</u>	<u>Estuarine areas, also large freshwater lakes</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates</u>	<u>Sample area 20 cm<sup>2</sup>, approximately 10 cm deep at left; sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Scoop type sampler</u>	<u>Heavy; requires boat, powered winch and line; should be lowered on a near vertical line; inadequate for deep burrowing organisms; sampled area may be rather small for quantitative work</u>	<u>Limited application</u>	<u>Barnes (319) Elliott and Tullett (300) Flannagan (301) Holme (329,330) Holme and McIntyre (323)</u>
<u>Holme Grab</u>	<u>Marine, estuarine areas, deep lakes</u>	<u>Sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates</u>	<u>Sample area 0.05 m<sup>2</sup>, approximately 15 cm. in hard sand, etc., sediment inhabiting macroinvertebrates</u>	<u>Scoop type sampler; comes with a single scoop or double scoop</u>	<u>Heavy; requires boat, powered winch and line; springs of scoop may be difficult to reset; inadequate for deep burrowing organisms</u>	<u>Limited application</u>	<u>Barnes (319) Elliott and Tullett (300) Holme (329,349)(39) Holme and McIntyre (323) Thorson (325)</u>

### **A1.3 Significance and Use**

A1.3.1 Grab samplers for collecting sediments or benthic macroinvertebrates: Qualitative and quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates inhabiting sediments or substrates are often collected using a grab sampler. In view of the advantages and limitations regarding the penetration of the sediment by many grab samplers and their closing mechanisms, it is not possible to recommend any single instrument as suitable for general use. However, the Petersen grab is considered the least effective bottom grab sampler and, therefore, has limited application. The type and size of the grab sampler or device selected for use will depend on such factors as the size of boat, hoisting gear available, the type of substrate or sediment to be sampled, depth of water, current velocity, and whether sampling is in sheltered areas or in open waters of large rivers, reservoirs, lakes, and oceans. A great variety of instruments have been described and choice of a grab sampler will depend largely on what is available, what is suitable for the sampling area, and what can be obtained without difficulty. This annex describes the following grab samplers for collecting sediment or benthic macroinvertebrates: (1) Ponar, (2) Ekman, (3) Petersen, (4) Smith-McIntyre, (5) Van Veen, (6) Orange-Peel, (7) Okean 50, (8) Shipek, and (9) Holme. Tables A1.3 and A1.4 describe advantages and disadvantages of commonly used grab or core samplers.

A1.3.2 Stream-net sampling devices for collecting benthic macroinvertebrates: Stream-net samplers are used to collect macrobenthos inhabiting a wide range of habitat types from shallow flowing streams or shallow areas in rivers. The stream-net devices (Surber, portable invertebrate box, Hess, Hess stream bottom, and stream-bed fauna samplers) are unit area samplers used for collecting benthic organisms in certain types of substrates. These devices are hand operated and permit collections of qualitative or reasonably quantitative samples of benthic macroinvertebrates from flowing shallow waters. They are used to obtain quantitative estimates of the standing crop, for example, biomass, number of individuals and number of taxa of benthic macroinvertebrates per unit area of stream bottom. Drift nets are another type of qualitative and quantitative sieving device that are useful for collecting benthic macroinvertebrates that either actively or passively enter the water column from all types of substrates in flowing waters. These devices are used to determine the drift of benthic organisms from a variety of substrate types at one time.

A1.3.3 Basket and multiple-plate sampling devices for collecting benthic macroinvertebrates: Basket samplers are used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from lentic and lotic waters containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on various types of substrates. The materials used in the basket sampler are natural or artificial materials of various compositions and configurations. The device is placed in water for a predetermined exposure period and depth for the colonization of macroinvertebrate communities. Multiple-plate samplers consist of artificial substrate surfaces (tempered hardboard or ceramic plates) for colonization by aquatic organisms. Their uniform shape and texture compared to natural substrates greatly simplifies the problem of sampling relative to basket samplers. Physical factors such as stream velocity and depth may variably affect the degree of colonization. The sampling method is selective for drifting organisms (biased for insects) and for those that preferentially attach to or live on hard surfaces.

### **A1.4 General Hazards**

A1.4.1 Inspect samplers for mechanical defects prior to use.

A1.4.2 Exercise caution when handling the samplers.

**TABLE A1.2 Classification of Stream-Net Samplers for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates**

<u>Stream-Net Samplers</u>	<u>Habitat Sampled</u>	<u>Substrate Type Sampled</u>	<u>Effectiveness of Sampling Device; Taxa Sampled</u>	<u>Advantages</u>	<u>Limitations</u>	<u>Preference or Recommendation</u>	<u>Selected Literature</u>
<u>Surber sampler</u>	<u>Shallow, flowing waters, depth recommended</u>	<u>Mud, sand, gravel, or rubble substrates</u>	<u>Depends on experience and ability of user; area sampled 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>; performance depends on current and substrate; size of macroinvertebrates collected depends on mesh size; variety of mesh sizes may be used.</u>	<u>Easily transported or constructed; samples a unit area; partial screen enclosure</u>	<u>Does not produce quantitative samples consistently; clogging with sand or algae; difficult to set in some substrate types, that is, large rubble; cannot be used efficiently in still or deep water.</u>	<u>Can be modified to fit difficult situations.</u>	<u>Elliot and Tullett (357) Ellis and Rutter (358) Lane (359) Merritt, Cummins, and Resh (360) Needham and Usinger (361) Pollard and Kinney (362) Rutter and Ettinger (363) Resh (364) Rutter and Poe (365) Surber (366)(367) Welch (368) Kroger (369) Klemm et al (353)</u>
<u>Portable invertebrate box sampler</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above; completely enclosed; limits escape of organisms; stable platform; can be used in weed beds.</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Resh, et al (370)</u>
<u>Hess sampler</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above; completely enclosed; limits escape of organisms; can be used in weed beds.</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Canton and Chadwick (371) Elliott and Tullett (357) Hess (372) Merritt, Cummins, and Resh (360) Pollard and Kinney (362) Resh (364) Usinger (373) Welch (368) Resh, et al (370) Klemm et al.(353)</u>
<u>Hess stream bottom sampler</u>	<u>Shallow, flowing waters, depth recommended</u>	<u>Mud, sand, gravel, or rubble substrates</u>	<u>Depends on experience and ability of user; area sampled 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>; performance depends on current and substrate; size of macroinvertebrates collected depends on mesh size; variety of mesh sizes may be used.</u>	<u>Easily transported, or constructed; samples a unit area completely enclosed; limits escape of organisms; can be used in weed beds.</u>	<u>Does not produce quantitative samples consistently; clogging with sand or algae; difficult to set in some substrate types that is, large rubble; cannot be used efficiently in still or deep water.</u>	<u>Can be modified to fit difficult situations</u>	
<u>Stream-bed fauna sampler</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	<u>Same as above</u>	
<u>Drift nets</u>	<u>Flowing rivers and stream</u>	<u>Drifting benthic macroinvertebrates from all substrate types.</u>	<u>Effective in collecting all taxa which drift in the water column; performance depends on current velocity and sampling period; size of macroinvertebrates collected depends on mesh size used.</u>	<u>Low sampling error; less time, money, effort; collects macroinvertebrates from all substrates; usually collects more taxa.</u>	<u>Unknown where organisms come from; terrestrial species may make up a large part of sample in summer and periods of wind and rain.</u>	<u>Limited application</u>	<u>Allen (374) Allan and Russek (375) Bailey (376) Berner (377) Chaston (378) Clifford (379)(380) Cushing (381,382) Dimond (383) Edington (384) Elliott (385,386,387,388,389,390) Ferrington (391) Hales and Gaufin (392) Hildebrand (393) Holt and Waters (394) Hynes (395) Klemm</u>

**TABLE A1.2** *Continued*

<u>Stream-Net Samplers</u>	<u>Habitat Sampled</u>	<u>Substrate Type Sampled</u>	<u>Effectiveness of Sampling Device; Taxa Sampled</u>	<u>Advantages</u>	<u>Limitations</u>	<u>Preference or Recommendation</u>	<u>Selected Literature</u>
<u>Drift nets</u>	<u>Flowing rivers and stream</u>	<u>Drifting benthic macroinvertebrates from all substrate types.</u>	<u>Effective in collecting all taxa which drift in the water column; performance depends on current velocity and sampling period; size of macroinvertebrates collected depends on mesh size used.</u>	<u>Low sampling error; less time, money, effort; collects macroinvertebrates from all substrates; usually collects more taxa.</u>	<u>Unknown where organisms come from; terrestrial species may make up a large part of sample in summer and periods of wind and rain.</u>	<u>Limited application</u>	<u>Keefe and Maughan (396) Larimore (397) Larkin and McKone (398) Lehmkuhl and Anderson (399) McLay (400) Merritt, Cummins, and Resh (360) Minshall and Winger (401) Modde and Schulmbach (402) Muller (403,404) Mullican, Sansing, and Sharber (405) Mundie (406,407) Pearson and Franklin (408) Pearson and Kramer (409,410) Pearson, Kramer, and Franklin (411) Pfitzer (412) Radford and Hartland-Rowe (413) Reisen and Prins (414) Resh (364) Resh, et. al (370) Spence and Hynes (415) Tanaka (416) Tranter and Smith (417) Waters (418,419, 420,421,422, 423,424,425, 426,427) Weber (428) Wilson and Bright (429) Winner, Boesel, and Farrell (430) Wojtalik and Waters (431)</u>

A1.4.3 Clean samplers between use (see 10.4).

## **A1.5 Descriptions of Samplers**

### **A1.5.1 Ponar Grab Sampler:**

A1.5.1.1 A Ponar Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.1) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in lakes, rivers, estuaries, oceans, and similar habitats. This device is most useful for collecting benthic macroinvertebrates from a wide range of bottom substrate types, for example, coarse sand, fine gravel, clay, mud, marl, and similar substrates. The sampler can be used in swift currents and deeper waters. The sampler is available in a range of sizes from 23 to 15 cm.

A1.5.1.2 The Ponar grab sampler has paired jaws that should penetrate beneath the surface of the substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary layer of the substrate, close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain discrete samples of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. The Ponar collects a sample from an area of about 523 cm<sup>2</sup>. A small version, the petite Ponar grab, takes a sample area of 232 cm<sup>2</sup> and can be used in habitats where there may be an unusual abundance of macroinvertebrates, thus eliminating the need to subsample. The Ponar grab sampler is used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from different aquatic habitats containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on or in various types of substrates.

### **A1.5.1.3 Hazards:**

- (1) This device cannot be used in fast flowing streams, and in habitats with large cobble or rubble stone substrates.
- (2) When not in use, a safety pin lock attached to the lever bar prevents closing of the sampler until the pin is removed.
- (3) The weight of the Ponar grab makes it necessary to use a winch and cable or portable crane for retrieving the sample, and ideally the samples should be taken from a stationary boat or platform.
- (4) The smaller version, petite Ponar grab, is designed for hand-line operation; however, the petite Ponar grab is enhanced by the use of a winch and cable.

**TABLE A1.3 Advantages and Disadvantages of Commonly Used Grab Samplers**

NOTE—Modified from Klemm et al., 1990 (30) ; Environment Canada, 1994(2) ; PSEP, 1997a (33); WDE, 1995(29); USEPA 2001 (1).

Device	Use	Sample Depth, cm	Sample Volume, L <sup>3</sup>	Advantages	Disadvantages
Orange Peel	Marine waters, deep lakes	0 to 18	10 to 20	Comes in a range of sizes	Need large boat, powered winch and cable line Blocking of jaws may cause sample loss
Smith-McIntyre	Deep lakes, rivers and estuaries	0 to 4 (in deep sand)	10 to 20	Reasonable quantitative samples The trigger plates provide added leverage essential to its penetration of substrate	Heavy, need boat and power winch Spring loaded jaws, hazardous Inadequate for deep burrowing organisms
Birge-Ekman, small	Lakes and marine areas; soft sediments, silt and sand	0 to 10	≤ 3.4	Handles easily without winch or crane Can be adapted for shallow water use Good for soft sediments, sand and silt Allows subsampling	Restricted to low current due to light weight and messenger activation May exceed target penetration depth Subsampling may be restricted by size of top flaps
Birge-Ekman, large	Lakes and marine areas; soft sediments, silt and sand	0 to 30	≤ 13.3	Can be adapted for shallow water use Good for soft sediments, sand and silt Allows subsampling	Restricted to low current conditions Penetration depth can exceed desired level due to weight of sampler Heavy; requires winch
PONAR	Deep lakes, rivers and estuaries; useful on sand, silt or clay	0 to 10	7.25	Most universal grab sampler Adequate on most substrates Large sample obtained intact, permitting subsampling Good for coarse and firm bottom sediments	May not close completely, resulting in sample loss Metal frame may contaminate sample Heavy; requires winch
PONAR, petite	Deep lakes, rivers and estuaries; useful on sand, silt or clay	0 to 10	1.0	Adequate for most substrates that are not compacted	May not penetrate sediment to desired depth, especially in consolidated sediments. Susceptible to incomplete closure and loss of sample. Requires more casts to obtain sufficient sample if many analyses needed.
Van Veen	Deep lakes, rivers and estuaries; useful on sand, silt or clay; effective in marine environments in deep water and strong currents	0 to 30	18 to 75	Adequate on most substrates that are not compacted Large sample obtained intact, permitting subsampling Available in stainless steel	May not close completely, resulting in sample loss May close prematurely in rough waters Metal frame may contaminate sample Heavy; requires winch
Modified Van Veen (for example, "Ted-Young grab")	Lakes and marine areas	0 to 15	≤ 18.0	Fluorocarbon plastic liner can help avoid metal contamination Screened bucket cover helps reduce bow wave effects	Requires winch Relatively expensive
Petersen	Deep lakes, rivers and estuaries; useful on most substrates	0 to 30	9.45	Provides large sample Penetrates most substrates	Shock wave from descent may disturb fine-grained sediment Lacks lid cover to permit subsampling May not close completely, resulting in sample loss Metal frame may contaminate sample Restricted to low current conditions May exceed target penetration depth
Shipek	Used primarily in marine waters and large inland lakes and reservoirs; not useful for compacted sandy clay or till substrates	0 to 10	3.0	Sample bucket opens to permit subsampling Retains fine-grained sediments effectively	Metal frame may contaminate sample Heavy; requires winch II. Can result in the loss of the topmost 2-3 cm of very fine, unconsolidated sediment
Mini Shipek	Lakes, useful for most substrates that are soft	0 to 3	0.5	Handles easily without winch or crane from most platforms	Requires vertical penetration Samples small volume May lose fine-grained sediment May close prematurely

#### A1.5.1.4 Procedure:

(1) Attach the Ponar grab to the cable and remove the safety pin with enough tension between the grab and cable so that the grip mechanism will release only when the sampler is on the bottom.

(2) The device should have a controlled lowering speed and should be lowered slowly because free-fall may airplane the device, causing the device to land improperly or causing a pressure wave and blowout of the surface layer of sediment when the grab reaches the bottom.

**TABLE A1.4 Advantages and Disadvantages of Commonly Used Core Samplers**

NOTE—Modified from Klemm et al., 1990 (30) ; Environment Canada, 1994(2) ; PSEP, 1997a (33); WDE, 1995(29); USEPA/ACE, 1998 (34)); USEPA (2001) (1).

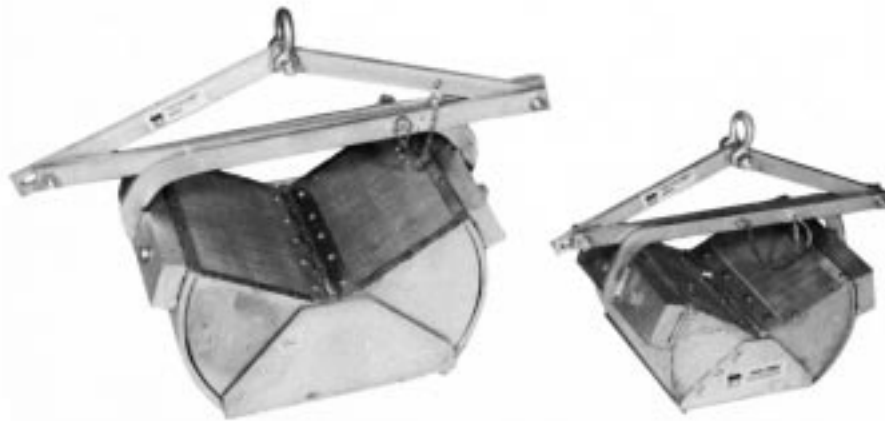
Device/ Dimensions	Use	Depth Sample	Volume Sample, L <sup>3</sup>	Advantages	Disadvantages
Fluorocarbon plastic or glass tube (3.5 to 7.5 cm inner diameter (I.D.); ≤120 cm long)	Shallow wadeable waters or deep waters if SCUBA available; soft or semi-consolidated deposits	0 to 10cm	0.096 to 0.44	Preserves layering and permits historical study of sediment deposition Minimal risk of contamination Rapid; samples immediately ready for laboratory shipment	Small sample size necessitates repetitive sampling
Hand corer with removable fluorocarbon plastic or glass liners (3.5 to 7.5 cm I.D.; ≤120 cm long)	Same as above except more consolidated sediments can be obtained	0 to 10 cm	0.96 to 0.44	Same advantages as fluorocarbon plastic or glass tube Penetrates substrate with greater ease through use of handles	Small sample size necessitates repetitive sampling Requires careful handling to prevent spillage Requires removal of liners before repetitive sampling Barrel and core cutter metal may contaminate sample
Box corer	Same as above but the depth of the uncon-solidated sediment must be at least 1 m	0 to 70cm	≤ 30.0	Collects large, undisturbed sample; optimal for obtaining intact subsamples	Difficult to handle Relatively heavy; requiring larger vessel and power winch to deploy.
Gravity Corer, Phleger Corer (3.5 cm I.D., ≤50 cm long)	Deep lakes and rivers; semi-consolidated sediments	0 to 50cm	≤ 0.48	Reduces risk of sample contamination Maintains sediment integrity relatively well Penetrates with sharp cutting edge	Requires careful handling to avoid sediment spillage Requires repetitive and time-consuming operation and removal of liners due to small sample size
Gravity Corer, Kajak-Brinkhurst Corer (5 cm I.D., ≤70 cm long)	Deep lakes and rivers; Soft fine-grained sediments	0 to 70cm	≤ 1.37	Collects greater volume than the Phleger Corer.	Same as Phleger Corer
Benthos Gravity Corer (6.6, 7.1 cm I.D., <3 m long)	Soft, fine-grained sediments	0 to 3 m	≤ 10.26	Retains complete sample from tube because the core valve is fitted to the core liner Fins promote vertical penetration	Requires weights for deep penetration so the required lifting capacity is 750 to 1000 kg Requires vertical penetration Compacts sediment sample
Alpine Gravity Corer (3.5 cm I.D.)	Soft, fine-grained, semi-consolidated substrates	≤ 2 m	≤ 1.92	Allows different penetration depths due to interchangeable steel barrel	Lacks stabilizing fins for vertical penetration May penetrate non-vertically and incompletely Requires a lifting capacity of 2000 kg Disturbs sediment stratas and integrity Compacts sediment sample
Piston Corers	Ocean floor and large deep lakes; Most substrates	3 to 20 m	5 to 40	Typically recovers a relatively undisturbed sediment core in deep waters	Requires lifting capacity of > 2000 kg Piston and piston positioning at penetration may fail Disturbs surface (0 to 0.5 m) layer
BMH-53 Piston Corer	Waters < 2 m deep with extension rod; soft deposits	≤ 2 m	≤ 2	Piston provides for greater sample retention	Cores must be extruded onsite to other containers Metal barrels introduce risk of metal contamination
Boomerang Corer (6.7 cm I.D.)	Ocean floor (up to 9000 m deep)	1 m	3.52	Requires minimal shipboard equipment so small vessels can be used	Only penetrates 1.2 m Requires calm water for recovery Loses 10 to 20 % of sample
Vibracorer (5.0 to 7.5 cm I.D.)	Continental shelf of oceans, large lakes; sand, silty sand, gravelly sand substrates	3 to 6 m	5.89 to 13.25	For deep profiles it effectively samples most substrates with minimum disturbance Can be used in over 20 m of water depth Portable models can be operated from small vessels (e.g. 10 m long)	Labor intensive Assembly and disassembly might require divers Disturbs surface (0 to 0.5 m) layer Special generator may be needed Heavier models require larger boat and power winch to deploy

(3) Once the grab reaches the bottom, its weight will cause it to penetrate the substrate, and the slack-off on the cable allows the locking lever to release, therefore, permitting the movement that allows the horizontal locking bar to drop out of the locking notch and allows the jaws to close as the device is raised.





(a)



(b)

(c)

**FIG. A1.1 Ponar Grabs. (a) Screen-Top Sediment Grab, Standard Design (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.); (b) Screen-Top Wildco Ponar Grab, Standard Design; (c) Wildco Petite Ponar Grab (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co.)**

(4) Now the tension on the cable is resumed. As the grab is raised slowly, the lever system closes the jaws.

(5) Raise the sampler at a slow but steady rate to limit sample loss or washout.

(6) Once on board, empty into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(7) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water so that all sediment material is included in the sample processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

(8) Auxiliary jaw weight can be attached to the Ponar grab to increase its weight and is recommended for penetrating certain hard substrates.

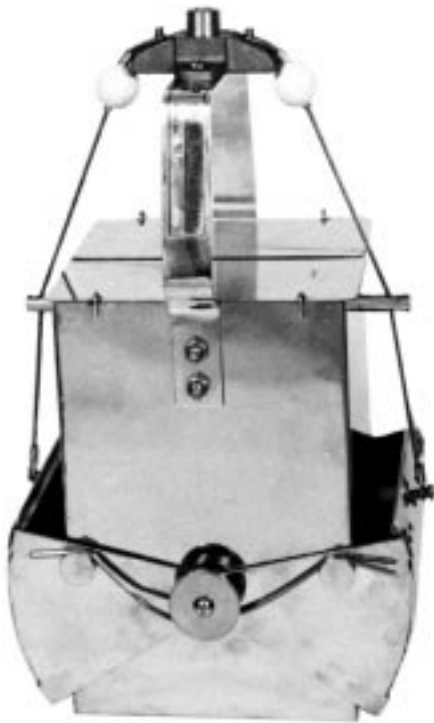
#### A1.5.2 Ekman Grab Sampler:

A1.5.2.1 Ekman Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.2) is designed to obtain samples of macroinvertebrates from soft sediments in lakes, estuaries, oceans, and similar habitats where there is little current. This device is most useful for collecting macroinvertebrates from soft sediments, such as very fine sand, mud, and sludge. The sampler is available in sizes of 15 cm, 23 cm, and 30 cm.

A1.5.2.2 The Ekman grab sampler is a box-shaped device with two scoop-like jaws that should penetrate the intended substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary of the substrate, close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain a discrete sample of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. Each half of the grab is covered with hinged doors to limit washout upon sample lowering and retrieval. The Ekman grab sampler is used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from



(a)



(b)



(c)

**FIG. A1.2 Ekman Grabs. (a) Wildco Ekman Grab, Standard Design with Case; (b) Wildco Ekman Grab, tall design, (Photographs courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co.; (c) Ekman Box Sediment Grab (Birge-Ekman Design), (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.)**

different aquatic habitats containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on or in various types of substrates.

A1.5.2.3 Hazards:

(1) This sampler is inefficient in deep waters, under adverse weather conditions, and in waters of moderate to strong currents or wave action.

(2) Exercise caution at all times once the grab is loaded or cocked because a safety lock is not part of the design.

(3) Operate the sampler from a boat with a winch and cable.

A1.5.2.4 Procedure:

(1) The sampler is cocked by raising each jaw upward into the cocked position using the attached cable and securing the cable to the catch pin located at the top of the sampler.

(2) Once cocked, lift the sampler overboard and lower slowly but steadily to the bottom.

(3) Once on the bottom, indicated by a slack line, the messenger is sent down the line tripping the catch mechanism, causing the spring loaded jaws to close the bottom of the sampler, containing the sediment.

(4) Raise the sample at a slow but steady rate to limit sample loss or washout.

(5) Once the sample is on board, empty the sample into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(6) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water so that the entire sample is processed before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.3 Petersen Grab Sampler:

A1.5.3.1 The Petersen Grab Sampler is designed to obtain quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in lakes, reservoirs, and similar habitats and is adaptable to rivers, estuaries, and oceans. This device (Fig. A1.3) is useful for sampling sand, gravel, marl, and clay in swift currents and deep waters. This sampler is available in a range of sizes that will sample an area from 0.06 to 0.099 m<sup>2</sup>.

A1.5.3.2 The Petersen grab sampler has paired jaws that should penetrate the intended substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary layer of the substrate, close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain the sample of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. The Petersen grab has been modified to improve its efficiency and reliability. Modified versions of the Petersen grab sampler may have a screened window at the top of each jaw to allow water to escape while the grab is descending and closing. While some modifications may close or function better, the sampling characteristics remain the same. Most of the modified versions are intended for use in estuarine and marine waters. A small version can be hauled aboard by hand and held with one hand for washing procedures.

A1.5.3.3 This grab sampler has limited application, and is not recommended for quantitative benthic work. A consensus of aquatic biologists consider the use of this device the least preferable grab sampler and would use it only in limited applications. The grab should only be used with consideration of its defects when quantitative estimates are attempted.

A1.5.3.4 Hazards:

(1) This grab sampler cannot be used under adverse weather conditions.

(2) It is advisable to use a winch and cable to lower and raise the sampler.

(3) Ideally a stationary boat or platform should be used when taking samples.

(4) Auxiliary weights can be added to each jaw to increase its weight for penetrating certain hard substrates.

(5) The modified Petersen devices are designed to be quite heavy and require heavy gear and a large vessel for efficient.

A1.5.3.5 Procedure:

(1) The Petersen grab sampler should be inspected for mechanical defects prior to use.

(2) The sampler is slowly lowered to the bottom when open to avoid disturbing lighter materials of the substrate.

(3) When the lowering line is slackened, a catch is released, the two scoops close, and a semicircular bite of the sediment is taken. Raise the sampler at a slow but steady rate to limit sample loss or washout.

(4) Once the grab is aboard the vessel, empty the sample either into a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(5) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water, so that all the sample is included in the sample processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.4 Smith-McIntyre Grab Sampler :

A1.5.4.1 Smith-McIntyre Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.4) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in rough weather in hard sand bottoms in lakes, streams, estuaries, and oceans. This device is useful for sampling macroinvertebrates from sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates and is useful under adverse weather conditions. This device samples a surface area of 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>.

A1.5.4.2 The Smith-McIntyre grab sampler has paired jaws that are forced to penetrate into the intended substrate by two “loaded” springs, need to close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain discrete samples of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. The Smith-McIntyre grab sampler is fitted with gauze panels or free-swinging panels on the top to reduce the shock wave during descent. Larger Smith-McIntyre grabs can be constructed depending on the type of bottom to be sampled and additional weights can be fitted to the frame of the grab sampler for additional penetration into the sediment.

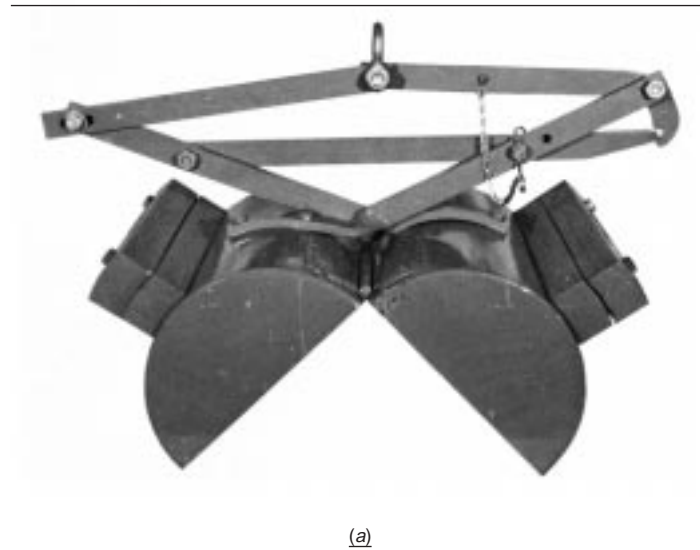
A1.5.4.3 Hazards:

(1) The spring-loaded jaws of the Smith-McIntyre grab should be considered a hazard and caution should be exercised when using the device.

(2) Due to the weight and size, this device should be used from a vessel with boom and lifting capabilities.

(3) Do not handle this device in the loaded mode except just prior to sampling.

A1.5.4.4 Procedure:



**FIG. A1.3 Petersen Grabs (a) Wildco Petersen Grab (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co.); (b) Kahl Petersen Grab (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.)**

- (1) The Smith-McIntyre grab is “loaded” by compressing the large coil springs mounted on the instrument using the loading bar.
- (2) As soon as the spring is loaded, insert the safety pins to prevent the accidental triggering of the bottom plates.
- (3) Once the device is overboard, just prior to being lowered to the bottom, remove the safety pins.
- (4) Exercise caution to stand clear of the cocked jaws.
- (5) The Smith-McIntyre is lowered slowly but at a steady rate by cable until the trigger plates contact the bottom.
- (6) Pressure on these plates releases the two coiled springs that drive the buckets (jaws) into the sediment.
- (7) Applying tension to the lifting cable completes the closure of the jaws, and the sampler may then be returned to the surface.
- (8) Closure of the sampler is made at the side, rather than at the bottom.
- (9) After closure the sample is given optimum protection from washout during return trip by the cylindrical configuration of the sampler.



**FIG. A1.4 Smith-McIntyre Grab (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.)**

(10) This device may be fitted with a hydraulic closure device that facilitates sampling in hard-packed bottoms, such as clay.

(11) Once on deck, place the sampler on a stand; the sample buckets can be disengaged from the rest of the device by releasing two retaining latches at each end of the upper semicylinder, and the sample is dumped into a large basin or washtub and prepared for processing.

(12) Thoroughly wash or hose the grab buckets with water so that all the sediment material is included in the sample processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

(13) After the sample has been removed, the springs may then be loaded and the safety pins installed.

A1.5.5 Van Veen Grab Sampler:

A1.5.5.1 Van Veen Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.5) is designed to give quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in estuaries, oceans, and similar habitats, and is adaptable to freshwater areas including large rivers. This device is useful for sampling sand, gravel, mud, clay and similar substrates. This sampler is available in two sizes, 0.1 m<sup>2</sup> and 0.2 m<sup>2</sup>.



**FIG. A1.5 Van Veen Grab (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.)**

A1.5.5.2 The Van Veen grab sampler has paired jaws that should penetrate the intended substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary of the substrate, close by pincer-like action of two long arms when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain discrete samples of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. The Van Veen is basically an improved version of the Petersen grab in that long arms have been attached to the jaws to stabilize the grab on the bottom in the open sea just prior or during closing of the device. Additional weights can be applied to the jaws to effect greater penetration in sediments. The long arms give added leverage for penetrating hard sediments. Larger versions of this grab can be constructed depending upon the type of bottom to be sampled, and the type of vessel available to deploy this sampler. The Van Veen grab sampler is used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from different aquatic habitats containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on or in various types of substrates.

A1.5.5.3 Hazards:

(1) At great ocean depths the sampler is sometimes difficult to operate as standing waves or swell at the surface or deeper down will act upon the levers so as to close the grab long before it reaches the bottom sediment.

(2) As with the larger grabs, the Van Veen should be lowered from a stationary vessel or platform with boom and lifting capabilities.

A1.5.5.4 Procedure:

(1) The Van Veen is cocked with the long arms assuming the spread condition.

(2) The chains from the jaws are attached to the counter balance mechanism, as are the slackened wires from the long arms.

(3) Tension is carefully applied to the triggering mechanism as the sampler is winched off its platform, and once the tension is firmly changed from the jaws, the Van Veen is relatively stable in the cocked position.

(4) Exercise care in lowering the Van Veen through the surface of the water as occasionally contact will produce slack in the chain that will trip the counter balance mechanism.

(5) The grab is lowered slowly to the bottom, and once it makes contact with the bottom the grab should be winched in, which initially closes the device and then raises it from the sediment.

(6) The grab is retrieved slowly to limit washout and once aboard the vessel, empty the grab into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(7) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water so that all the sample is processed before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.6 Orange-Peel Grab Sampler:

A1.5.6.1 Orange-Peel Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.6) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in marine waters and deep lakes. This device is useful for sampling sand, cobble, rubble stone, and similar substrates. The sampler is available in a range of sizes but the 1600 cm<sup>3</sup> is generally used although larger sizes are available. The sampler should not be used in critical quantitative work that is to be compared with results of other areas and is recommended as a reconnaissance sampler only.

A1.5.6.2 The Orange-Peel grab sampler has four curved jaws that close to encircle a hemisphere of sediment and should penetrate the intended substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary of the substrate, close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain discrete samples of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. A modification of the Orange Peel, described by Reish (1959 (350) ) has a trigger mechanism and more efficient closing jaws, and the volume of sample to surface-area sampled relationship has been worked out. The surface area of this device also varies with penetration depth or volume sampled. The device penetrates to a maximum depth of 18 cm, but this depth will vary.

A1.5.6.3 Hazards:

(1) This sampler cannot be used under adverse weather conditions.

(2) The Orange Peel should be inspected for mechanical defects prior to use.

(3) When taking samples, a stationary boat or platform should be used.

A1.5.6.4 Procedure:

(1) Lower the sampler to the bottom by a powered winch and cable.

(2) Lower the sampler at a slow but steady rate.

(3) Once the sampler reaches the bottom, the jaws are operated by a large wheel and sprocket mechanism within the upper framework, and may be operated by a second cable or by a slack release mechanism activated by a messenger.

(4) The sampler is retrieved slowly, but to limit sample loss a loosely fitted canvas sleeve can be placed on the upper works to limit washing out of the sample.

(5) Once the sample is on board, empty it either into a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(6) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water, so that all sediment material is included in the sample processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.7 Okean 50 Grab Sampler:

A1.5.7.1 Okean 50 Grab Sampler (See Holme, 1971 for illustration (330)) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of sediment and macroinvertebrates primarily in marine, estuarine, and large river habitats. This device is useful for collecting macroinvertebrates from sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates. The sampler is available in various sizes, generally a sampling area of 0.25 m<sup>2</sup>. The Okean 50 grab sampler is used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from different aquatic



**FIG. A1.6 Orange-Peel Grab (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp.)**

habitats containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on or in various types of substrates.

A1.5.7.2 The Okean 50 grab sampler has paired jaws that should penetrate the intended substrate without disturbing the water surface boundary of the substrate, close when positioned properly on the bottom, and retain discrete samples of sediment while it is brought to the surface for processing. This device is modified from the Petersen grab by the addition of a counter weight to release the twin jaws and the installation of opening lids in the top of the jaws so that water can flow through as the device is being lowered. The Okean 50 grab sampler retains many of the disadvantages of the Petersen grab but is better for sampling in deep water.

A1.5.7.3 Hazards:

(1) The top of the sampler also contains hinged doors that are held open so that water can flow through as the unit is being lowered and closes when the grab reaches the bottom.

(2) The sampler has a counter weight release mechanism to prevent tripping in mid-water.

(3) The sampler can be weighted up to 150 kg to improve penetration into the substrate.

A1.5.7.4 Procedure:

(1) Slowly and carefully lower the sampler, otherwise, disturbance of the sediment will occur.

(2) The sampler is heavy and requires a boat with a powered winch and cable.

(3) Raise the sampler at a slow but steady rate to limit sample loss or washout.

(4) Once the sample is on board, empty it into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(5) Wash or hose the sampler with water so that all the sample is removed from the device for processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.8 Shipek (Scoop) Grab Sampler :

A1.5.8.1 The Shipek (Scoop) Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.7) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates from sediments in marine waters and large inland bodies of water. This device is useful for sampling macroinvertebrates from sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates. It is designed to take a sediment sample with a surface area of 20 cm<sup>2</sup> to about 10 cm deep at the center.

A1.5.8.2 The Shipek scoop type grab sampler consists of a semicylindrical scoop and should be positioned properly on the bottom to take a scoop and retain discrete samples of sediment through 180°. Unlike many other types of samplers, closure of the device is made at the side, rather than at the bottom.

A1.5.8.3 Hazards:



**FIG. A1.7 Shipek (Scoop) Grab (Photograph courtesy of Hydro Products.)**

- (1) This sampler cannot be used under adverse wind and wave conditions.
- (2) The sampler requires a vessel with a winch and cable.

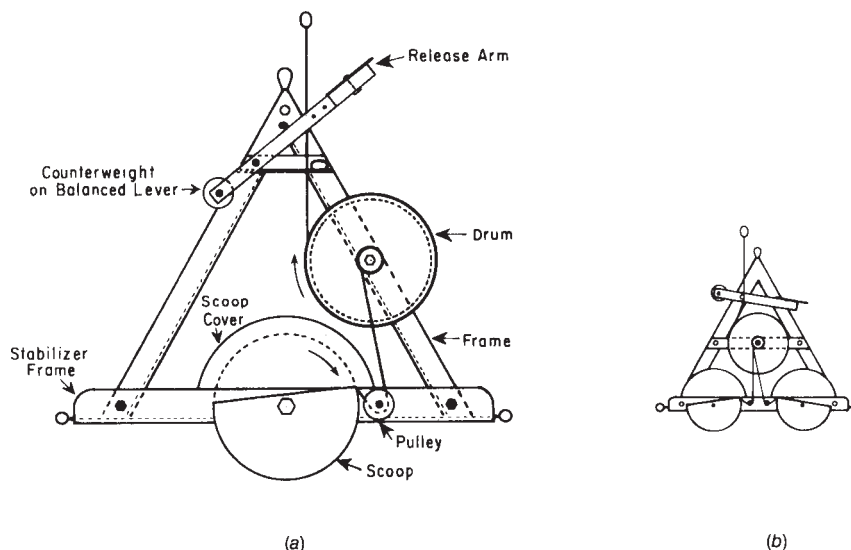
**A1.5.8.4 Procedure:**

- (1) The sampler should be lowered on a near vertical line.
- (2) The sampler is composed of two concentric half cylinders, the inner semicylinder is rotated at high torque by two helically wound external springs.
- (3) Upon contact with the bottom, the two external springs are automatically released by the inertia of a self-contained weight upon a sear mechanism which trips the catch and the scoop rotates upward.
- (4) At the end of its 180° travel, the sample bucket is stopped and held at the closed position by residual spring torque.
- (5) After closure the sample is given optimum protection from washout during the return trip by the cylindrical configuration of the sampler.
- (6) The scoop can be disengaged from the upper semicylinder by releasing the two retaining latches.
- (7) Once the sample is taken, it is retrieved by a power winch and cable.
- (8) Once on deck the sample bucket may be disengaged from the rest of the device by releasing two retaining latches at each end of the upper semicylinder.
- (9) Empty the sample into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.
- (10) Wash or hose the sampler with water so that all the sample is processed before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

**A1.5.9 Holme (Scoop) Grab Sampler :**

A1.5.9.1 The Holme (Scoop) Grab Sampler (Fig. A1.8) is designed to obtain quantitative samples of sediment and macroinvertebrates primarily in marine and estuarine waters and large deep freshwater lakes. This device is useful for sampling macroinvertebrates from sand, gravel, mud, clay, and similar substrates. This sampler is designed to take a sediment sample with a surface area of 0.05 m<sup>2</sup> and approximately 15 cm deep at the center. The device comes with a single scoop or double scoops.

A1.5.9.2 The Holme (scoop) grab sampler has a semicylindrical scoop mounted on the bottom of a heavy frame and needs to be positioned properly on the bottom to take a scoop to retain discrete samples of sediment through 180°. The device penetrates to a depth of about 150 mm. The sampler may be modified to include double scoops each of 0.05 m<sup>2</sup> or larger.



**FIG. A1.8 Holme Grabs. (a) Single Holme; (b) Double Holme (See Holme and McIntyre (1971), pages 103–105)**



A1.5.9.3 Hazards:

(1) This sampler cannot be used under adverse wind and wave conditions and resetting of the scoop is somewhat awkward.

A1.5.9.4 Procedure:

(1) Slowly lower the sampler on a vertical plane with the scoop opening downward until it firmly contacts the substrate.

(2) The trip mechanism is released on lifting; the scoop forcibly rotates 180° along its horizontal axis.

(3) The sample is completely enclosed from below; a cover over the top limits washout.

(4) Operate the sampler from a boat with a powered winch and cable because of its bulk and weight.

(5) Once aboard the vessel, empty the sample into either a suitable container or a sieving device directly for processing.

(6) Thoroughly wash or hose the device with water, so that all the sample is included in the sample processing before a replicate sample is taken (see 10.4).

A1.5.10 Surber Sampler:

A1.5.10.1 The Surber sampler (Figs. A1.9 and A1.10) is designed to obtain a qualitative or quantitative sample of macroinvertebrates from a unit area. The device is used in shallow flowing streams and shallow areas of rivers with mud, sand, gravel, or rubble substrates. Modification of its basic design has resulted in other sampling devices, such as the portable invertebrate box sampler (Fig. A1.11). The latter closed-box-type sampler is preferred, if available. A variety of mesh sizes is available and mesh size should be selected based on the objectives of the study; the finer the mesh, the more organisms (instars) will be collected. These devices sample an area of 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>. The device is restricted to use in shallow streams or shallow areas of rivers, and it depends on a water velocity of not less than 0.05 m/s to wash the sample into a net.

A1.5.10.2 The Surber sampler consists of two 30.5-cm frames, hinged together; one frame rests on the substrate, the other remains upright and holds the nylon net. The sampler is positioned with its net mouth open, facing upstream. When in use, the two frames are locked at right angles, one frame marking off the area of substrate to be sampled and the other frame supporting a net to strain out organisms washed into it from the sample area. Modification of the Surber sampler to overcome some of the limitations of its use (for example, loss of organisms due to backwash) has resulted in the design and construction of a number of related sampling devices, such as the four-sided (enclosed) portable invertebrate box sampler, the cylindrical Hess sampler, the cylindrical Hess stream bottom sampler, and the cylindrical stream-bed fauna sampler. Operation of the portable invertebrate box, Hess, Hess stream bottom, and stream-bed fauna samplers are similar to the Surber sampler.

A1.5.10.3 The Hess (cylindrical) sampler (Fig. A1.12) is designed to obtain a qualitative or quantitative sample of macroinvertebrates from a unit area. The device is used in shallow flowing streams and shallow areas of rivers with mud, sand, gravel, or rubble substrates. Modification of its basic design has resulted in other sampling devices, such as the Hess stream bottom sampler (Fig. A1.13) and stream-bed fauna sampler (Fig. A1.14). A variety of mesh sizes is available, and mesh size should be selected based on the objectives of the study; the finer the mesh, the more organisms (instars) will be collected. The area sampled by these devices is dependent on their diameter and is comparable to the Surber sampler. These devices sample an area of 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>.

A1.5.10.4 The net used to collect macroinvertebrates can vary in mesh size, length, taper, and material, for example, canvas, taffeta, or nylon monofilament. The net is usually made of nylon, and a variety of mesh sizes is available. The mesh size used will depend on the objectives of the study. A mesh size of 0.35 mm, for example, will retain most instars of aquatic insects. While a smaller mesh size might increase the number of smaller invertebrates and young instars collected, it will clog more easily and exert

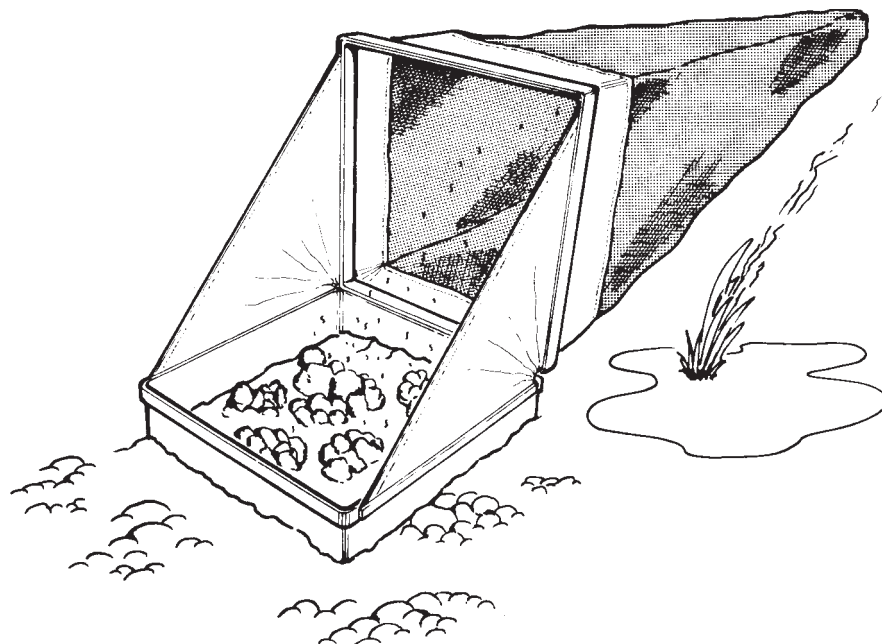
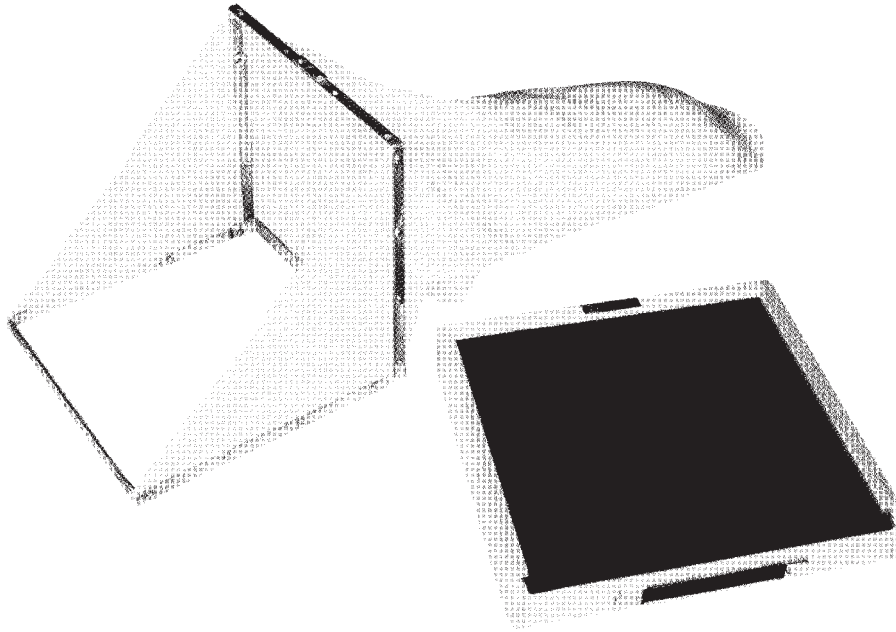


FIG. A1.9 Surber Sampler (Illustration courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp., P.O. Box 1166, El Cajon, CA 92022-1166)



**FIG. A1.10 Surber Sampler** (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., 301 Cass St., Saginaw, MI 48602)

more resistance to the current than a larger mesh, possibly resulting in a loss of organisms due to backwashing from the sample net.

A1.5.10.5 It should be noted that these samplers are specific for macroinvertebrates, and that many of the micro-components of the benthos will not be collected.

A1.5.10.6 The Surber, portable invertebrate box, Hess, Hess stream bottom, and stream-bed fauna samplers sample an area of  $0.1 \text{ m}^2$ .

A1.5.10.7 The polyester foam base of the portable invertebrate box sampler conforms to a variety of substrates to limit the loss of organisms from beneath the sampler. The Hess, Hess stream bottom, and stream-bed fauna samplers can be “turned” into most sediment types to a depth of several centimetres. The Surber sampler rests on the surface of most sediments.

A1.5.10.8 When sampling is completed, the net of the portable invertebrate box sampler slides out for cleaning or exchange with a different net. Hess-type samplers may have a mason jar ring and an adapter with a fixed or removable cloth net bucket.

A1.5.10.9 These samplers are designed for use in shallow, flowing waters. These samplers cannot be used as efficiently in still or deep water. These samplers are best used in water of 30.48-cm (1-ft) depth or less. If the water depth is greater than 30.48 cm (1 ft), benthic organisms may wash over the top of the net rather than into it. These samplers do not provide quantitative samples consistently, and the efficiency of the sampling device depends on the experience and ability of the user. While there can be large sampling errors associated with their use by an inexperienced operator, these samplers can provide data which are accurate and comparable if they are used consistently by one experienced person in similar habitats. If the water velocity is very great, resistance provided by the small mesh of the net or debris washed into it, or both, may result in a backwashing effect that washes benthic organisms out of the sample area of the Surber sampler or top of the other samplers.

A1.5.10.10 Hazards:

(1) Heavy gloves may be required when handling dangerous debris, for example, glass or other sharp objects present in the sediment.

A1.5.10.11 Procedure:

(1) Position these samplers securely on the substrate, parallel to the flow of the water, with the net pointing downstream.

(2) Bring the samplers down quickly to reduce the escape of rapidly moving organisms.

(3) There should be no gaps under the edges of the frame that would allow for washing of water under the net and loss of benthic organisms.

(4) Eliminate gaps that may occur along the edge of the Surber sampler frame by carefully shifting rocks and gravel along the outside edge of the sampler. This is also true of the cylindrical-type samplers if they are on rubble substrate that makes turning into the bottom difficult. The portable invertebrate box sampler polyester foam pad can conform to a relief of 7.6 cm (3 in.).

(5) Take care not to disturb the substrate upstream from the sampler, to avoid excessive drift into the sampler from outside the sample area.

(6) Once the sampler is positioned on the stream bottom, it should be maintained in position during sampling so that the area delineated remains constant.

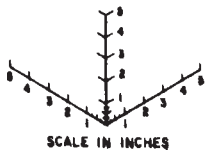
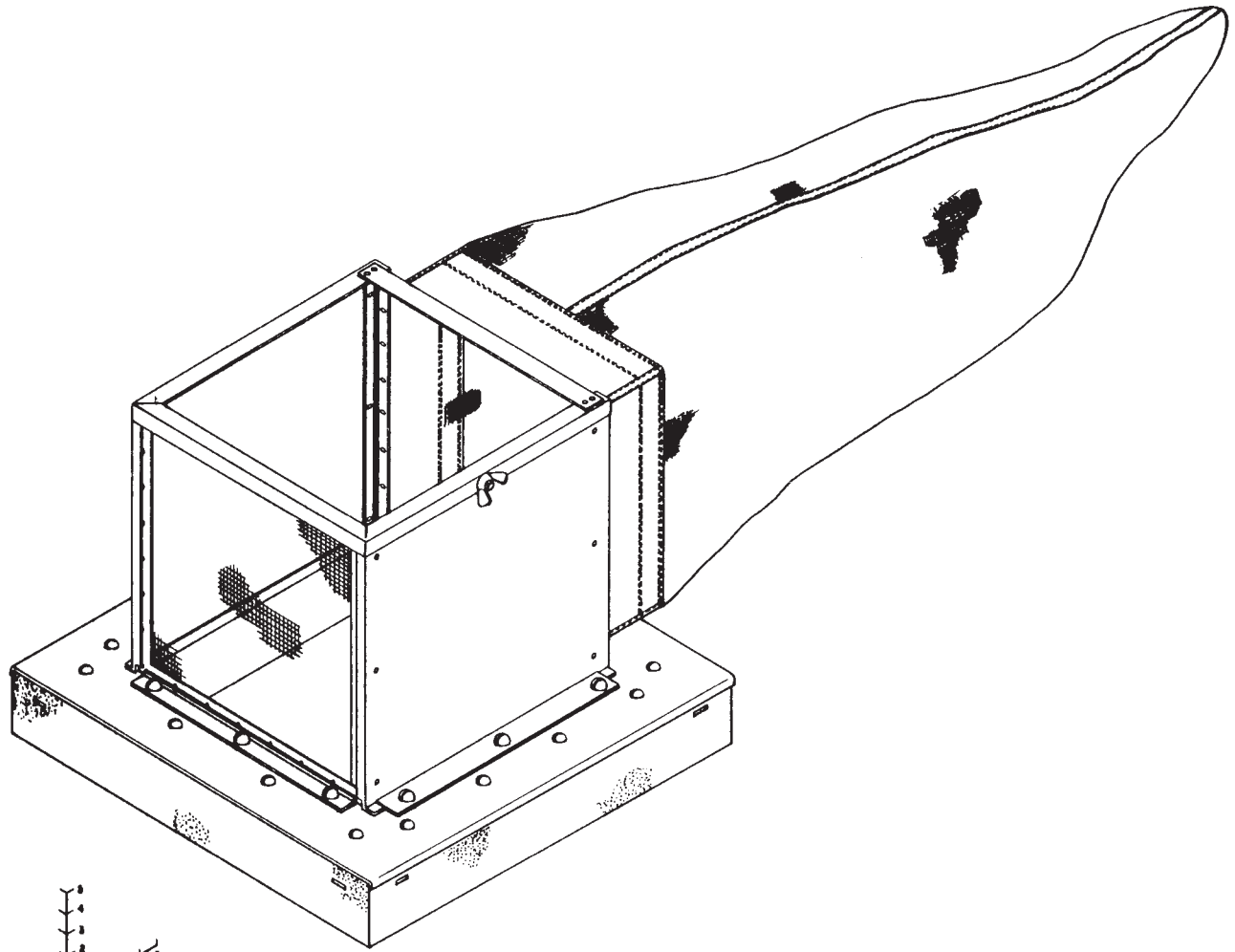


FIG. A1.11 Portable Invertebrate Box Sampler (Illustration courtesy of Ellis-Rutter Associates, P.O. Box 401, Punta Gorda, FL 33950)

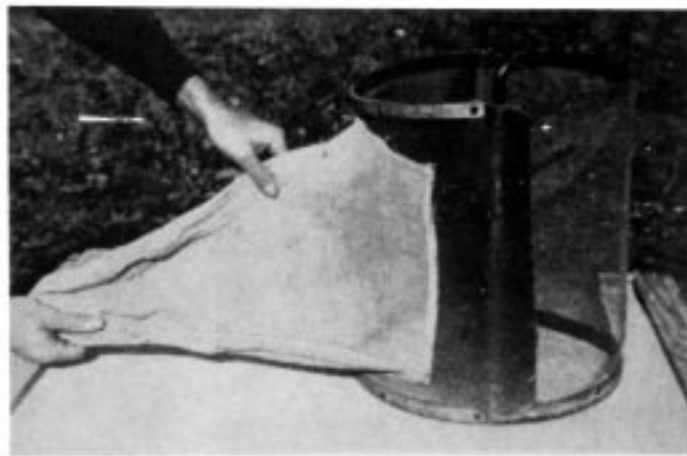


FIG. A1.12 Hess Sampler (Photograph courtesy of Billy G. Isom)

(7) Hold the Surber sampler with one hand or brace with the knees from behind. The Hess, Hess stream bottom, and stream-bed fauna samplers, and the portable invertebrate box samplers can be held with one hand or braced with the knees from the sides. The portable invertebrate box sampler also can be sat upon for convenience while sampling; this provides the collector with a stable sampling platform that allows maximum manipulation of the substrate with little sampler movement.



FIG. A1.13 Hess Stream Bottom Sampler (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., 301 Cass St., Saginaw, MI 48602)

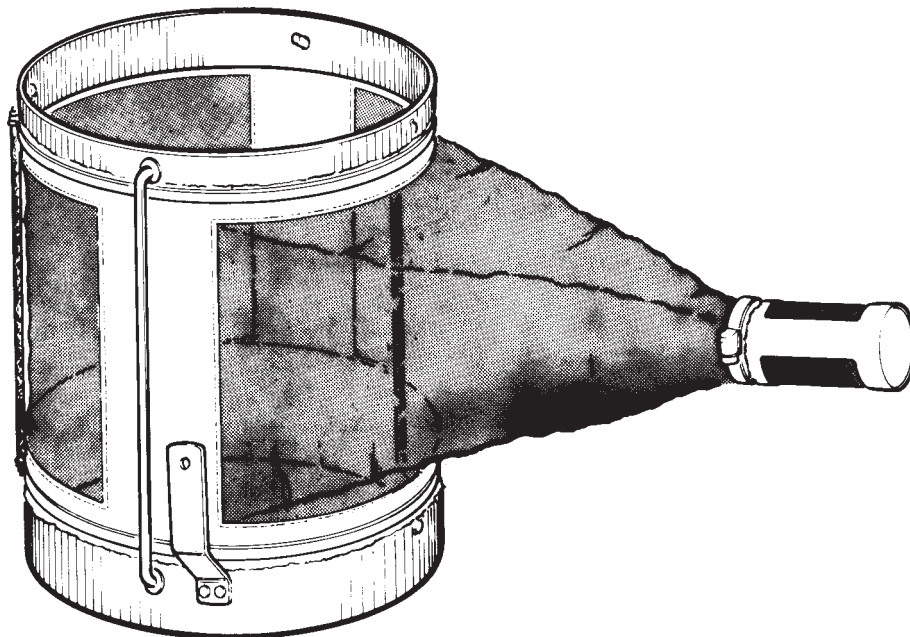


FIG. A1.14 Stream-Bed Fauna Sampler (Photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp., P.O. Box 1166, El Cajon, CA 92022-1166)

(8) Turn over carefully all rocks and large stones and rub carefully in front of the net with the hands or a brush to dislodge the organisms clinging to them.

(9) Examine each stone carefully for attached or clinging organisms, larval or pupal cases, etc. before discarding.

(10) Scrape attached algae, insect cases, etc. from the stones into the sample net.

(11) Wash larger components of the substrate within the enclosure; water flowing through the sampler should carry dislodged organisms into the net.

(12) Stir the remaining gravel and sand vigorously with the hands to a depth of 10 cm (4.0 in.) where applicable, depending upon the substrate, to dislodge bottom-dwelling organisms.

(13) It may be necessary to hand pick some of the heavier mussels and snails that are not carried into the net by the current.

(14) If water level is too slow or low to allow continuous flow through the sampler, substrate can be hand-splashed into the net, although sampler efficiency will be reduced.

(15) Remove the sample by inverting the net (or washing out sample bucket, if applicable) into the sample container (wide mouthed jar).

(16) Examine the net carefully for small organisms clinging to the mesh, and remove them (preferably with forceps to avoid damage) for inclusion in the sample.

(17) Rinse the sampler net after each use (see 10.4).

A1.5.11 Drift Net Samplers:

A1.5.11.1 Drift net samplers (Figs. A1.15 and A1.16) are designed to obtain qualitative and quantitative samples of macroinvertebrates which drift in flowing streams and rivers with a velocity of not less than 0.05 m/s. Drift nets vary in size, but the type commonly used has an upstream opening of 15 by 30 cm, and the collection bag is 1.3 m long. A variety of mesh sizes is available, and mesh size should be selected based on the objectives of the study; the finer the mesh, the more organisms (instars) will be collected.

A1.5.11.2 Macroinvertebrate drift is a normal feature of flowing waters. Two functions are ascribed to drift: (1) distributes aquatic larvae over the whole stream and (2) provides a food supply for fish and invertebrates. Stress, fluctuations in water level, changes in light intensity, and changes in temperature are the basic factors that influence the extent of macroinvertebrate drift. Denuded and under populated areas of small streams and shallow rivers can be repopulated by numerous drifting organisms. These organisms may move an indefinite distance downstream where they again attach to the bottom substrate. A second source of drifting macroinvertebrates is the immature insects in the final stages of metamorphosis that actively seek to reach the water surface where emergence to the adult stage occurs. Regular periodic downstream drift rate of immature insects and other macroinvertebrate fauna in slow-moving streams or rivers is markedly reduced in comparison to lotic habitats with rapidly flowing water.

A1.5.11.3 Drift nets are useful for collecting macroinvertebrates that actively or passively enter the water column or that are dislodged from the substrate; naturally or by stress. They are particularly well-suited for synoptic surveys because they are light weight and easily transported. Thousands of organisms, including larvae of stoneflies, mayflies, caddisflies, and midges and other Diptera, may be collected in a sampling period of only a few hours. The drift net efficiently collects organisms originating from all types of substrates and a wide spectrum of microhabitats in lotic (flowing) waters. The device is restricted to flowing rivers or streams with a current velocity of more than 0.05 m/s.

A1.5.11.4 The typical drift net consists of a bag of nylon or nylon monofilament; a variety of mesh sizes can be used depending on the objectives of the study. The U.S. Standard No. 30 (0.595-mm mesh openings) net is often used for collecting macroinvertebrates. The frame typically consists of a 0.045-m<sup>2</sup>(15 by 30-cm) rod structure anchored into the stream bed by a pair of steel rods. Cable clamps are used to secure the nets to the rods.

A1.5.11.5 The average volume of water passing through the net is determined by measuring the water velocity at the mouth of the drift net with a current meter several times, and recording the total time the drift net is set in the water column. Several readings are taken, and the mean is used.

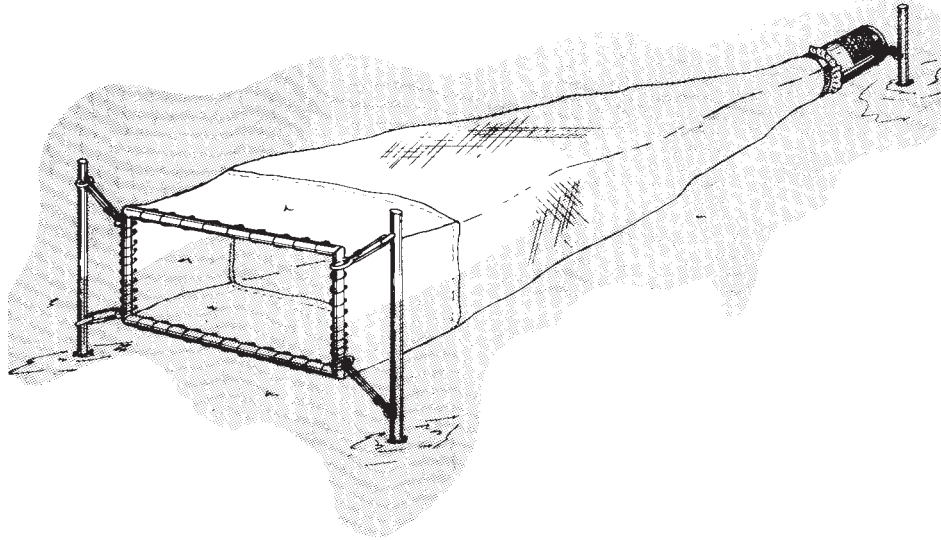
A1.5.11.6 The efficiency of the net is determined by the simultaneous measurement of the water velocity passing by the set drift net.

A1.5.11.7 The drift net frame can be fitted anteriorly with a mouth reducing rectangular plexiglass enclosure (Rutter and Ettinger, 1977 (433)) to increase filtration efficiency. The type of drift net and mesh size utilized will depend on the objectives of the study and the physical characteristics of the flowing water.

A1.5.11.8 Alternatives to the typical drift net include the waterwheel drift sampler (Pearson and Kramer, 1969 (434)) which might be useful in large rivers or streams which can be reached by automobile. An automatic drift sampler (Muller, 1965 (435)) can be constructed that eliminates the need for an attendant at the sampling site during collection of as many as eight consecutive samples. A modified emergence-trap drift sampler (Mundie, 1964 (436); Cushing, 1964 (437)) is useful in streams with extremely



**FIG. A1.15 Drift Net**(Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., 301 Cass St., Saginaw, MI 48602)



**FIG. A1.16 Drift Net**(Photograph courtesy of Kahl Instrument Corp., P.O. Box 1166, El Cajon, CA 92022-1166)

high drift, where water is very turbid, or where a long sampling period is desired without clogging. The drift collection usually represents a wide spectrum of the habitats found in a stream.

A1.5.11.9 A benthic sample shows only what taxa were existing in the particular area (usually some fraction of a square meter, etc.) that was sampled. The great variation among benthic samples, even in a limited area, illustrates the necessity of several samples and the influence of selecting the collecting sites. One drift sample might be adequate for collecting the majority of invertebrate taxa in a stream reach, whereas a large number of benthic samples would be needed to cover the variety of bottom habitats even in a uniform reach of the stream. Quantitative benthic sampling is seldom extended to include stream banks, organic substrates (logs, etc.), and areas of dense vegetation. The drift net collects organisms from all these areas. Drift net collections often require much less sorting work than a series of benthic samples.

A1.5.11.10 Nets are light-weight and easy to set up in a stream and usually yield a light-weight sample. Benthic sampling in flowing water often procures samples heavy with inorganic materials. Drift samples of organic materials do not require the laborious, time-consuming job of washing out silts and clays and sorting and picking through much of the debris for the organisms in the samples.

A1.5.11.11 A drift net is inexpensive to construct, whereas bottom samplers are often costly and more than one kind may be required to adequately sample the multiple habitat types present in a stream or river.

A1.5.11.12 Drift collections can be used to determine drift density, rate, and periodicity of drift organisms, and interesting aspects of the organisms' life histories, for example, period of transformation.

A1.5.11.13 Drift collections often include terrestrial organisms that have fallen into the stream and which contribute to the food supplies of fish.

A1.5.11.14 Certain aquatic organisms enter the drift only sporadically and might be missed even though common in the benthos. The relative abundance of macroinvertebrates in a drift sample often differs significantly from their relative abundance on the stream bottom. A slight current is necessary if a drift collection is to be taken (greater than 0.05 m/s).

A1.5.11.15 Most species and number of organisms drift more abundantly at night, so that the best collections are usually taken in the dark.

A1.5.11.16 There is a waiting period while the drifting organisms accumulate in the net.

A1.5.11.17 Tree leaves in the autumn, floating and anchor ice in the winter, and heavy debris (logs) during floods may interfere with drift net collecting and make processing difficult.

A1.5.11.18 The abundance and composition of drift changes daily, hourly, or seasonally and might prevent direct comparison of collections taken at different times. At times certain life stages of an organism might not be fairly represented in the drift.

A1.5.11.19 Drift collections give little precise habitat information for individual organisms, since the exact source of the individual is not known.

A1.5.11.20 Collections of drift, with the organisms originating an indefinite distance above the collecting site, may not show local or temporary deleterious effects imposed on an aquatic community, whereas bottom samples might reveal the destruction or reduction of benthos in a small area.

A1.5.11.21 Hazards:

(1) No specific hazards have been identified for use of drift nets.

A1.5.11.22 Procedure:

(1) Because the performance and sampling efficiency of a drift net sampler varies with local stream conditions, seasonal changes, and water level, make a preliminary test before the start of regular drift sampling in order to determine the best sampling

stations, best sampling interval, number of nets needed, mesh size, and best sampling depth.

(2) For synoptic surveys, one net set above each of the major areas of population concentrations is usually adequate; but for definitive studies, locate stations so that drift can be evaluated from above a location of concern, from the location of concern, and below the area of concern.

(3) Take into consideration the fact that the drift net will collect drifting organisms that may have entered the drift from an indefinite distance upstream.

(4) Nets located 80 to 100 m below the location of concern will generally sample this location efficiently. A drift net below a riffle collects more animals than one below a pool.

(5) Drift insects are about evenly distributed at all levels in a stream, but in large rivers drift is more abundant near the bottom in the shoreline zone.

(6) It is generally found that there are pulses of drift organisms that move from top to bottom of the water column, at least during periods of low flow.

(7) For definitive studies, install two nets at each station—one about 25 cm from the bottom and one about 10 cm below the surface in water not exceeding 3 m in depth.

(8) If the objective of the study is to relate pupal exuviae to contamination, or to collect terrestrial organisms that may float on the surface, then extend slightly one net above the surface.

(9) Ideally, collect 24-h drift samples; but this is usually not practicable unless one resorts to the use of a water-wheel, automatic drift sampler, or a modified drift sampler with a restricted opening to solve the clogging problem.

(10) Although the sampling interval will vary with time of day, current velocity, density of drift organisms, and floating debris, collect 3-h daytime drift samples when either a 24-h or overnight sampling period is not prudent.

(11) Try to avoid using drift nets for large rivers with currents less than 0.05 m/s.

(12) Drift nets are anchored in the stream by driving ½-in. steel rods into the stream bottom or mounting the rods in concrete slabs that are weighted down with stones.

(13) Drift nets have also been used from small boats in large rivers (Rutter and Ettinger, 1977 (433)).

(14) Use cable clamps to secure the nets to the rods.

(15) Because the size of the catch varies as the flow of water through the net varies, it is necessary to measure the current velocity at the entrance of each net at the beginning and end of each sampling period so that the catch can be converted into number of organisms per volume of water flowing through the net.

(16) At the end of the specified sampling period, remove the net from the water by loosening the cable clamps and raising the net over the top of the steel rods, taking care not to disturb the bottom upstream of the net.

(17) Concentrate the material in the net in one corner by swishing up and down in the water and then wash into a bucket half-filled with water.

(18) Then sieve and handle the sample in the regular manner.

(19) Subdividing the sample substantially reduces analysis time with large samples (Waters, 1969b (440) and Weber (306)).

(20) Reporting data as numbers of individuals per net is meaningless because no two drift net samples are collected under exactly the same conditions of current velocity, stream discharge, and sampling interval.

(21) Conversion equations and other statistical aspects of drift sampling are given by Elliott, 1981 (299).

(22) An equation for converting the data to number per 100 m<sup>3</sup> of water flow is:

$$X = \frac{100a}{bdc} \tag{A1.1}$$

where:

$X$  = number of organisms per 100 m<sup>3</sup>,

$a$  = number of organisms in the net (density),

$b$  = number of minutes of the sampling interval,

$c$  = current velocity, m/min, and

$d$  = area of the net opening (m<sup>2</sup>).

(23) The first step in interpreting drift data is to determine the respective contributions of constant, behavioral, and catastrophic drift to the samples being analyzed.

(24) Only constant and behavioral drift are usually utilized in a synoptic survey, but catastrophic drift is extremely important in testing for recent discharges of toxic materials.

(25) Bear in mind that the drift density may not be a function of the total bottom population density or of production; however, species composition of the drift is useful as an index of species composition of the benthos.

(26) Density and composition of invertebrate drift are influenced by many factors that also should be considered when interpreting the data, including stage of life cycle, weather, time of day, light intensity, population density, temperature, turbidity, water level fluctuation, season, current velocity, growth rate, photoperiod, and proximity to tributary streams.

(27) In an enriched stream there is usually a marked increase in total numbers and biomass of drifting organisms as the stream becomes more polluted. Intolerant forms decrease and pollution tolerant forms increase proportional to changing water quality.

#### A1.5.12 Basket Samplers:

A1.5.12.1 Basket samplers are a highly effective device for evaluating the biological integrity of surface waters and for studying macroinvertebrate communities (441-466). The materials used in the basket sampler are natural or artificial materials of various compositions and configurations. The device is placed in water for a predetermined exposure period and depth for the colonization of macroinvertebrate communities. Basket samplers are used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from lentic and lotic waters containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on various types of substrates. Physical factors such as stream velocity and depth may variably affect the degree of colonization. The sampling method is selective for drifting organisms (biased for insects) and for those that preferentially attach to or live on hard surfaces. Basket samplers are excellent for water quality monitoring; contain uniform substrate types at each station for better comparison; provide quantitatively comparable data; contain negligible amounts of debris, permitting quick laboratory processing; and usually do not require additional weight for stability. Basket samplers sample a known area at a known depth for a known exposure period. Basket samples provide no measure of the biota and condition of the natural substrate at a station. They record only biota accumulated during the exposure period.

A1.5.12.2 Basket samplers are usually colonized by a wide variety of macroinvertebrates that actively and passively enter the current or the water column. The use of basket samplers facilitates the consistent collection of samples. Consistent sampling is especially desirable when the results from different investigators and environments are to be compared.

A1.5.12.3 The basket sampler can be used alone or can effectively augment bottom substrate sampling, because many of the physical variables encountered in bottom sampling are minimized (for example, variable depth and light penetration, temperature differences, and substrate types).

A1.5.12.4 The type of basket sampler normally used (Fig. A1.17) is a cylindrical “barbecue” basket 11 in. (28 cm) long and 7 in. (17.8 cm) in diameter that is filled with approximately 17 lb (7.7 kg) of natural rocks varying from 1 to 3 in. (2.5 to 7.6 cm) in diameter (Mason 1967, 1971 (456,457) . A hinged door on the side provides access to the contents. An estimated 3.2 ft<sup>2</sup> (0.3

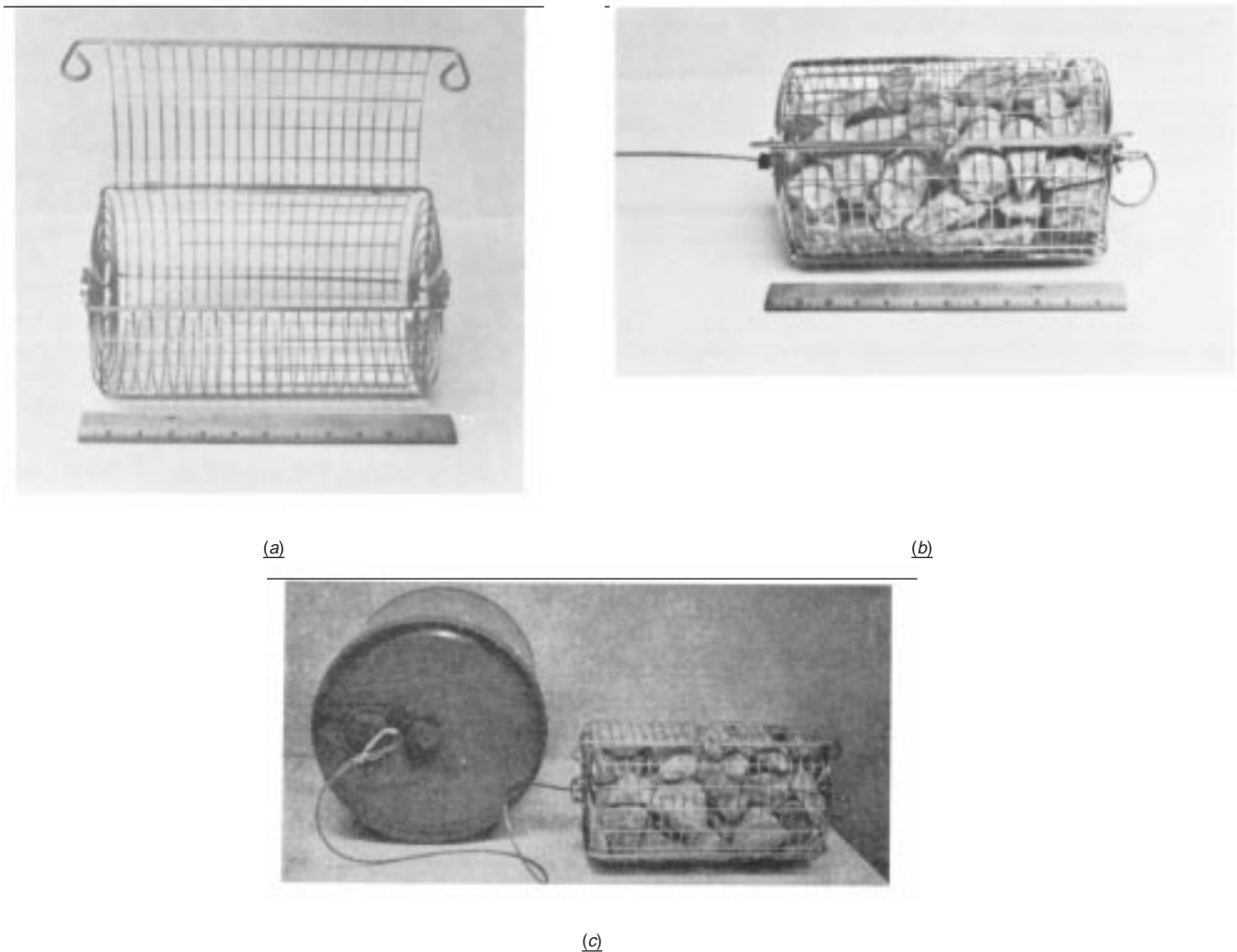


FIG. A1.17 Cylindrical “Barbecue” Basket Sampler: (A) Basket Sampler Empty; (B) Basket Sampler Containing Limestone Rocks and Ready for Installation; and (C) Basket Sampler Containing Limestone Rocks and Attached to 5-gal (19-L) Metal Container Filled with Polyurethane Foam. (Barbecue Baskets Available from Tenaco, 2007 NE, 27th Ave., Gainesville, FL 32609 or W.C. Bradley Enterprises, Inc., P.O. Box 1240, Columbus, GA 32993.)



m<sup>2</sup>) of surface area is provided for colonization by macroinvertebrates. A 1/8-in. (3.2-mm) wire cable is passed through the long axis of the basket; one end is fastened with a cable clamp, and the other end is fixed to the float. A 5-gal (19-L) metal container filled with polyurethane foam can be used as a float. A 3/8-in. (9.5-mm) steel rod threaded at each end is passed through the long axis of the float and fastened at each end by nuts. Three inch by 1 1/8-in. by 1/8-in. (76.2 by 25.6 by 3.2-mm) strap iron serves as a swivel at each end, secured on the rods by nuts. The wire cable used to suspend the basket is attached to the swivels by holes drilled for that purpose. The float can be attached to a stationary structure, or the basket can be anchored to the bottom in shallow water.

A1.5.12.5 The rugged construction of the sampler is heavy enough to resist movement by water currents. Samples usually contain negligible amounts of extraneous material, permitting rapid laboratory processing.

A1.5.12.6 A collapsible type of basket sampler has been used for comparing populations surrounding rocky substrates (Bull, 1968 (447)). The sampler consists of a collapsible basket surrounded by a nylon netting bag that can be loaded with materials simulating the natural substrate on which it lies. A rim around the top helps retain the substrate material. When lowered to the bottom, the basket sampler collapses to form a substrate area that is eventually colonized. When the basket is raised off the bottom, the basket extends to its original hemispherical shape, and the surrounding net bag limits the loss of invertebrates during retrieval.

A1.5.12.7 Hazards:

- (1) Samplers and floats may be difficult to anchor; they may be a navigation hazard.
- (2) Samplers are susceptible to vandalism and often lost.
- (3) Caution should be exercised in the reuse of samplers that may be subjected to contamination by chemicals.

A1.5.12.8 Procedure:

(1) In deep water, three basket samplers are suspended from floats, cement structures, or rods driven into the stream-bed or lake-bed and positioned well up in the euphotic zone of good light penetration (1 to 3 ft (0.3-0.9 m)) for maximum abundance and diversity of the macroinvertebrates. A 4-ft (1.2-m) depth is acceptable unless the water is exceptionally turbid.

(2) The optimum period for substrate colonization is six weeks for most types of water. At least 3 replicate samples at each station should be evaluated.

(3) For uniformity of depth, suspend the basket samplers from floats on 1/8-in. (3.2-mm) steel cable. If vandalism is a problem, use subsurface floats or put the samplers on supports placed on the bottom. Regardless of the installation technique, use uniform procedures (for example, the same depth and exposure period, sunlight, current velocity, and habitat type).

(4) At shallow water stations (less than 4 ft (1.2 m) deep), install the samplers so that the exposure occurs midway in the water column at low flow. The samplers may be installed in pools, runs, or riffles suspended below the water surface. The collections should be as representative of the reach as possible by ensuring that the samplers are not close to the bank.

(5) In streams up to a few meters in width, install the device at approximately midstream. In larger streams, install the device at approximately one quarter of the total width from the nearest bank.

(6) If the samplers are installed in July when the water depth is approximately 4 ft (1.2 m) and the August average low flow is 2 ft (0.6 m), the correct installation depth in July is 1 ft (0.3 m) above the bottom. The sampler will receive sunlight at optimum depth (1 ft (0.3 m)) and will not be exposed to air anytime during the sampling period. Care should be exercised not to allow the sampler to touch bottom, which may permit siltation, thereby increasing the sampling error.

(7) In shallow streams with sheet rock bottoms, basket samplers can be secured to 3/8-in. (0.95-cm) steel rods that are driven into the substrate or secured to rods that are mounted on low, flat, rectangular blocks half way between the water surface and the stream bed. However, these should be anchored securely to the rock bottom to avoid loss during floods.

(8) Factors such as the time of the year and the body of water sampled should be considered in the determination of exposure time. The exposure time should be consistent among sites during the study. If study time limitations reduce this period, the data should be evaluated with caution, and in no case should data be compared from samplers exposed for different time periods.

(9) Samplers should be protected from loss of invertebrates during retrieval. Most insects rapidly leave the sampler when disturbed; thus a retrieval method to limit their escape should be used.

(10) In shallow water, approach the basket samplers from downstream, lift the sampler quickly, and place the entire sampler in a polyethylene bag or jug containing the selected fixative. The fixative should be used only if the specimens collected require special processing for identification.

(11) Once the sampler is touched, it should be removed from the water immediately or many of the animals will leave the sampler. If the sampler has to be disturbed during the recovery process so that it cannot be lifted straight up out of the water, a net should be used to enclose the sampler before it is disturbed.

(12) To accomplish this, the rock-filled basket sampler should be enclosed either in a sieving bucket with U.S. Standard No. 30 sieve screen or by a dip net constructed of U.S. Standard No. 30 sieve or finer mesh bolting cloth that can be pulled around the sampling device before retrieval. Also, samplers exposed in deep water may be enclosed in a retrieval net and brought to the surface by divers. If the sampler can be pulled quickly from the water without undue disturbance, as described in 7.10, it may not be necessary to enclose it.

(13) The organisms can be removed in the field by disassembling the sampler in a tub or bucket partially filled with water and scrubbing the rocks with a soft-bristle brush to remove clinging organisms. The contents of the bucket are then poured through a No. 30 or 60 sieve and washed into a jar and preserved. If the organisms are not removed in the field, the basket samplers can

be taken to the laboratory and disassembled if placed in a water-tight container containing a fixative or preservative. The samples should be labeled with at least the location, habitat, date, and time of collection.

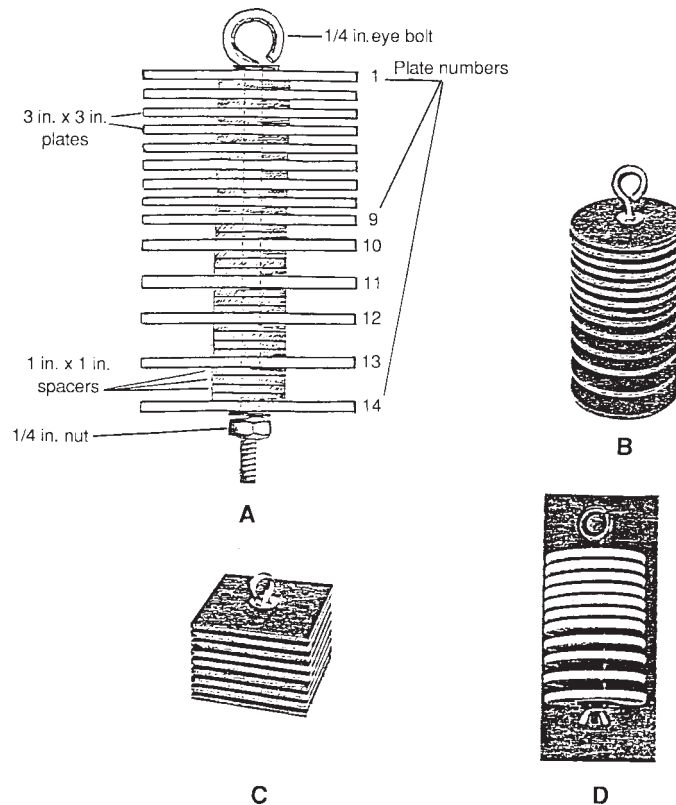
(14) Cleaned basket samplers can be reused unless there is reason to believe that contamination has occurred. These substances may be toxic to the macroinvertebrates or may inhibit colonization. Do not reuse a basket sampler substrate that has been exposed to preservatives.

**A1.5.13 Multiplate Samplers:**

**A1.5.13.1** Multiple-plate samplers consist of artificial substrate surfaces (tempered hardboard or ceramic plates) for colonization by aquatic organisms. Their uniform shape and texture compared to natural substrates simplifies the problem of sampling relative to basket samplers. Multiple-plate samplers are usually colonized by a wide variety of macroinvertebrates that actively and passively enter the current or the water column. The multiple-plate sampler can be used either alone or can effectively augment bottom substrate sampling because many of the physical variables encountered in bottom sampling are minimized (for example, variable depth and light penetration, temperature differences, and substrate types).

**A1.5.13.2** The sampler can be purchased or constructed from readily available materials. Multiple-plate samples have been constructed of 8 or more tempered hardboard or ceramic material cut in 76 mm (3 in.) square or circular plates and separated by a specific arrangement of spacers. The plates and spacers are placed on a 1/4-in. eyebolt. Total surface area of the 8-plate sampler is approximately 939 cm<sup>2</sup> (0.09 m<sup>2</sup>), and the 14 plate sampler is 1160 cm<sup>2</sup> (0.116 m<sup>2</sup>). The 14 plate, tempered hardboard, multiple-plate sampler weighs about 1 lb (0.45 kg).

**A1.5.13.3 Description of the Modified Hester-Dendy Multiple-Plate Sampler**—The modified multiple-plate (Fig. A1.18) is constructed of 0.25 in. (0.3 cm) tempered hardboard or ceramic material with 3 in. (7.6 cm) round or square plates and 1 in. (2.5 cm) round spacers that have 5/8-in. holes drilled in the center (Fuller, 1971 (472) and Cairns, 1982 (479)). The plates are separated by spacers on a 0.25-in. (0.63 cm) diameter eyebolt, held in place by a nut at the top and bottom. A total of 14 large plates and 24 spacers are used in each sampler. The top nine plates are each separated by a single spacer, plates 9 and 10 are separated by two spacers, plates 11 and 12 are separated by three spacers, and plates 13 and 14 are separated by four spacers. The hardboard sampler is about 5.5-in. (14 cm) long, 3-in. (7.6 cm) diameter, exposes about 1160 cm<sup>2</sup> (0.116 m<sup>2</sup>) of surface area for the attachment of organisms, and weighs about 1 lb (0.45 kg). The ceramic sampler is 6.5-in. long and weighs 2.2 lb (1 kg). The ceramic plates can be chemically cleaned, oven dried and reused indefinitely as they are stable and unaffected by long-term immersion in water. The sampler will not warp with time; therefore, the spacings between plates do not change, assuring replicate and efficient sampling. Each sampler is supplied with a 20-ft (6 m) long nylon suspension rope. The total weight is 2.2 lb (1 kg). Sturdy wire



**FIG. A1.18** Artificial multiple-plate samplers: (a) schematic drawing of multiple-plate sampler; (b) modified round; (c) original square, tempered hardboard, Hester-Dendy samplers; and (d) round ceramic multiple-plate macroinvertebrate sampler

stakes for holding the sampler above the riverbed are recommended accessories.

A1.5.13.4 Another type of modified Hester-Dendy multiple-plate artificial substrate sampler (Ohio EPA, 1987 (483) ) is constructed of 1/8-in. tempered hardboard cut into 3-in. (7.6 cm) square plates and 1-in. (2.5 cm) square spacers. A total of eight plates and twelve spacers are used for each sampler. The plates and spacers are placed on a 1/4-in. eyebolt so that there are three single spaces, three double spaces, and one triple space between the plates. The total surface area of the sampler, excluding the

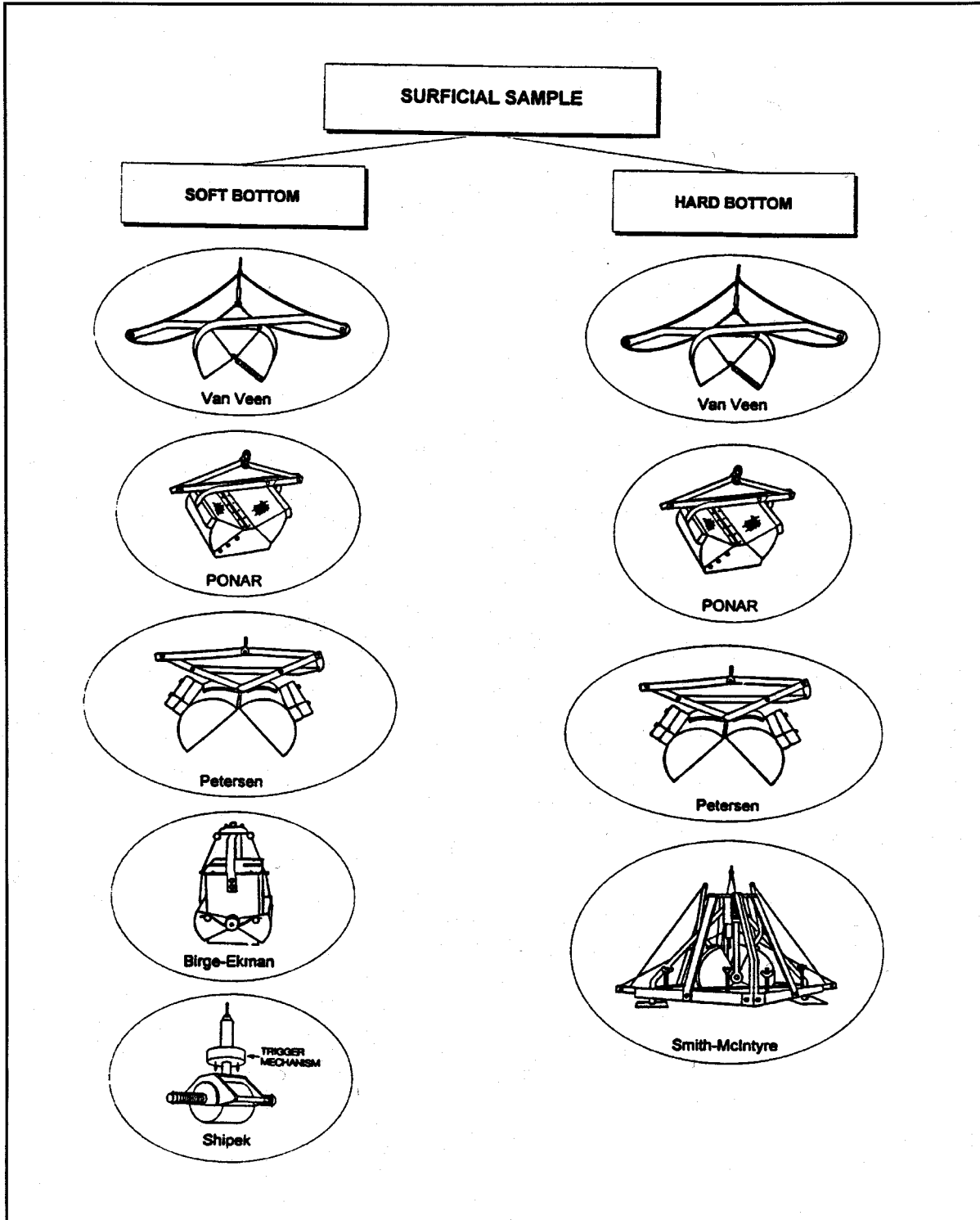


FIG. A1.19 Some Recommended Devices for Collecting Surficial Sediments (drawings from Murdoch and Azcue 1995 (46) ; USEPA 2001 (1))

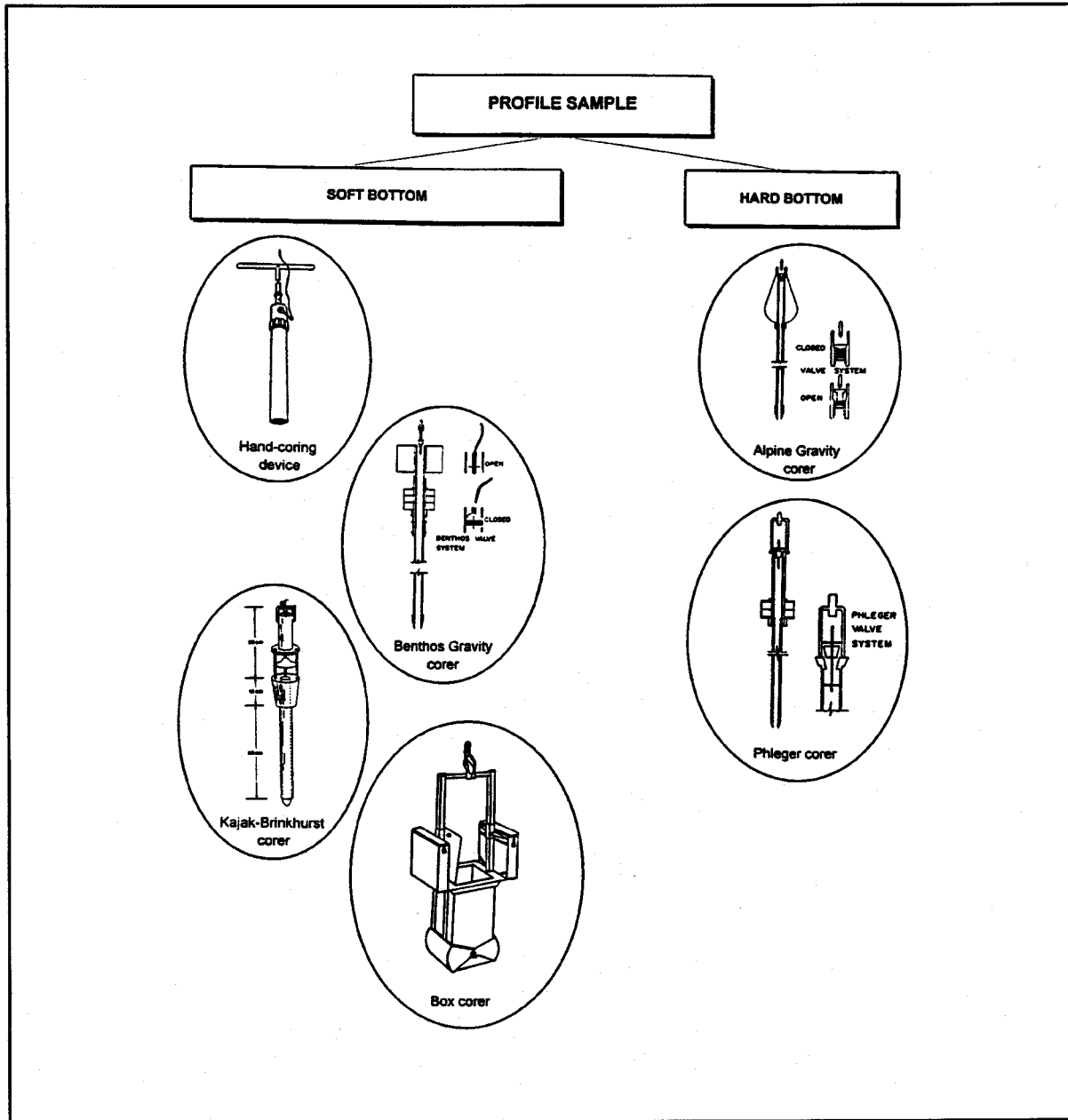


FIG. A1.20 Some Recommended Devices for Obtaining Sediment Profiles (drawings from Murdoch and Azcue 1995(46); USEPA 2001 (1))

eyebolt, is 145.6 in.<sup>2</sup>(939 cm<sup>2</sup> or 0.09 m<sup>2</sup>). Five samplers are placed in streams tied to a concrete construction block which anchors them in place and prevents the multiple-plates from coming into contact with the natural substrates.

A1.5.13.5 The recommended exposure period for multiple-plate sampler is six weeks, and the time of exposure may be critical to development of a relatively abundant and diverse community of organisms. Three replicate samples at each station are an absolute minimum. Collecting five replicate samples at each station will increase statistical precision and accuracy. Multiple-plate samplers are a highly effective device for evaluating the biological integrity of surface waters and for studying macroinvertebrate communities (467-487). Multiple-plate samplers are used to collect qualitative and quantitative samples from lentic and lotic waters containing benthic macroinvertebrates living on various types of substrates. Physical factors such as stream velocity and depth may variably affect degree of colonization. The sampling method is selective for drifting organisms (biased for insects) and for those which preferentially attach to or live on hard surfaces.

A1.5.13.6 Multiple-plate samplers are excellent for water quality monitoring, contain uniform substrate type at each station for better comparison, give quantitatively comparable data, contain negligible amounts of debris permitting quick laboratory processing, but may require additional weight for stability. Multiple-plate samplers sample a known area at a known depth for a

known exposure period. Multiple-plate samples provide no measure of the biota and condition of the natural substrate at a station. They record only biota accumulated during exposure period. The distinct advantages of the multiple-plate sampler are its small size and light weight. It is the most adaptable of the recommended benthic invertebrate artificial substrate devices.

A1.5.13.7 Hazards:

- (1) Samplers and floats may be difficult to anchor; they may be a navigation hazard.
- (2) Samplers are susceptible to vandalism and often lost.
- (3) Caution should be exercised in the reuse of samplers that may be subjected to contamination by chemicals.

A1.5.13.8 Procedure:

(1) In deep water three multiple-plate samplers are suspended from floats, cement structures, or rods driven into the stream-bed or lake-bed and positioned well up in the euphotic zone of good light penetration (1 to 3 ft, or 0.3 to 0.9 m) for maximum abundance and diversity of macroinvertebrates. A 4-ft (1.2 m) depth is acceptable unless the water is exceptionally turbid.

(2) The optimum period for substrate colonization is six weeks for most types of water. Three replicate samples at each station are an absolute minimum.

(3) For uniformity of depth, suspend the multiple-plate samplers from floats on 1/8-in. (3.2 mm) steel cable. If vandalism is a problem, use subsurface floats or put the sampler on supports placed on the bottom. Regardless of the installation technique, use uniform procedures (for example, the same depth and exposure period, sunlight, current velocity, and habitat type).

(4) At shallow water stations (less than 4-ft (1.2 m) deep), install samplers so that the exposure occurs midway in the water column at low flow. The samplers may be installed in pools or runs suspended below the water surface. The collections should be as representative of the reach as possible by ensuring that the samplers are not close to the bank.

(5) In streams up to a few metres in width, install the device at approximately midstream. In larger streams, install the device at approximately one-quarter of the total width from the nearest bank. Multiple-plate samplers may require additional weight for stability.

(6) If the samplers are installed in July when the water depth is approximately 4 ft (1.2 m), and the August average low flow is 2 ft (0.6 m), the correct installation depth in July is 1 ft (0.3 m) above the bottom. The sampler will receive sunlight at optimum depth 1 ft (0.3 m) and will not be exposed to air anytime during the sampling period. Care should be exercised not to allow the sampler to touch bottom which may permit siltation, thereby increasing the sampling error.

(7) In shallow streams with sheet rock bottoms, multiple-plate samplers can be secured to 3/8-in. (0.95 cm) steel rods that are driven into the substrate or secured to rods that are mounted on low, flat, rectangular blocks half-way between the water surface and the stream bed. However, these should be anchored securely to the rock bottom to avoid loss during floods.

(8) Factors such as the time of year and the body of water sampled should be considered in the determination of exposure time. The exposure time should be consistent among sites during the study. If study time limitation reduce this period, the data should be evaluated with caution, and in no case should data be compared from samplers exposed for different time periods.

(9) Samplers should be protected from loss of invertebrates during retrieval. Most insects rapidly leave the sampler when disturbed; thus a retrieval method to limit their escape should be used.

(10) In shallow water, approach the multiple-plate samplers from downstream, lift the sampler quickly, and place the entire sampler in a polyethylene bag or jug containing fixative. The fixative should be used only if the specimens collected require special processing for identification. Once the sampler is touched, it should be removed from the water immediately or many of the animals will leave the sampler. If the sampler should be disturbed during the recovery process so that it cannot be lifted straight up out of the water, a net should be used to enclose the sampler before it is disturbed.

(11) To accomplish this, the multiple-plate sampler should be enclosed either in a sieving bucket with U.S. Standard No. 30 sieve screen or by a dip net constructed of U.S. Standard No. 30 sieve or finer grit bolting cloth that can be pulled around the sampling device before retrieval. Also, samplers exposed in deep water may be enclosed in a retrieval net and brought to the surface by divers. If the sampler can be pulled quickly from the water without undue disturbance, it may not be necessary to enclose it.

(12) The organisms can be removed in the field by disassembling the sampler in a tub or bucket partially filled with water and scrubbing the plates with a soft-bristle brush to remove clinging organisms. The contents of the bucket are then poured through a No. 30 or 70 sieve and washed into a jar and preserved. If the organisms are not removed in the field, the multiple-plate samplers can be taken to the laboratory and disassembled if placed in a water-tight container or sturdy plastic bag containing a fixative or preservative. Also, due to its cylindrical configuration, the round multiple-plate sampler fits various wide mouth containers with tight lids for shipping and storage purposes. The samples should be labeled with the location, habitat, date, and time of collection.

(13) Cleaned multiple-plates can be reused to assemble multiple-plate samplers. Do not reuse the multiple-plates if there is reason to believe that they were exposed to contamination by toxicants (for example, chemicals or oils). These substances may be toxic to the macroinvertebrates or may inhibit colonization. Do not reuse the multiple-plates that have been exposed to fixatives or preservatives.

**REFERENCES**

- (1) Dickson, K. L., Maki, A. W., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Methods for Collection, Storage and Brungs, W. A., eds., *Fate and Effects Manipulation of Sediment-Bound Chemicals in Aquatic Systems Sediments for Chemical and Toxicological Analyses: Technical Manual,* EPA-823-B-01-002, Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, 1987. Washington, DC, 2001.
- (2) Environment Canada, 1994(2) , "Guidance Document on Collection and Preparation of Sediments for Physicochemical Characterization and Biological Testing," *Environmental Protection Series, Report EPS-1/RM/29, Ottawa, Canada, 1997-1/RM/29*, December 1994, p. 132.
- (3) USEPA Methods for Collection, Storage, MacDonald, D. D., and Ingersoll, C. G., "A Guidance Manual to Support the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments in Freshwater Ecosystems. Volume I: An Ecosystem-Based Framework for Chemical Assessing and Toxicological Analysis: Technical Manual. EPA/823/B/01/002, Washington DC, 2001. Managing Contaminated Sediments," EPA-905-B02-001-A, USEPA Great Lakes National Program, Office, Chicago, IL, 2002.
- (4) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Chemistry Laboratory MacDonald, D. D., and Ingersoll, C. G., "Guidance Manual for Bottom to Support the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments in Freshwater Ecosystems. Volume II: Design and Elutriate Testing," EPA-905-4-79-014 (NTIS PB-294596); Region V; Implementation of Sediment Quality Investigations," EPA-905-B02-001-B, USEPA Great Lakes National Program Office, Chicago, IL, 1979-2002.
- (5) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Samplers Ingersoll C. G., Dillon, T., and Sampling Procedures for Hazardous Waste Streams," EPA 600/2-80-018, 1980. Biddinger, R. G., editors, *Ecological Risk Assessment of Contaminated Sediment*, SETAC Press, Pensacola FL, 1997.
- (6) International Technical Information Institute, *Toxic and Hazardous Industrial Chemicals Safety Manual*, Tokyo, Japan, 1977; for example, see: Sax, N. I., *Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials*, 5th Ed., Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York, NY, 1979; Patty, F. A., ed., *Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology*, Vol. II, 2nd Ed., Interscience, New York, NY, 1963; Hamilton, A., and Hardy, H. L., *Industrial Toxicology*, 3rd Ed., Publishing Sciences Group, Inc., Acton, MA, 1974; and Goselin, W. E., Hodge, H. C., Smith, R. P., and Gleason, M. H., *Clinical Toxicology J. Ingersoll, C. G., eds., "Use of Commercial Products*, 4th Ed., Williams Sediment Quality Guidelines (SQGs) and Wilkins Co., Baltimore, MD, 1976. Related Tools for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments: Summary from a SETAC Pellston Workshop," SETAC Press, Pensacola FL, 2002.
- (7) Green, N. E., and Turk, A., *Safety in Working with Chemicals*, MacMillan, New York, NY, 1978; USEPA. Quality Criteria for example, see: National Research Council, *Prudent Practices for Handling Hazardous Chemicals in Laboratories*, National Academy Press, Water, EPA-440/5-86-001, Washington, DC, 1981; Walters, D. B., ed., *Safety Handling of Chemical Carcinogens, Mutagens, Teratogens and Highly Toxic Substances*, Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MI, 1980; and Fawcett, H. H., and Wood, W. S., eds., *Safety and Accident Prevention in Chemical Operations*, 2nd Ed., Wiley-Interscience, New York, NY, 1982-1986b.
- (8) National Council on Radiation Protection Walters, D. B., and Measurement, "Basic Radiation Protection Criteria," NCRP Report No. 39, Washington, DC, 1974; Jameson, C. W., Health and Safety for example, see: Shapiro, J., *Radiation Protection*, 2nd Ed., Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Toxicity Testing, Butterworth Publications, Woburn, MA, 1984.
- (9) Bureau of National Affairs, Inc. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Sampling Protocols Agency General Regulation for Collecting Surface Water, Bed Sediment, Bivalves, and Fish for Priority Pollutant Analysis," Final Draft Report, Office of Water Regulations and Standards Monitoring and Data Support Division, Hazardous Waste Management, Washington, D.C., 1982a6.
- (10) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, *Handbook for Sampling MacDonald, L. H., Smart, A. W., and Sample Preservation Wissmar, R. C., "Monitoring Guidelines to Evaluate effects of W Forestry Activities on Streams in the Pacific Northwest and Wastewater Alaska," USEPA 910/9-01-001, EPA-600/4-82-029, Environment Monitoring and Support Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, 1982b. USEPA Region 10, Seattle, WA, 1991.*
- (11) Downing, J. A., GLNPO 1994 *Sampling the Benthos* (11), "Assessment and Remediation of Standing Waters, A Manual on Methods for the Assessment of Secondary Productivity in Freshwaters Contaminated Sediments (ARCS) Program" Assessment Guidance Document, USEPA 905-B94-002, 2nd Ed., IBP Handbook 12, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Boston, MA, 1984, pp. 87-130. Great Lakes National Program Office, Chicago, IL.
- (12) Hopkins, T. L., "A Survey of Marine Bottom Samples," *Progress in Oceanography* U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Guidance for the Data Quality Objectives Process," USEPA QA/G-4, USEPA/600/R-96/055, Vol 2, Pergamon Press, New York, NY, 1964, pp. 215-254. Office of Environmental Information, Washington, DC, 2000a.
- (13) Plumb, R. H., "Procedures ITFM, 1995, "The Strategy for Handling and Chemical Analysis of Sediment and Improving Water Samples," Environmental Protection Agency/Corps Quality Monitoring in the United States," *Final Report of Engineers Technical Committee the Intergovernmental Task on Criteria for Dredged and Fill Material, Contract EPA-4805572010, EPA/CE-81-1, 1981, 478 pp. Monitoring Water Quality*, U.S. Geological Survey, Office of Water Data Coordination, Reston, VA, OFR 95-742.
- (14) Word, J. Q., "An Evaluation of Benthic Invertebrate U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Guidance for Choosing a Sampling Devices Design for Investigating Habitats of Fish," *Proceedings of First Pacific Northwest Technical Workshop on Fish Food Habits Studies*, Washington University Sea Grant, Seattle, WA, June 1977, pp. 43-55. Environmental Data Collection," 2000b.
- (15) Solomon, K. R., Ankley, G. T., Baudo, R., Burdon, R. G. A., Ingersoll, C. G., Lick, W., Luoma, S., MacDonald, D. D., Reynoldson, T. B., Swartz, R. C., and Wetzel, R., "A Box Corer for Studying Metabolism of Epipellic Microorganisms Warren-Hicks, W. J., "Work Group Summary Report on Methodological Uncertainty in Sediment Under In-Situ Conditions," *Ecological Risk Assessment, "Limnology and Oceanography Ecological Risk Assessment of Contaminated Sediment*, Vol 30, 1985; Ingersoll, C. G., Dillon, T., and Biddinger, R. G., eds., SETAC Press, Pensacola FL, 1997, pp. 422-426. 271-296.
- (16) Oliver, B. G., "Uptake of Chlorinated Organics from Anthropogenically Contaminated Sediments by Oligochaete Worms," Gilfillan, E. S., Page, D. S., Harner, E. J., and Boehm, P. D., "Shoreline Ecology Program For Prince William Sound, Alaska, Following the Exxon Valdez Oil Spill: Part 3-Biology," *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Exxon Valdez Oil Spill: Fate and Aquatic Science Effects in Alaskan Waters, ASTM STP 1219*, Vol 41, 1984, pp. 878-883. Wells, Peter G., Butler, James N., and Hughes, Jane S., eds., American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 1995.
- (17) Oliver, G. B., "Biouptake Lee II, H., "A Clam's Eye View of Chlorinated Hydrocarbons from Laboratory-Spiked the Bioavailability of Sediment-Associated Pollutants," *Organic Substances and Field Sediments by Oligochaets Worms,* *Environmental Science and Technology in Water, Volume 3, Biological, Vol 21, 1987, Baker, R. A., ed., Lewis Publishers, Chelsea, MI, 1991, pp. 785-790-73-93.*
- (18) Klump, J. V., Krezoski, J. R., Smith, M. E., and Kaster, J. L., "Dual Tracer Studies Holland, A. F., "Long-term Variation of the Assimilation Macrobenthos in a Mesohaline Region of an Organic Contaminant from Sediments by Deposit Feeding Oligochaetes," *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science the Chesapeake Bay,* *Estuaries*, Vol 44, 1987, 8(2a), 1985, pp. 1574-1583. 93-113.
- (19) Breteler, R. Barbour, M. T., Gerritsen, J., Snyder, B. D., and Saksa, F. I., "The Role of Sediment Organic Matter on Sorption-Desorption Reactions and Bioavailability of Mercury and Cadmium Stribling, J. B., "Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in an Intertidal Ecosystem," *Aquatic*

- Toxicology Streams and Hazard Assessment, Seventh Symposium, ASTM STP 854*, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, pp. 454–468. *Wadeable Rivers: Periphyton, Benthic Macroinvertebrates, and Fish*,” 2nd ed., USEPA 841-B-99-002, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1999.
- (20) Jafvert, C. T., and Wolfe, N. L., “Degradation of Selected Halogenated Ethanes in Anoxic Sediment-Water Systems,” *U.S. Environmental Toxicology Protection Agency, “Estuarine and Chemistry Near Coastal Marine Waters: Bioassessment and Biocriteria Technical Guidance,” USEPA-822-B-00-004, Vol 6, 1987, pp. 827–837. 2000c.*
  - (21) Wolfe, N. L., Kitchen, B. E., Maclady, D. L., and Grundl, T. J., “Physical and Chemical Factors that Influence the Anaerobic Degradation of Methylparathion in Sediment Systems,” *Gilbert, R. O., “Statistical Methods for Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 5, 1986, pp. 4019–4026. Pollution Monitoring,” van Nostrand Reinhold, NY, 1987.*
  - (22) Murray, W. G., Wolfe, D. A., Long, E. R., and Murray, J., “A Device for Obtaining Representative Samples from Robertson, A., “The National Status and Trends Bioeffects Surveys: Design Strategies and Preliminary Results,” *Proceedings, Coastal Zone '93, the Sediment-Water Interface,” Marine Geology 8th Symposium on Coastal and Ocean Management, Magoon, O. T., Wilson, W. S., Converse, H., and Tobin, L. T., eds., American Society of Civil Engineers, NY, Vol-76, 1987, 1, 1993, pp. 313–317. 298-312.*
  - (23) Grizzle, R. E., Heimbuch, D., Wilson, H., Seibel, J., and Stegner, W. E., “A New Quantitative Grab Weisberg, S., “R-EMAP Data Analysis Approach for Sampling Benthos,” *Hydrobiologia, Vol 126, 1985, pp. 91–95. Estimating the Portion of Area that is Subnominal,” Report prepared for US Environmental Protection Agency, Research Triangle Park, NC, 1995, p. 22.*
  - (24) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency/U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Strobel, C. J., Buffum, H. W., Benyi, S. J., Petrocelli, E. A., Reifsteck, D. R., Keith, D. J., “Statistical Summary EMAP—Estuaries Virginian Province—1990 to 1993,” *Evaluation of Dredged Material Proposed for Ocean Disposal (Testing Manual) EPA/620/R/026, EPA 503/8-91-001, Washington, DC, 1991. EPA, NHEERL, Atlantic Ecology Div, Narragansett, RI 02882, 1995, p. 72 and appendices.*
  - (25) Blomqvist, S., “Sampling Performance Warwick, R. M., and Clarke, K. R., “A Comparison of Ekman Grabs—In Situ Some Methods for Analyzing Changes in Benthic Community Structure,” *Observations and Design Improvements,” Hydrobiologia Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom, Vol 206, 1990, 71, 1991, pp. 245–254. 225-244.*
  - (26) Gilbert, R., Pascoe, G. A., and Glew, J., “A Portable Percussion Coring Device for Lacustrine DalSoglio, J. A., “Planning and Marine Sediments,” *Journal Implementation of a Comprehensive Ecological Risk Assessment at the Milltown Reservoir-Clark Fork River Superfund Site, Montana,” Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 55, 1985, 13, 1994, pp. 607–608. 1943-1956.*
  - (27) Fuller, J. A., Brumbaugh, W. G., Ingersoll, C. G., Kemble, N. E., May, T. W., and Meisburger, E. P., “A Simple, Ship-Based Vibratory Corer,” *Journal Zajicek, J. L., “Chemical Characterization of Sediments and Pore Water from the Upper Clark Fork River and Milltown Reservoir, Montana,” Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 52, 1982, 13, 1994, pp. 642–644. 1971-1973.*
  - (28) Imperato, D., “A Modification Long, E. R., Buchman, M. F., Bay, S. M., Breteler, R. J., Carr, R. S., Chapman, P. M., Hose, J. E., Lissner, A. L., Scott, J., and Wolfe, D. A., “Comparative Evaluation of the Vibracoring Technique for Sandy Sediment,” *Five Toxicity Tests with Sediments from San Francisco Bay and Tomales Bay, California,” Journal of Sediment Petrology Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 57, 1987, 9, 1990, pp. 788–789. 1193-1214*
  - (29) Lanesky, D. E., Logan, B. W., Brown, R. G., and Hine, A. C., “A New Approach to Portable Vibracoring Underwater and Washington Department of Ecology (WDE), “Sediment Sampling Analysis Plan Appendix: Guidance on Land,” *Journal the Development of Sediment Sampling and Analysis Plans Meeting the Requirements of the Sediment Management Standards,” Ecology Publication No. 95-XXX, Vol 49, 1979, pp. 654–657. Washington Department of Ecology, Seattle, WA, 1995.*
  - (30) Elliott, Klemm, D. J., Lewis, P. A., Fulk, F., and Lazorchak, J. M., “Some “Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Statistical Analysis of Samples of Benthic Invertebrates,” *Freshwater Biological Association Integrity of Science Publications, Vol 25, 1977, 156 pp. Surface Waters,” U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, USEPA-600-4-90-030, Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, 1990.*
  - (31) Blomqvist, S., “Reliability Long, E. R., Robertson, A., Wolfe, D. A., Hameedi, J., and Sloane, G. M., “Estimates of Core Sampling the Spatial Extent of Soft Bottom Sediment—An Sediment Toxicity in Major U.S. Estuaries,” *In Situ Study,” Sedimentology Environmental Science and Technology, Vol 32, 1985, 30, 1996, pp. 605-612. 3585-3592.*
  - (32) Findlay, S. E. G., “Influence U.S. Environmental Protection Agency/U.S. Army Corps of Sampling Scale on Apparent Distribution Engineers, “Evaluation of Meiofauna on a Sandflat,” *Estuaries Dredged Material Proposed for Ocean Disposal: Testing Manual,” USEPA-503/8-91/001, Vol 5, 1982, pp. 322–324. Office of Water, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1991.*
  - (33) Fleeger, J. W., Sikora, W., Puget Sound Estuary Program (PSEP), “Recommended Guidelines for Sampling Marine Sediment, Water Column, and Sikora, J., “Spatial and Long-Term Variation of Meiobenthic-Hyperbenthic Copepods Tissue in Lake Pontchartrain, Louisiana,” *Estuarine Coastal Shelf Science, Vol 16, 1983, pp. 441–453. Puget Sound,” U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 10, Seattle, WA and Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA, 1997a.*
  - (34) McIntyre, A. D., and Warwick, R., “Meiofauna Techniques,” *Methods U.S. Environmental Protection Agency/U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, “Evaluation of Dredged Material Proposed for the Study Discharge in Waters of Marine Benthos the U.S.—Testing Manual,” USEPA-823-B-98-004, 2nd ed., N. Holme and A. McIntyre, eds., 1984, pp. 217–244. Washington, DC, 1998.*
  - (35) Rutledge, P. A., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “Methods for Measuring the Toxicity and Fleeger, J., “Laboratory Studies on Core Sampling Bioaccumulation of Sediment-Associated Contaminants with Application to Subtidal Meiobenthos Collection,” *Limnology and Oceanography Freshwater Invertebrates,” Second Edition, USEPA/600/R-99/064, Vol 33, 1988, pp. 274–280. Duluth, MN, 2000d.*
  - (36) Sly, P. G., “Bottom Sediment Sampling,” *Proceedings Mudroch, A., and MacKnight, S. D., CRC Handbook of 12th Conference Great Lakes Research Techniques for Aquatic Sediment Sampling, 2nd Ed., 1969, pp. 883–898. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1994, p. 210.*
  - (37) Long, E. R., Wright, L. D., Prior, D. B., Hobbs, C. H., Byrne, R. J., Boon, J. D., Schaffner, L. C., and Buchman, Green, M. F., “An Evaluation O., “Spatial Variability of Candidate Measures of Biological Effects for Bottom Types in the National Status Lower Chesapeake Bay and Trends Program,” *NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS-OMA 45, Seattle, Washington, 1989. Adjoining Estuaries and Inner Shelf,” Estuarine, Coastal, and Shelf Sciences 24, 1987, pp. 765-784.*
  - (38) Reichert, W. L., Le Eberhart, B., Guigné, J. Y., Rudavina, N., Hunt, P. H., and Varanasi, U., “Exposure Ford, J. S., “An Acoustic Parametric Array for Measuring the Thickness and Stratigraphy of Two-Species Contaminated Sediments,” *Journal of Deposit-Feeding Amphipods to Sediment-Associated [3H]benzopyrene: Uptake, Metabolism and Covalent Binding to Tissue Macromolecules,” Aquatic Toxicology Great Lakes Research, Vol 6, 1985, 17(1), 1991, pp. 45–56. 120-131.*

- (39) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 10, "Recommended Protocols Germano, J. D., D. C., Boyer, L. F., Menzie, C. A., and Ryther, Jr., J. A., REMOTS® Imaging and Side-Scan Sonar: Efficient Tools for Conducting Laboratory Bioassays on Puget Sound Sediments," Final Report FC-3991-04, Puget Sound Estuary Program, Prepared by TetraTech, Inc., Mapping Sea Floor Topography, Sediment Type, Bedforms, and E-V-S: Consultants, Inc., USEPA, Seattle, WA, 1986b. Biology, "Oceanic Processes in Marine Pollution, Volume 4: Scientific Monitoring Strategies for Ocean Waste Disposal Hood, D. W., Schoener, A., and Park, P. K., eds., R.E. Krieger Publishing Co., Malabar, FL, 1989, pp. 39-48.
- (40) Garner, F., Rhoads, D. C., et. al., "Composite Sampling for Environmental Monitoring," *American Chemical Society and Germano, J. D., "Characterization of Organism-Sediment Relations Using Sediment Profile Imaging: An Efficient Method of Remote Ecological Monitoring of the Seafloor (REMOTS® System)," Marine Ecology Progress Series, 8, 1982, pp. 363-374-115-128.*
- (41) Adams, W. U., Kimerle, R. A., Rhoads, D. C., and Mosher, R. G., "Aquatic Safety Assessment of Chemicals Sorbed to Sediments," Germano, J. D., "Interpreting Long-Term Changes in Benthic Community Structure: A New Protocol," *Aquatic Toxicology and Hazard Assessment, Seventh Symposium Hydrobiologia, ASTM STP 854, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, 142, 1986, pp. 429-453-291-308.*
- (42) NOAA, "Collection of Trivalve Molluscs Burton, Jr., G. A., "Sediment Collection and Surficial Sediments, and Performance of Analysis for Organic Chemicals and Toxic Trace Elements," Phase 1 Final Report, National Statistics and Trends Mussel Watch Program, Prepared by Battelle Ocean Sciences for the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Rockville, MD, 1987. Processing: Factors Affecting Realism," *Sediment Toxicity Assessment*, Burton, Jr., G. A., ed., Lewis Publishers, Chelsea, MI, 1992, pp. 37-67.
- (43) Alden, R. W., and Butt, A. J., "Statistical Classification of the Toxicity and Polynuclear Aromatic Hydrocarbon Contamination of Sediments from a Highly Industrialized Seaport," U.S. Environmental Toxicology Protection Agency, "Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC) for 301(h) Monitoring Programs: Guidance on Field and Chemistry Laboratory Methods," U.S. USEPA 430/9-86-004, Vol 6, 1987, pp. 673-684-1987.
- (44) Clark, J. R., Patrick, J. M., Moore, J. C., Page, D. S., Boehm, P. D., Douglas, G. S., and Forester, J., "Accumulation of Sediment-Bound PCBs by Fiddler Crabs," *Bulletin Hydrocarbon Sources in the Benthic Sediments of Environmental Contamination Prince William Sound and Toxicology the Gulf of Alaska Following the Exxon Valdez Oil Spill, "Exxon Valdez Oil Spill: Fate and Effects in Alaskan Waters, ASTM STP 1219, Vol 36, 1986, pp. 571-578. Wells, Peter G., Butler, James N., and Hughes, Jane S., eds., American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 1995a.*
- (45) Clark, J. R., Patrick, J. M., Moore, J. C., Page, D. S., Gilfillan, E. S., Boehm, P. D., and Lores, Harner, E. M. J., "Shoreline Ecology Program for Prince William Sound, Alaska, Following the Exxon Valdez Oil Spill: Part I—Study Design and Sediment Source Toxicities of Six Organic Chemicals to Grass Shrimp (*Palaemonetes pugio* Methods," and *Amphioxus (Branchiostoma caribaeum)*," *Archives of Environmental Contamination Exxon Valdez Oil Spill: Fate and Toxicology Effects in Alaskan Waters, ASTM STP 1219, Vol 16, 1987, pp. 401-407. Butler, James N., and Hughes, Jane S., eds., American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 1995b.*
- (46) Giesy, J. P., Graney, R. L., Newstead, J. L., Rosiu, C. J., Benda, Mudroch, A., Kreis, R. G., and Horvath, F. J., "Comparison of Three Aquatic Sediment Bioassay Methods Using Detroit River Sediments," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Sampling, Vol 7, 1988, pp. 483-498. CRC/Lewis, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.*
- (47) Malueg, K. W., Schuytma, G. S., Gakstatter, J. H., Carlton, R. G., and Krawczyk, D. F., "Effect of Wetzal, R. G., "A Box Corer for Studying Metabolism of *Hexagenia* on *Daphnia* Response Epipelagic Microorganisms in Sediment Toxicity Tests," *Under Environmental Toxicology in situ Conditions, "Limnology and Chemistry Oceanography, Vol 2, 1983, 73-82-30, 1985, p. 422.*
- (48) Malueg, K. W., Schuytma, G. S., Gakstatter, J. H., and Krawczyk, D. F., "Toxicity of Sediments from Three Metal Contaminated Areas," U.S. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Protection Agency, "U.S. USEPA Contract Laboratory Program—Statement of Work for Organic Analysis, Multi-Media, Multi-Concentration," Document ILMO1.0-ILMO-1.9, Vol 3, 1984, pp. 279-291. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, 1993.
- (49) Malueg, K. W., Schuytma, G. S., Krawczyk, D. F., and Gakstatter, J. Keith, L. H., "Laboratory Sediment Toxicity Tests, Sediment Chemistry and Distribution "Principles of Benthic Macroinvertebrates in Sediments from the Keweenaw Waterway, Michigan," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Environmental Sampling, "ACS Professional Reference Book, Vol 3, 1984, pp. 233-242. American Chemical Society, 1993, p. 458.*
- (50) Rubinstein, N. I., Lores, E., Di Toro, D. M., Mahony, J. H., Hansen, D. J., Scott, K. J., Hicks, M. B., Mayr, S. M., and Gregory, N. R., "Accumulation of PCBs, Mercury and Cadmium by *Nereis virens*, *Mercenaria mercenaria* and *Palaemonetes pugio* from Contaminated Harbor Sediments," *Aquatic Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 3, 1983, 9, 1990, pp. 249-260-1487-1502.*
- (51) Fatem, H. E., "Bioaccumulation of Polychlorinated Biphenyls Ankley, G. T., Di Toro, D. M., Hansen, D. J., and Metals from Contaminated Berry, W. J., "Technical Basis and Proposal for Deriving Sediment by Freshwater Prawns, Quality Criteria for Metals," *Macrobenthos rosenbergii; Environmental Toxicology and Clams, Chemistry Corbicula fluminea, "Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, Vol 15, 1989, pp. 171-183-2056-2066.*
- (52) Fitzwater, S. E., Knauer, G. A., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Methods for the Chemical Analysis of Water and Martin, J. H., "Metal Contamination and Its Effect on Primary Production Measurements," *Limnology and Oceanography Wastes, "USEPA 600/4-79-020, Vol 27, 1982, 544-551. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, 1983, p. 460.*
- (53) Lindstrom, R. M., EPRI, 1999, "Review of Sediment Removal and Moody, J. R., "Selection Remediation Technologies at MGP and Cleaning of Plastic Containers for Storage of Trace Element Samples," *Analytical Chemistry, Vol 49, 1977, pp. 2264-2267. Other Contaminated Sites," EPRI, Palo Alto, CA, and Northeast Utilities, Berlin, CT, 1999, TR-113106.*
- (54) *The Hazardous Waste Consultant, "The Impact Besser, J. M., Kubitz, J. A., Ingersoll, C. G., Braselton, W. E., and Giesy, J. P., "Influences of Transport Copper Bioaccumulation, Growth, and Storage Temperature on Sample Integrity," 1992; Survival of the Midge Chironomus tentans in Metal-Contaminated Sediments," Journal of Aquatic Ecosystem Health, 4, 1995, pp. 13-15-157-168.*
- (55) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Kemp, A. L. W., Saville, H. A., Gray, C. B., and Mudrochova, A., "A Compendium of Superfund Field Operation Methods," EPA/540-P-87/001, Office of Emergency Simple Corer and Remedial Response, Washington, DC, 1987. Method for Sampling the Mud-Water Interface," *Limnology and Oceanography, 16, 1971, p. 689.*
- (56) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Sampling Guidance Manual for the National Dioxin Manual," Draft, Office Ditsworth G. R., Schults, D. W., and Jones, J. K. P., "Preparation of Water Regulations Benthic Substrates for Sediment Toxicity Testing," *Environmental Toxicology and Standards; Monitoring and Data Support Division, Washington, DC, 1984. Chemistry, 9, 1990, pp. 1523-1529.*
- (57) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Sediment Sampling Quality Assurance User's Guide," EPA 600/4/85/048 (NTIS PB 85-233542); Environmental Monitoring Stemmer, B. L., Burton, Jr., G. A., and Support Laboratory, Las Vegas, NV, 1985b. Leibfritz-Frederick, S., "Effects of



- Sediment Test Variables on Selenium Toxicity to *Daphnia magna*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 9, 1990a, pp. 381-389.
- (58) Stemmer, B. L., Burton, Jr., G. A., and Stemmer, B. L., “Factors Affecting Effluent and Leibfritz-Frederick, S., “Effect of Sediment Spatial Variance and Collection Method on Cladoceran Toxicity Using Cladoceran, Algae and Indigenous Microbial Indicator Assays,” *Activity Determinations, Abstract of the Annual Meeting of the Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Pensacola, FL, 1987-9, 1990b*, pp. 1035-1044.
- (59) Lee, G. F., and Jones, Ginsburg, R. N., Bernard, H. A., “Discussion of: Dredged Material Evaluations: Correlation Between Chemical Moody, R. A., and Biological Evaluation Procedures,” *Journal Daigle, E. E., 1966. “The Shell Method of Water Pollution Control Federation Impregnating Cores of Unconsolidated Sediments,” Journal of Sediment Petrology, Vol 54, 1982, 36, 1966, pp. 406-409-1118-1125.*
- (60) Lee, G. F., Crevello, P. D., Rine, J. M., and Plumb, R., “Literature Review on Research Study Lanesky, D. E., “A Method for the Development Impregnating Unconsolidated Cores and Slabs of Dredged Material Disposal Criteria,” Contract Report D-74-1, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1974. Calcareous and Terrigenous Muds,” *Journal of Sediment Petrology*, 51, 1981, pp. 658-660.
- (61) Malueg, K. W., Schuytema, G. S., and Krawczyk, D. F. “Effects USEPA. Contaminated sediment management strategy, EPA 823-R-98-001. Office of Sample Storage on a Copper-Spiked Freshwater Sediment,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 5, 1986, pp. 245-253. Water, Washington, DC, 1998.
- (62) Stemmer, B. L., Burton, G. A., Jr., Dillon, T. M., Moore, D. W., and Leibfritz-Frederick, Jarvis, A. S., “The Effects of Sediment Test Variables Storage Temperature and Time on Selenium Toxicity to Sediment Toxicity,” *Daphnia magna, Archives of Environmental Contamination Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 9, in press, 1990-27, 1994, pp. 51-53.*
- (63) Swartz, R. C., “Toxicological Methods for Determining the Effects Becker, D.S., Rose, C.D., and Bigham, G.N. Comparison of Contaminated Sediment on Marine Organisms,” the 10-day freshwater sediment toxicity tests using *FHyaella azteca* and Effects of Sediment-Bound Chemicals in Aquatic Systems, Pergamon Press, New York, NY, 1987, pp. 183-198. *Chironomus tentans* Environ. Toxicol. Chem. 14:2089-2094, 1995.
- (64) Swartz, R. C., DeBen, W. A., Jones, J. K., Lamberson, J. O., Carr, R.S. and Cole, F. A., “Phoxocephalid Amphipod Bioassay Chapman, D.C. Comparison of methods for Marine Sediment Toxicity,” *Aquatic Toxicology conducting marine and Hazard Assessment, Seventh Symposium, ASTM STP-854, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, pp. 284-307-estuarine sediment porewater toxicity tests, extraction, storage, and handling techniques. Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol. 28: 69-77, 1995.*
- (65) Silver, M. L., “Handling Moore, D.W. and Storage Farrar, J.D. Effect of Chemically and Biologically Active Ocean Sediments,” *MTS Journal*, Vol 6, 1972, pp. 32-36- growth on reproduction in the freshwater amphipod, *Hyaella azteca*. *Hydrobiologia* 328:127-134, 1996.
- (66) Swartz, R. C., Ditsworth, G. R., Schults, D. W., Sarda, N. and Lamberson, J. O., “Sediment Toxicity to a Marine Infaunal Amphipod: Cadmium G.A. Burton, Jr. Ammonia variation in sediments: spatial, temporal and Its Interaction with Sewage Sludge,” *Marine and Environment Research*, Vol 18, 1985, pp. 133-153- method-related effects, Environ. Toxicol. Chem. 14:1499-1506, 1995.
- (67) Wood, L. W., Rhee, G. Y., Bush, B., Sijm, R.T.H., Haller, M. and Barnard, E., “Sediment Desorption Schrap, S.M. Influence of PCB Congeners storage on sediment characteristics and Their Bio-Uptake by Dipteran Larvae,” *Water Research*, Vol 21, 1987, pp. 873-884- of drying sediment on sorption coefficients of organic contaminants. Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol. 58:961-968, 1997.
- (68) Burton, G. A., Jr., DeFoe, D.L. and Stemmer, B. L., “Spiking Method, Sample Storage and Spatial Heterogeneity Effects Ankley, G.T. Influence of storage time on Sediment Toxicity to *Daphnia magna*,” *Abstract toxicity of the Annual Meeting of the Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Arlington, VA, 1988- freshwater sediments to benthic macroinvertebrates, Environ. Pollut. 99:121-131, 1998.*
- (69) Anderson, Kemble, N. E., Brumbaugh, W. G., Brunson, E. L., Dwyer, F. J., Birge, W., Gentile, J., Lake, J., Rodgers, J., Jr., Ingersoll, C. G., Monda, D. P., and Swartz, R., “Biological Effects, Bioaccumulation, and Ecotoxicology Woodward, D. F., “Toxicity of Sediment-Associated Chemicals,” *Fate and Effects of Sediment-Bound Chemicals in Metal-contaminated Sediments from the Upper Clark Fork River, MT to Aquatic Invertebrates in Laboratory Exposures,* *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Pergamon Press, New York, NY, 1987, Vol 13, pp. 267-296-1895-1997, 1994*
- (70) Plumb, R. H., Jr., “Sampling, Preservation, Ingersoll, C. G., Buckler, D. R., Creclius, E. A., and Analysis La Point, T. W., *U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and Battelle final report for the USEPA GLNPO Assessment and Remediation of Contaminated Sediment Samples: State-of-the-Art Limitations,* *Proceedings Fifth United States-Japan Experts Meeting on Management (ARCS) Project: Biological Assessment of Bottom Sediments Containing Toxic Substances Contaminated Great Lakes Sediment, EPA/600/19-80-044, New Orleans, LA, 1980, pp. 259-272- EPA 905-R93-006, Chicago, IL, 1993.*
- (71) Di Toro, D. M., Mahony, J. D., Hansen, D. J., Scott, K. J., Hicks, M. B., Mayr, S. M., Schuytema, G. S., Nebeker, A. V., Griffis, W. L., and Redmond, M. S., “Miller, C. E., “Effects of Freezing on Toxicity of Cadmium in Sediments: The Role of Acid Volatile Sulfide,” Draft Report to U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Criteria Sediments Contaminated With DDT and Standards Division, Washington, DC, 1989. *Endrin,* *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 8, 1989, pp. 883-891.
- (72) Carr, R. S., Williams, J. W., Shuba, P. J., Tatem, H. E., and Fragata, C. T. B., “Development and Evaluation of a Novel Marine Sediment Pore Water Toxicity Test with Carroll, J. H., Biological Assessment Methods to Predict the Polychaete *Dinophilus gyrociliatus*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 8, 1989, pp. 533-543- Impact of Open-Water Disposal of Dredged Material, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Technical Report D-78-5Q, Washington, DC, 1978.
- (73) Stemmer, B. L., “An Evaluation PSEP, “Recommended Guidelines for Conducting Laboratory Bioassays on Puget Sound Sediments,” Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10, Office of Various Effluent Puget Sound, Seattle, WA and Sediment Toxicity Tests,” MS Thesis, Wright State University, Dayton, OH, 1988- Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA; Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA, 1995.
- (74) Cairns, M. A., Nebeker, V., Gakstatter, J. H., and Griffis, W. L., “Toxicity U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “Methods for Measuring the Toxicity of Copper Spiked Sediments to Freshwater Invertebrates,” *Environmental Toxicology Sediment-Associated Contaminants with Estuarine and Chemistry Marine Amphipods,* *USEPA-600/R-94/025, Vol 3, 1984, pp. 435-445- Narragansett, RI, 1994.*
- (75) Jenne, E. A., Day, K. E., Kirby, R. S., and Zachara, J. M., “Factors Influencing the Sorption Reynoldson, T. B., “The Effect of Metals,” *Fate and Effects Manipulations on Freshwater Sediments on Responses of Sediment-Bound Chemicals Benthic Invertebrates in Aquatic Systems Whole-Sediment Toxicity Tests,* *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Pergamon Press, New York, NY, 1987, 14, 1995, pp. 83-98-1333-1343.*
- (76) Muir, D. Giesy, J. P., Rosiu, C. G., Griff, N. D., Townsend, B. E., Matner, D. A., and Lockhart, W. L., “Comparison of the Uptake J., Graney, R. L., and Bioconcentration of Fluridone and Terbutryn by Rainbow Trout and *Chironomus tentans* in Henry, M. G., “Benthic Invertebrate Bioassays with Toxic Sediment and Water Systems,” Pore Water,” *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 11, 1982, 9, 1990, pp. 595-602-233-248.*
- (77) Muir, Johns, D. C. G., Townsend, B. E., M., Pastorok, R. A., and Lockhart, W. L., “Bioavailability of Six Organic Chemicals to Ginn, T. C., “A Sublethal Sediment Toxicity Test Using Juvenile *Chironomus tentans* Neanthes Larvae in Sediment and Water,” *sp. (Polychaeta: Nereidae),*”

- Environmental Aquatic Toxicology and Chemistry Risk Assessment, ASTM STP 1124, Mayes, M. A., and Barron, M. G., eds., American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, Vol-2, 1983, 14, 1991, pp. 269-281-280-293.*
- (78) Muir, Keilty, T. J., White, D. C. G., Rawn, G. P., Townsend, B. E., Loekhart, W. L., S., and Landrum, P. F., "Short-Term Lethality and Greenhatch; R., "Bioconcentration of Cypermethrin, Deltamethrin, Fenvalerate and Permethrin by *Chironomus tentans* Larvae in Sediment Avoidance Assays with Endrin-Contaminated Sediment and W Two Oligochaetes from Lake Michigan," *Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 4, 1985; 17, 1988a, pp. 51-61-95-101.
- (79) Thomson, E. A., et al., "The Effect of Sample Storage on the Extraction of Cu, Zn, Fe, Mn," Keilty, T. J., White, D. S., and Organic Material from Oxidized Estuarine Sediments," Landrum, P. F., "Sublethal Responses to Endrin in Sediment by *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution Stylodrilus heringianus (Lumbriculidae)* as Measured by a <sup>137</sup>Cesium Marker Layer Technique," *Aquatic Toxicology*, Vol 14, 1980; 13, 1988b, pp. 215-233-227-250.
- (80) Røehøn, Landrum, P. F., and Faust, W. R., "Effect of Variation in Sediment Composition on the Uptake Rate Coefficient for Selected PCB and Chevalier, M., "Sediment Sampling PAH Congeners by the Amphipod, *Diporeia sp.*," *Aquatic Toxicology and Preservation Methods Risk Assessment*, Vol 14, Mayes, M. A., and Barron, M. G., eds., ASTM STP 1124, American Society for Dredging Projects," Conservation Testing and Protection Environment Canada, Quebec Region, 1987. Materials. Philadelphia, PA, 1991, pp. 263-279.
- (81) Wilkness, P. E. and Carr, R. Lydy, M. J., Bruner, K. A., "Mercury: A Short-Term Storage Fry, K. A., and Fisher, S. W., 1990. "Effects of N Sediment and the Route of Exposure on the Toxicity and Accumulation of Neutral Lipophilic and Moderately Water Soluble Metabolizable Compounds in the Midge," *Environmental Science Chironomus riparius*," *Aquatic Toxicology and Technology Risk Assessment*, Vol-7, No. 1, 1973; 13, Landis, W. G., and van der Schalie, W. H., eds., ASTM STP 1096, American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, pp. 62-63-140-164.
- (82) Watson, Landrum, P. G., Frieckers, P. F., Eadie, B. J., and Goodchild, C., "Spatial and Seasonal Variations Faust, W. R., "Variation in the Chemistry Bioavailability of Sediment Interstitial Waters in Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons to the Tamar Estuary," *Amphipod Estuaries Diporeia sp. with Sediment Aging*," *Environmental Toxicology and Coastal Shelf Science Chemistry*, Vol 21, 1985; 11, 1992, pp. 105-119-1197-1208.
- (83) Hulbert, M. H. Robinson, A. M., Lamberson, J. O., Cole, F. A., and Brindle, M. P.; Swartz, R. C., "Effects of Sample Handling Culture Conditions on the Composition Sensitivity of Marine Sedimentary Pore Water," a Phoxocephalid Amphipod, *Geological Society of America Bulletin Rhexopynius abronius*, Vol 86, 1975; to Cadmium in Sediment," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 7, 1988, pp. 109-110-953-959.
- (84) Landrum, P. F., Nihart, S. Swartz, R. S., Schults, D. W., DeWitt, T. H., Ditsworth, G. R., Eadie, B. J., and Hereche, L. R., "Reduction in Bioavailability Lamberson, J. O., "Toxicity of Organic Contaminants Fluoranthene in Sediment to the Amphipod *Pontoporeia hoyi* by Dissolved Organic Matter Marine Amphipods: A Test of the Equilibrium Partitioning Approach to Sediment Interstitial Waters," *Quality Criteria*," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 6, 1987; 9, 1990, pp. 11-20-1071-1080.
- (85) Aggett, Kemble, N. E., Dwyer, F. J., Ingersoll, C. G., Dawson, T. D., and Kriegman, M. R., "Preservation Norberg-King, T. J., "Tolerance of Arsenic (III) and Arsenic (V) Freshwater Test Organisms to Formulated Sediments for Use as Control Materials in Samples of Sediment Interstitial Water," *Whole-Sediment Toxicity Tests*," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 12, 1987; 18, 1999, pp. 153-157-222-230.
- (86) Andersen, F. Ø., Di Toro, D. M., Zarba, C. S., Hansen, D. J., Berry, W. J., Swartz, R. C., Cowan, C. E., Pavlou, S. P., Allen, H. E., Thomas, N. A., and Helder, W., "Comparison of Oxygen Microgradients, Oxygen Flux Rates and Electron Transport System Activity in Coastal Marine Sediments," Paquin, P. R., "Technical Basis for Establishing Sediment Quality Criteria for Nonionic Organic Chemicals Using Equilibrium Partitioning," *Marine Ecology Progress Series Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 37, 1987; 10, 1991, pp. 259-264-1541-1583.
- (87) Tatem, H. E., "Use Dewitt, T. H., Ozretich, R. J., Swartz, R. C., Lamberson, J. O., Schults, D. W., Ditsworth, G. R., Jones, J. K., Hoselton, L., and Smith, L. M., "The Influence of *Daphnia magna* and *Mysidopsis almyra* to Assess Sediment Toxicity," *Water Organic Matter Quality '88*, Seminar Proceedings, Charleston, SC, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Committee on Water Quality, Washington, DC, 1988. the Toxicity and Partitioning of Sediment-Associated Fluoranthene," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 11(2), 1992, pp. 197-208.
- (88) Adams, Kosian, P. A., West, C. W., Pasha, M. S., Cox, J. S., Mount, D. D., "Sediment Pore Water Sampling," *Handbook R., Huggett, R. J., and Ankley, G. T., "Use of Techniques Nonpolar Resin for Aquatic Sediments Sampling*, A. Mudroch Reduction of Fluoranthene Bioavailability in Sediment," *Environmental Toxicology and S. D. MacKnight, eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1991, Chemistry* 18(2), 1999, pp. 171-202-201-206.
- (89) Burton, G. A., Jr., "Sediment Collection and Processing: Factors Affecting Realism, G. A. Burton, Jr., ed., *Sediment Environment Canada, 1995, "Guidance Document on Measurement of Toxicity Assessment*, Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL: Test Precision Using Control Sediments Spiked with a Reference Toxicant," *Report EPS 1/RM/30*.
- (90) Burgess, R. M., Schweitzer, K. A., McKinney, R. A., Ribeiro, R., Margalho, R., Goncalves, F., and Phelps, D. K., *Environmental Soares, A., Abstr. HC07, Annu. Meet. Soc. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 12, 1993, pp. 127-138- Chemistry, Denver, CO, 1994, p. 224.
- (91) Ankley, G. T., Katko, A., Sawyer, L. N., and Arthur, J. W., "Identification Burton, Jr., G. A., "Validation of Ammonia as an Important Sediment-Associated Toxicant Various Formulated Sediment Recipes for Use in Toxicity Assessments," Abstr. HC06, Annual Meeting of the Lower Fox River and Green Bay, Wisconsin," *Environmental Society for Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 9, 1990, pp. 313-322- Chemistry, Denver, CO, 1994, p. 224.
- (92) Ankley, G. T., Schubauer-Berigan, M. K., Fleming, R. and Dierkes, J. R., "Predicting the Nixon, S., "Sediment Toxicity of Bulk Sediments to Aquatic Organisms with Aqueous Test Fractions: Pore Water vs. Elutriate," Tests," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Interim Report No. DoE, Contract 8864, Vol 10, 1991, pp. 1359-1366. Department of Environment, Buckinghamshire, England, 1996.*
- (93) Schubauer-Berigan, M. K., Clark, J. R., Patrick, J. M., Moore, J. C., and Ankley, G. T., "The Contribution Forester, J., "Accumulation of Ammonia; Metals and Nonpolar Organic Compounds to the Toxicity of Sediment Interstitial Water from an Illinois River Tributary," Sediment-Bound PCBs by Fiddler Crabs," *Environmental Toxicology Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Chemistry Toxicology*, Vol 10, 1991; 36, 1986, pp. 925-939-571-578.
- (94) Edmunds, W. Clark, J. R., Patrick, Jr., J. M., Moore, J. C., and Bath, A. H., "Centrifuge Extraction Lores, E. M., "Waterborne and Chemical Analysis Sediment-Source Toxicities of Interstitial Waters," *Environmental Science Six Organic Chemicals to Grass Shrimp (Palaeomonetes pugio) and Technology; Amphioxus (Branchiostoma caribaeum)*, Vol 10, 1976; *Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology*, 16, 1987, pp. 467-472-401-407.
- (95) Engler, R. M., Brannon, J. M., Rose, J., Tatem, H. E., "Bioaccumulation of Polychlorinated Biphenyls and Bigham, Cr., "A Practical Selective Extraction Procedure for Metals from Contaminated Sediment Characterization," by Freshwater Prawns, *Chemistry Macrobracium rosenbergii, and Clams, Corbicula fluminea*," *Archives of Marine Sediments Environmental Contamination & Toxicology, Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MI, 1977, p. 163-171-15, 1986, pp. 171-183.*
- (96) Jahnke, R. A., "A Simple, Reliable, Knezovich, J. P., and Inexpensive Pore Water Sampler," Harrison, F. L., "The Bioavailability of Sediment-Sorbed

- Chlorobenzenes to Larvae of the Midge *£ chimronomus decorus*,” *Ecotoxicology and Oceanography Environmental Safety*, Vol 33, 15, 1988, pp. 483–487–226–241.
- (97) Nelson, M. K., Landrum, P. F., Burton, Jr., G. A., Klaine, S. J., Crecelius, E.-K., A., Byl, T. D., Gossiaux, D. C., Tsymbal, V. N., Cleveland, L., Ingersoll, C. G., and Goldhaker, M., “A Sediment Squeezer for Removal Sasson-Brickson, G., “Toxicity of Pore Waters Without Air Contact,” Contaminated Sediments in Dilution Series with Control Sediments,” *Journal of Sediment Petrology Chemosphere*, Vol 43, 1973; 27, 1993, pp. 554–557–1789–1812.
- (98) Reeburgh, Adams, W. S., “An Improved Interstitial Water Sampler,” U., Kimerle, R. A., and Mosher, R. G., “Aquatic Safety Assessment of Chemicals Sorbed to Sediments,” *Limnology Aquatic Toxicol. and Oceanography Hazard Assessment, Seventh Symposium, Vol 12, 1967, ASTM STP 854, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, pp. 163–165–429–453.*
- (99) Long, E. R., Buchman, M. F., Bay, S. M., Breteler, R. J., Carr, R. S., Chapman, P. M., Hose, J. E., Lissner, A. L., Scott, J., and Wolfe, D. A., “Comparative Evaluation International Joint Commission (IJC), “Procedures for the Assessment of Five Toxicity Tests with Sediments from San Francisco Bay and Tomales Bay, California,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 9, 1990, pp. 1193–1214. Contaminated Sediment Problems in the Great Lakes,” IJC, Windsor, Ont., Canada, 1988, p. 140.
- (100) Watson, Landrum, P. G., F., “Bioavailability and Frickers, T. E., “A Multilevel, In Situ Pore Water Sampler for Use in Intertidal Toxicokinetics of Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons Sorbed to Sediments and Laboratory Microcosms, for the Amphipod *Limnology Pontoporeia hoyi*,” *Environmental Science and Oceanography Technology*, Vol 235, 1989, pp. 1381–1389–588–595.
- (101) Whitman, R., Word, J. Q., Ward, J. A., Franklin, L. M., Cullinan, V. I., and Kiesser, S. L., “A New Sampler “Evaluation of Equilibrium Partitioning Theory for Collection Estimating the Toxicity of Interstitial Water from Sandy Sediments,” the Nonpolar Organic Compound DDT to the Sediment Dwelling Amphipod *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 176/177, 1989, pp. 531–533. *Rhepoxynius abronius*,” USEPA Criteria and Standards Division. SCD No. 11, Washington, DC, 1987.
- (102) Pittinger, C. A., Hand, V. C., Masters, J. A., and Davidson, L., Landrum, P. F., “Interstitial Water Sampling and Faust, W. R., “Variation in Ecotoxicological Testing: Partitioning the Bioavailability of a Cationic Surfactant,” Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons Sorbed to Sediments for the Amphipod *Pontoporeia hoyi*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Hazard Assessment Chemistry*, Vol 10, 1988; 11, 1992, pp. 138–148–1197–1208.
- (103) Knezovich, J. P., Ingersoll, C. G., and Harrison, F. L., “A New Method for Determining the Concentrations of Volatile Organic Compounds in Nelson, M. K., Testing Sediment Interstitial Water,” Toxicity With *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination Hyaella azteca (Amphipoda) and Chironomus riparius (Diptera)*. In: W. G. Landis and W. H. van der Schalie (eds.), *Aquatic Toxicology*, Vol 38, 1987, and Risk Assessment, 13th V, ASTM STP 1096, Philadelphia, PA, 1990, pp. 937–940–93–109.
- (104) Lyons, W. B., Gaudette, Ankley, G. T., Cook, P. M., Carlson, A. R., Call, D. J., Swenson, J. A., Corcoran, H. F., and Smith, G., “Pore Water Sampling in Anoxic Carbonate Sediments: Oxidation Artifacts,” Hoke, R. A., “Bioaccumulation of PCBs from Sediments by Oligochaetes and Fishes: Comparison of Laboratory and Field Studies,” *Nature Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, Vol 277, 1979; 49, 1992b, pp. 48–49–2080–2085.
- (105) Howes, B. L., Dacey, Swartz, R. C., Cole, F. A., Lamberson, J. O., Ferraro, S. P., Schults, D. W., DeBen, W. A., Lee II, H., and Wakeham, S. G., “Effects of Sampling Technique on Measurements of Porewater Constituents Ozretich, R. J., “Sediment Toxicity, Contamination and Amphipod Abundance at a DDT and Dieldrin-contaminated Site in Salt Marsh Sediments,” San Francisco Bay,” *Environmental Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 30, 1985; 13, 1994, pp. 221–227–949–962. Schlekat, C. E., McGee, B. L., Boward, D. M., Reinhartz, E., Velinsky, D. J., and Wade, T. L. 1994. Tidal River Sediments in the Washington, D.C. Area. III. Biological Effects Associated With Sediment Contamination. *Estuaries* Vol 17, 1994, pp 334–344. McGee, B. L., Schlekat, C. E., Boward, D. M., and Wade, T. L. 1994. Sediment Contamination an Biological Effects in A Chesapeake Bay Marina. *Ecotoxicology* 3: McGee, B. L., Schlekat, C. E., and Reinhartz, E. 1993. Assessing Sublethal Levels of Sediment Contamination Using the Estuarine Amphipod *Leptocheirus plumulosus*. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 12, pp. 577–587.
- (106) Sayles, F. L., Wilson, T. R. S., Hume, D. N., O’Donnel, J. R., Kaplan, B. M., Allen, and Mangelsdorf, P. C., Jr., “In Situ Sampler for Marine Sedimentary Pore Waters: Evidence for Potassium Depletion and Calcium Enrichment,” H. E., “Bioavailability of Trace Metals in Natural Waters,” *Aquatic Toxicol. and Hazard Assessment: Seventh Symposium, ASTM STP 854*, Vol 180, 1973; ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, pp. 154–156–485–501.
- (107) Bischoff, J., Northcott, G. L., Greer, R. E., and Luistro, A. O., “Composition Jones, K. C., “Spiking Hydrophobic Organic Compounds into Soil and Sediment: A Review and Critique of Interstitial Waters of Marine Sediments: Temperature of Squeezing Effect,” Adopted Procedures,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 167, 1970; 19, 2000, pp. 1245–1246–2418–2430.
- (108) Bray, J. T., Bricker, O. P., USEPA. Standard Guide for Collection, Storage, Characterization, and Troup, B. N., “Phosphate in Interstitial Waters Manipulation of Anoxic Sediments: Oxidation Effects During Sampling Procedure,” *Science*, Vol 180, 1973, pp. 1362–1364. Sediments for Toxicological Testing, USEPA Series Number Pending, Washington, DC, October 2000.
- (109) Kemble, N. E., Brumbaugh, W. G., Brenson, E. L., Dwyer, F. J., Ingersoll, G., Monda, Ditsworth, G. R., Schults, D. P., W., and Woodward, D. F., “Toxicity Jones, J. K. P., “Preparation of Metal Contaminated Sediments from the Upper Clark Fork River Mountain, to Aquatic Invertebrates in Laboratory Exposures,” Benthic Substrates for Sediment Toxicity Testing,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 9, 1994, pp. 1523–1529.
- (110) Carignan, R., Rapin, F., Ankley, G. T., Schubauer-Berigan, M. K., and Tessier, A., “Sediment Porewater Sampling for Metal Analysis: A Comparison Dierkes, J. R., “Predicting the Toxicity of Bulk Sediments to Aquatic Organisms with Aqueous Test Fractions: Pore Water vs. Elutriate,” *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 49, 1985; 10, 1991, pp. 2493–2497–925–939.
- (111) Chin, Y., and Gschwend, P. Di Toro, D. M., “The Abundance, Distribution, Mahony, J. H., Hansen, D. J., Scott, K. J., Hicks, M. B., Mayr, S. M., and Configuration Redmond, M., “Toxicity of Porewater Organic Colloids Cadmium in Recent Sediment,” Sediments: The Role of Acid Volatile Sulfides,” *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 55, 1991; 9, 1990, pp. 1309–1317–1487–1502.
- (112) Brownawell, B. J., Besser, J. M., Ingersoll, C. G., Leonard, E., and Farrington, J. W., “Biogeochemistry Mount, D.R. Effect of PCBs in Interstitial Waters zeolite on toxicity of a Coastal Marine Sediment,” ammonia freshwater sediments: Implications for sediment toxicity identification evaluation procedures. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, Vol 50, 1986, pp. 157–169. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* 17:2310–2317, 1998.
- (113) Word, J. Q., Ward, J., Ankley, G. T., Collyard, S. A., Franklin, L. M., Cullinan, V. I., Monson, P. D., and Kiesser, S. L., “Evaluation Kosian, P. A., “Influence of Ultraviolet Light on the Equilibrium Partitioning Theory for Estimating the Toxicity of the Nonpolar Organic Compound DDT to the Sediment Dwelling Amphipod *Rhepoxynius abronius*,” Battelle/Marine Research Laboratory Report, Task 1, WA56, Sequim, WA, 1987, 60 pp. Sediments Contaminated with Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 11, 1994, pp. 1791–1796.
- (114) Klunkhammer, Leonard, E. N., Mount, D.R., and Ankley, G. P., “Early Diagenesis in Sediments from the Eastern Equatorial Pacific, II: Pore Water T., “Modification of Metal-R Partitioning by Supplementing Acid Volatile Sulfide in Freshwater Sediments,” *Earth Environmental Toxicology and*

- Planetary Science Letters Chemistry*, Vol 49, 1980, 18(5), 1999, pp. 81–101–858-864.
- (115) Simon, N. S., Kennedy, M. M., Landrum, P. F., Gossiaux, D. C., and Massoni, C. S., "Evaluation and Use of a Diffusion Controlled Sampler for Determining Chemical and Dissolved Oxygen Gradients at Kukkonen, J., "Sediment Characteristics Influencing the Sediment-Water Interfact," Bioavailability of Nonpolar Organic Contaminants to *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 126, 1985, *Diporeia sp.*," *Chem. Speciat. Bioavail.*, 9, 1997, pp. 135–141-43-55.
- (116) Saager, Ten, T. E. M., den Besten, P. J., Hendriks, J., van Noort, P. C. M., Sweerts, J-P, and Ellermeijer, H. Postma, J., "A Simple Pore-Water Sampler for Coarse, Sandy Sediments Stoomberg, G. J., Belfroid, A., Wegner, J. W., Faber, J. H., and van der Pol, J. J. C., "Application of Low Porosity," *Limnology Tenax® Extraction to Measure Bioavailability or Sorbed Organic Contaminants to Soil and Oceanography Sediment Inhabiting Organisms*," *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, Vol 35, 1990, pp. 747–751-2003, in press.
- (117) Boulegue, J., Lord, C. J., and Church, T. Yee, S., Van Rikxoort, M., "Sulfur Speciation and Associated Trace Metals (Fe, Cu) in the Pore Waters McLeay, D., "The Effect of Great March, Delaware, Holding Time on *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, Vol 46, 1982, pp. 453–464. *Eohaustorius washingtonianus* During Ten-Day Sediment Bioassays and Reference Toxicant Tests," Report prepared for Environment Canada and the Inter-Governmental Aquatic Toxicity Group, North Vancouver, BC, 1992, p. 53.
- (118) Bender, M., Martin, W., Hess, J., Sayles, Stephenson, R. R., and Kane, D. F., Ball, L., "Persistence and Lambert, C., "A Whole-Core Squeezer for Interfacial Pore-Water Sampling," Effects of Chemicals in Small Enclosures in Ponds," *Environ. Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 32, 1987, 13, 1984, pp. 1214–1225-313-326.
- (119) Hines, M. E., Knollmeyer, S. L., O'Neill, E. J., Monti, C. A., Prichard, P. H., Bourquin, A. W., and Tugel, J. B., "Sulfate Reduction Ahearn, D. G., "Effects of Lugworms and Other Sedimentary Biogeochemistry Seagrass on Kepone (Chlorodecone) Distribution in a Northern New England Salt Marsh, Sediment-Water Laboratory Systems," *Environmental Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 34, 1989, 4, 1985, pp. 578–590-453-458.
- (120) Bolliger, R., Brandl, H., Hohener, P., Hanselmann, K. W., Crossland, N. O., and Bachofen, R., "Squeeze-Water Analysis for the Determination Wolff, C. J. M., "Fate and Biological Effects of Microbial Metabolites Pentachlorophenol in Lake Sediments—Comparison of Methods," *Outdoor Ponds*," *Environmental Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 37, 1992, 4, 1985, pp. 448–455-73-86.
- (121) Kriukov, Prichard, P. H., Monti, C. A., O'Neill, E. J., Connolly, J. P., and Manheim, F. T., "Extraction and Investigative Techniques for Study Ahearn, D. G., "Movement of Interstitial Waters of Unconsolidated Sediments: A Review, Kepone (Chlorodecone) Across an Undisturbed Sediment-Water Interface in Laboratory Systems," *The Dynamic Environment of the Ocean Floor*, K. A. Fanning *Environmental Toxicology and F. T. Manheim, eds., Lexington Books, Washington, DC, 1982, Chemistry*, 5, 1986, pp. 3–26-667-673.
- (122) Froelich, P. M., Klinkhammer, G. P., Bender, Cairns, M. L., Luedtke, N. A., Heath, G. R., Cullen, D., Dauphin, P., Hammond, D., Hartmann, B., and Maynard, Nebeker, A. V., "Early Oxidation Gakstatter, J. H., and Griffiths, W. L., "Toxicity of Organic Matter in Pelagic Copper-Spiked Sediments of the Eastern Equatorial Atlantic: Suboxic Diagenesis, to Freshwater Invertebrates," *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 43, 1979, 3, 1984, pp. 1075–1090-435-445.
- (123) Rosenfeld, J. Schuytema, G. S., Nelson, P. O., Malueg, K. W., Nebeker, A. V., Krawczyk, D. F., Ratcliff, A. K., "Ammonia Absorption and Gakstatter, J. H., "Toxicity of Cadmium in Nearshore Anoxic Sediments, Water and Sediment to *Daphnia magna*, *Environmental Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 24, 1979, 3, 1984, pp. 356–364-293-308.
- (124) Santschi, P. H., Nyffeler, V. P., O'Hara, P., Buehholz, M., and Broecker, Birge, W. J., Black, J., Westerman, S., "Radiotracer Uptake on the Seafloor: Results from the MANOP Chamber Deployments in the Eastern Pacific, and Francis, P., "Toxicity of sediment-associated metals to freshwater organisms: Biomonitoring procedures," *Deep-Sea Research Fate and Effects of Sediment-Bound Chemicals, Aquatic Systems*, Vol 31, Pergamon Press, NY, 1987, pp. 451–468-199-218.
- (125) Winger, Francis, P. V., C., Birge, W., and Lasier, P. Black, J., "A Vacuum-Operated Pore-Water Extractor for Estuarine "Effects of Cadmium-Enriched Sediment on Fish and Freshwater Sediments," *Amphibian Embryo-Larval Stage*," *Archives of Environmental Contamination Ecotoxicology and Toxicology Environmental Safety*, Vol 21, 1991, 8, 1984, pp. 321–324-378-387.
- (126) Brinkman, A. G., van Raaphorst, W., and Lijklema, L., "In Situ Sampling Burton, Jr., G. A., "Assessment of Interstitial Water from Lake Sediments," *Freshwater Sediment Toxicity*," *Hydrobiologia Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 92, 1982, pp. 659–663-10, 1991, 1585-1627.
- (127) Carignan, R., Jenne, E. A., and Lean, D. R. S., "Regeneration Zachara, J. M., *Factors Influencing the Sorption of Dissolved Substances in a Seasonally Anoxic Lake: The Relative Importance Metals. Fate and Effects of Processes Occurring Sediment-bound Chemicals in the Water Column and in the Sediments*," *Limnology and Oceanography Aquatic Systems*, Vol 36, 1991, Pergamon Press, NY, 1984, pp. 683–707-83-98.
- (128) Mayer, L. M., "Chemical Water Sampling in Lakes Nebeker, A. V., Onjukka, S. T., Cairns, M. A., and Sediments with Dialysis Bags," *Kraweztk, D. F., "Survival of Limnology Daphnia magna and Oceanography*, Vol 21, 1976, *Hyalella azteca* in Cadmium Spiked Water, *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 5, 1986, pp. 909–911-933-938.
- (129) Bottomley, E. Z., Karickhoff, S. W., and Bayly, I. L., "A Sediment Porewater Sampler Used in Root Zone Studies Morris, K. R., "Sorption Dynamics of the Submerged Macrophyte, Hydrophobic Pollutants in Sediment Suspensions," *Myriophyllum spicatum*," *Limnology Environmental Toxicology and Oceanography Chemistry*, Vol 29, 1984, 4, 1985a, pp. 671–673-469-479.
- (130) Hesslin, R. H., "An In-Situ Sampler for Close Interval Pore Water Studies," *Limnology Karickhoff, S. W., and Oceanography Morris, K. R., "Sorption of Hydrophobic Pollutants in Natural Sediments*," *Analysis, Chemistry, Biology* 2, Vol 21, 1976, 1985b, pp. 912–914-193-205.
- (131) Barnes, R., "Interstitial Water Sampling McLeese, D. W., Metcalfe, C. D., and Pezzack, D. S., "Uptake of PCB's from Sediment by Dialysis: Methodological Notes," *Limnology Nereis virens and Oceanography Crangon septemspinosa*," *Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology*, Vol 29, 1984, p. 667–9, 1980, pp. 507-518.
- (132) Carr, R. S., Williams, J. W., and Fragata, Muir, D. C. T. B., "Development G, Griff, N. D., Townsend, B. E., Matner, D. A., and Evaluation Lockhart, W. L., "Comparison of the Uptake and Bioconcentration of Fl-Muridone and Terbutryn by Rainbow Trout and *Chironomus tentans* in Sediment Pore and Water-Toxicity Test with the Polychaete Systems," *Dinophilus Gyrocitatus*," *Environmental Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 8, 1989, 11, 1982, pp. 533–543-595-602.
- (133) Skalski, C., "Laboratory Webster, G. R. B., Servos, M. R., Choudhry, G. G., Sarna, L. P., and In-Situ Sediment Toxicity Evaluations Using Early Life Stages Muir, G. C. G., "Methods for Dissolving Hydrophobics in Water for Studies of Their Interactions with Dissolved Organic Matter," *Advances in Chemistry Series, Presented at the 193rd National Meeting of the American Chemical Society, Division of Environmental Chemistry, Pimephales promelas*," MS Thesis, Wright State University, Dayton, OH, 1991- *Extended Abstracts*, 28, 1990, pp. 191-192.
- (134) Fisher, R., "Sediment Interstitial Water Toxicity Evaluations Using Nkedi-Kizza, P., Rao, P. S. C., Hornsby, A. G., "Influence of Organic Cosolvents on Sorption of Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals by Soils," *Daphnia magna*," MS Thesis, Wright State University, Dayton, OH, 1991-

- Environmental Science and Technology*, 19, 1985, pp. 975-979.
- (135) Huckins, J. N., Tubergen, M., Schults, D. W., Ferraro, S. P., Smith, L. M., Roberts, F. A., and Manuweera, G. Poindexter, C. K., "Semipermeable Membrane Devices Containing Model Lipid: A New Approach to Monitoring the Bioavailability of Lipophilic Contaminants. A Comparison of Methods for Collecting Interstitial Water for Trace Organic Compounds and Estimating Their Bioconcentration Potential," *Metals Analyses, Chemosphere Water Research, Vol 20, 1990, 26, 1992, pp. 533-552-989.995.*
- (136) Burtogess, R. M., Cantwell, M. G., Pelletier, M. C., Ho, K. T., Serbst, J. R., Cook, H. F., and Kuhn, A., Jr., "Sediment Toxicity Assessments Using In-Situ Assays," *Abstract "Development of a Toxicity Ide-Fntirsficat-Sion Evaluation Procedure for Characterizing Metyal Tofxicity in Marine Sediments," Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry-World Congress, Lisbon, Portugal, 1993-19(4), 2000, pp. 982-991.*
- (137) Skalski, C., Kane-Driscoll, S. K., and Burton, G. A., Jr., "Comparison Landrum, P. F., "A Comparison of Laboratory Equilibrium Partitioning and In-Situ Sediment Critical Body Residue Approaches for Predicting Toxicity-Responses of *Pimephales promelas* Larvae Sediment-Associated Fluoranthene to-Sediment," Freshwater Amphipods," *Abstract of the Annual Meeting of the Society of Environmental Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Seattle, WA, 16, 1997, pp. 2179-2186.*
- (138) Lappalainen, K. M., "Convection in Bottom Sediments Cole, F. A., Boese, B. L., Schwatz, R. C., Lanberson, J. D., and its Role in Material Exchange Between Water and Sediments," Dewit, T. H., "Effects of Storage on the Toxicity of Sediments Spiked with Fluoranthene to the Amphipod, *Hydrobiologia Rhexopynius abronius*," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 86, 1982, 19(3), 2000, pp. 105-108-744-748.*
- (139) U.S. Geological Survey, "Techniques of Water Resources Investigations of the U.S.G.S.," Chapter C1, Harold P. Guy, p. 58, *Laboratory Theory Schlekat, C. E., Scott, K. J., Swartz, R. C., Albrecht, B., Anrim, L., Doe, K., Douglas, S., Ferretti, J. A., Hansen, D. J., Moore, D. W., Mueller, C., and Methods for Tang, A., "Interlaboratory Comparison of a 10-Day Sediment Analysis: Book 5 Toxicity Test Method Using *Ampelisca Abdita*, Laboratory Analysis, Geological Survey, Arlington, VA, 1969- *Eohaustorius estuarius*, and *Leptocheirus plumulosus*," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 14, 1995, pp. 2163-2174.**
- (140) Black, C. A., ed., "Methods Johns, D. M., Gutjahr-Gobell, R., and Schauer, P., "Use of Soil Analysis," *Agronomy Monograph No. 9, American Society Bioenergetics to Investigate the Impact of A Dredged Material on Benthic Species: A Laboratory Study with Polychaetes and Black Rock Harbor Material.*" Field Verification Program, Prepared for USEPA and USCOE, monitored by WES, Vicksburg, MI, 19685.
- (141) Page, A. L., Miller, R. H., and Keeney, D. R. eds., "Methods Hayward, J. M. R., "Field Validation of Soil Analysis," Parts 1 and 2, American Society Long-Term Sediment Toxicity Tests," PhD thesis, University of Agronomy, Madison, WI, 1982- Missouri, Columbia, MO, 2003, in press.
- (142) American Public Health Association, "Standard Methods for the Examination U.S. Army Corps of Water and Wastewater," 16th ed., Washington, DC, 1985- Engineers, "Ecological Evaluation of Proposed Discharge of Dredged or Fill Material into Navigable Waters," Miscellaneous Paper D-76-17, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1976.
- (143) Keilty, T. J., White, D. S., and Landrum, P. F., "Sublethal Responses to Endrin in Sediment by Ingersoll, C. G., "Sediment Tests," *Limnodrilus hoffmeisteri* (Tubificidae) and in Mixed-Culture with *Stygodrilus heringianus* (Lumbriculidae)," *Aquatic Toxicology Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology, 2nd Edition, Vol 13, 1988, Rand, G. M., ed., Taylor and Francis, Washington, DC, 1995, pp. 251-270-231-255.*
- (144) McLeese, D. W., Metcalfe, C. D., Harkey, G. A., Landrum, P. F., and Pezzaek, D. S., "Uptake Kaine, S. J., "Comparison of PCB's from Sediment by Whole-Sediment Elutriate, and Pore-Water Exposures for Use in Assessing Sediment-Associated Organic Contaminants in Bioassays," *Nereis virens* and *Crangon septemspinosa*," *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Vol 9, 1980, 13, 1994, pp. 507-518-1315-1329.*
- (145) Kadeg, Burgess, R. D., M., Schweitzer, K. A., McKinney, R. A., and Pavlou, S., "Reconnaissance Field Study Verification of Equilibrium Partitioning: Nonpolar Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals," submitted by Battelle Washington Environmental Program Office, Washington, DC, for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Criteria Phelps, D. K., "Contaminated Marine Sediments: Water Column and Standards Division, Washington, DC, 1987- Interstitial Toxic Effects," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 12, 1993, pp. 127-138.*
- (146) Kadeg, Hoke, R. D., Pavlou, S., A., Giesy, J. P., Ankley, G. R., Newsted, J. L., and Duxbury, A. S., "Sediment Criteria Methodology Validation, Work Assignment 37, Task II: Elaboration Adams, J., "Toxicity of Sediment Normalization Theory for Nonpolar Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals," prepared by EnviroSphere Co., Inc., for Battelle Pacific Northwest Laboratories Sediments from Western Lake Erie and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Criteria and Standards Division, Washington DC, 1986- Maumee River at Toledo, Ohio, 1987: Implications for Current Dredged Material Disposal Practices," *Journal of Great Lakes Research, 16, 1990, pp. 457-470.*
- (147) Pavlou, Flegel, A.R., Risebrough, R. W., Anderson, B., Hunt, J., Anderson, S., Kadeg, R., Turner, A., and Marehlik, Oliver, J., Stephenson, M., "Sediment Quality Criteria Methodology Validation: Uncertainty Analysis of Sediment Normalization Theory for Nonpolar Organic Contaminants," EnviroSphere Co., Inc., for Environmental Protection Agency, Criteria and Standards Division, Washington DC, submitted by Battelle, Washington Environmental Pickard, R., "San Francisco Estuary Pilot Regional Monitoring Program Office, Washington, DC, 1987- Sediment Studies," San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board/State Water Resources Control Board, Oakland, CA, 1994.
- (148) Burford, J. R., and Bremmer, J. Daniels, S. A., Munawar, M., "Relationships Between and Mayfield, C. I., "An Improved Elutriation Technique for the Dentrification Capacities Bioassessment of Soils and Total Water-Soluble and Readily Decomposable Soil Organic Matter," *Soil Biology and Biochemistry, Vol 7, Sediment Contaminants," Hydrobiologia, 188/189, 1989, pp. 389-394-619-631.*
- (149) Cahill, Carr, R. A., S., and Autrey, A. D., "Improved Measurement Chapman, D. C., "Comparison of Solid-Phase and Pore-Water Approaches for Assessing the Organic Carbon Content Quality of Various River Components," Marine and Estuarine Sediments," *Journal of Freshwater Chemical Ecology, Vol 4, 1987, pp 219-223-7, 1992, pp. 19-30.*
- (150) Menzel, D. W., SETAC, "Porewater Toxicity Testing: Biological, Chemical, and Vaccaro, R. F., "The Measurement Ecological Considerations with a Review of Dissolved Organic Methods and Particulate Carbon in Sea Water," *Limnology Applications, and Oceanography, Vol 9, 1964, pp. 138-142-Recommendations for Future areas of Research," SETAC Technical Workshop, Society for Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Pensacola, FL, 2003, in press.*
- (151) Walkley, A., and Black, I. A., "An Examination Burgess, R. M., "Enrichment of the Degtjareff Method for Determining Soil Organic Matter Marine Sediment Colloids with Polychlorinated Biphenyls: Trends Resulting from PCB Solubility and a Proposed Modification of the Chromic Acid Titration Method," Chlorination," *Soil Environmental Science and Technology, Vol 37, 1934, 30(8), 1996, pp. 29-38-2556-2566.*
- (152) Yeomans, J. C., Carr, R. S. 1998. "Marine and Bremmer, J. M., "A Rapid and Precise Method for Routine Determination of Organic Carbon in Soil," estuarine porewater toxicity testing," *Communications Microscale Testing in Soil Science Aquatic Toxicology: Advances, Techniques, and Plant Analysis Practice, Vol 19, 1985; Wells, P. G., Lee, K., Blaise, C., eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1998, pp. 1467-1476-523-538.*
- (153) Burton, Jr., G. A., Rowland, C. D., Greenberg, F. M. S., Lavoie, D. R., Nordstrom, J. F., Eggert, L. M., "A Tiered, Weight-of-Evidence Approach

- for Evaluating Aquatic Ecosystems” *Particle Size Measurement*, John Wiley Aquatic Ecosystem Health and Sons, New York, NY 1975, 452 pp. Management, 2001, in press.
- (154) Singer, J. K., Anderson, J. B., Ledbetter, M. T., McCave, I., Sarda, N., Jones, K. P. N., and Wright, R., “An Assessment of Analytical Techniques for the Size Analysis of Fine-Grained Sediments,” Burton Jr., G. A., “Ammonia Variation in Sediments: Spatial, Temporal and Method-Related Effects,” *Journal of Sediment Petrology Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 58, 1988, 14, 1995, pp. 534–543–1499–1506.
- (155) Duncan, G. A., Bufflap, W. E., and Lattaie, G. G., “Size Analysis Procedures Used in the Sedimentology Laboratory, NWRI Manual,” National Allen, H. E., “Sediment Pore Water Collection Methods: A Review,” *Water Research Institute, Canada Centre for Inland Waters*, 1979–, 29, 1995, pp. 165–177.
- (156) Day, P. R., “Particle Fractionation and Particle-Size Analysis, Section 43-5: Hydrometer Method Adams, D. D., “Sampling Sediment Pore Water,” *CRC Handbook of Particle Size Analysis*, Monograph No. 9, American Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI, 1965, pp. 562–566. *Techniques for Sediment Sampling*, Mudroch, A. and MacKnight, S. D., eds., CRC Press, Inc., Boca Raton, FL, 1991.
- (157) Patrick, W. H., Jr., “Modification Carignan, R., and Lean, D. R. S., “Regeneration of Method Particle Size Analyses,” Proceedings Dissolved Substances in a Seasonally Anoxic Lake: The Relative Importance of Processes Occurring in the Soil Science Society of America, Vol 4, 1958, Water Column and in the Sediments,” *Limnology and Oceanography*, 36, 1991, pp. 366–367–683–703.
- (158) Rukavina, N. A., Bottomly, E. Z., and Duncan, G. A., “F.A.S.T.—Fast Analysis of Bayly, I. L., “A Sediment Texture,” Proceedings 13th Conference Pore Water Sampler Used in Root Zone Studies of Great Lakes Research, 1970; the Submerged Macrophyte, *Myriophyllum spicatum*,” *Limnology and Oceanography*, 29, 1984, pp. 274–281–671–673.
- (159) Sanford, R. B., Watson, P. G., and Swift, D. J. P., “Comparisons of Sieving and Settling Techniques Frickers, T. E., “A Multilevel, *in situ* Pore-Water Sampler for Size Analysis, Using a Benthos Rapid Sediment Analyzer,” Use in Intertidal Sediments and Laboratory Microcosms,” *Sedimentology*, Vol 17, 1971, *Limnology and Oceanography* 35, 1990, pp. 257–264–1381–1389.
- (160) Cooper, L. R., Haverland, R., Hendricks, D., Howes, B. L., Dacey, J. W. H., and Knisel, W., “Microtrac Particle Size Analyzer: An Alternative Particle Size Determination Method for Sediment and Soils,” Wakeham, S. G., “Effects of Sampling Technique on Measurements of Porewater Constituents in Salt Marsh Sediments,” *Soil Science Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 138, 30, 1985, pp. 138–146–221–227.
- (161) Sternberg, R. W., Mayer, L. M., “Chemical Water Sampling in Lakes and Creager, J. S., “Comparative Efficiencies of Size Analysis by Hydrometer Sediments with Dialysis Bags,” *Limnology and Pipette Methods*,” *Oceanography Journal of Sediment Petrology*, Vol 31, 1961, pp. 96–100–21, 1976, p. 909.
- (162) McCave, I. M., and Jarvis, J., “Use of the Model T Coulter® Counter in Size Analysis of Fine to Coarse Sand,” *Sedimentology*, Vol 20, 1973, Hesslein, R. H., “An In-situ Sampler for Close Interval Pore Water Studies,” 21, 1976, pp. 305–315–912–914.
- (163) Vanderploeg, H. A., “Effect of the Algal Length/Aperture Length Ratio on Coulter Analyses of Lake Seston,” Doig, L., and Liber, K., “Dialysis Minipeeper for Measuring Porewater Metal Concentrations in Laboratory Sediment Toxicity and Bioavailability Tests,” *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Environmental Toxicology and Aquatic Science*, Vol 38, 1981, *Chemistry* 19, 2000, pp. 912–916–2882–2889.
- (164) Swift, D. J. P., Schubel, J., Bennett E. R., Metcalfe, C. D., and Sheldon, R. W., “Size Analysis of Fine-Grained Suspended Sediments: A Review; Metcalfe, T. L., “Semi-permeable Membrane Devices (SPMDs) for Monitoring Organic Contaminants in the Otonabee River, Ontario,” *Journal of Sediment Petrology Chemosphere*, Vol 42, 1972, 33, 1996, pp. 122–134–363–375.
- (165) Leppard, G. G., Buffle, Axelman, J., De Vitore, R. R., and Perseet, Carina, N., Broman, D., “The Ultrastructure and Physical Characteristics Kristoffer, N., “Accumulation of a Distinctive Colloidal Iron Particulate Isolated from a Small Eutrophic Lake,” Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons In Semipermeable Membrane Devices And Caged Mussels (*Mytilus edulis* L.) in Relation to Water Column Phase Distribution,” *Archives Hydrobiology Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 13, 1988, 18(11), 1999, pp. 2405–4–2461.
- (166) Burnison, B., Huckins, J. N., Ruvwefw, M. Q., Mnuqwwe, F. K., and Leppard, G. G., “Isolation “Semipermeable Membrane Devices Containing Model Lipid: A New Approach to Monitoring the Bioavailability of Colloidal Fibrils from Lake Water by Physical Separation Techniques,” *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Lipophilic Contaminants and Aquatic Science Estimating Their Bioconcentration Potential*,” *Chemosphere*, Vol 40, 20, 1990, pp. 373–381–533–552.
- (167) Leppard, Burton, Jr., G. G., “The Fibrillar Matrix Component A., Rowland, C., Lavoie, D., and Nordstrom, N., “Assessment of Lacustrine Biofilms,” *Water Research*, Vol 20, 1986, pp. 697–702. *in situ* Stressors and Sediment Toxicity in the Lower Housatonic River,” Final Report to R.F. Weston, Manchester, NH, 1999.
- (168) Leppard, G. G., Massalski, A., Carignan, R., St. Pierre, S., and Lean, D. S., Gachter, R., “Electron-Opaque Microscopic Fibrils “Use of Diffusion Samplers in Lakes: Their Demonstration, Their Biological Derivation and Their Potential Significance in the Redistribution Oligotrophic Lake Sediments: Effects of Cations,” Free Oxygen in Sampler Material,” *Protoptasma Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 92, 1977, 39, 1994, pp. 289–309–468–474.
- (169) Kaddah, M., Call, D. J., Christine, N., Polkinghorne, T. P., Markee, L. T., “The Hydrometer Method for Detailed Particle-Size Analysis. I: Graphical Interpretation of Hydrometer Readings Brooke, D. L., Geiger, J. W., Gorsuch, K., and Test of Method,” Robillard, N., “Silver Toxicity to *Chironomus tentans* in Two Freshwater Sediments,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 118, 1974, 18(1), 1999, pp. 102–108–30–39.
- (170) Stein, Stewart, A. R., “Rapid Grain-Size Analyses and Malley, D.F., “Effect of Clay Metal Mixture (Cu, Zn, Pb, and Silt Fraction by Sedigraph 5000D: Comparison with Coulter Counter Ni) on Cadmium Partitioning in Littoral Sediments and Atterberg Methods,” its Accumulation by the Freshwater Macrophyte *Journal of Sediment Petrology Eriocaulon septangulare*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 55, 1985, 18(3), 1999, pp. 590–615–436–447.
- (171) Welch, N. H., Allen, P. B., Skalski, C., and Galinds, D. J., “Particle-Size Analysis by Pipette Burton, G. A., “Laboratory and Sedigraph,” *Fin situ Sediment Toxicity Evaluations Using Early Life Stages of Environmental Quality*, Vol 8, 1979, pp. 543–546. *Pimephales promelas*,” M.S. thesis, Wright State University, Dayton, OH, 1991.
- (172) Chao, Carr, R. S., Williams, J. W., and Fragata, C. T. F., B., “Development and Zhou, L., “Extraction Techniques for Selective Dissolution Evaluation of Amorphous Iron Oxides from Soils and Sediments,” a Novel Marine Sediment Pore Water Toxicity Test with the Polychaete *Soil Science Society of America Journal Dinophilus girociliatus*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 47, 1983, 8, 1989, pp. 225–232–533–543.
- (173) Creechius, E. A., Jenne, E. A., Chin, Y., and Anthony, J. S., “Sediment Quality Criteria for Metals: Optimization of Extraction Methods for Determining the Quantity of Sorbents Gschwend, P. M., “The Abundance, Distribution, and Adsorbed Metals Configuration of Pore Water Organic Colloids in Sediments,” Battelle Report to USEPA, Criteria and Standards Division, Washington, DC, 1987. Recent Sediment,” *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 55, 1991, pp. 1309–1317.
- (174) Kersten, Simon, N. S., Kennedy, M. M., and Forstner, U., “Cadmium Associations in Freshwater Massoni, C. S., “Evaluation and Marine Sediment,”

- Cadmium in Use of a Diffusion Controlled Sampler for Determining Chemical and Dissolved Oxygen Gradients at the Aquatic Environment Sediment-Water Interface.* *Hydrobiologia*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY, 1987, 126, 1985, pp. 51–88–135–141.
- (175) Jenne, E. A., “Controls on Mn, Fe, Co, Ni, Ca, Frazier, B. E., Naimo, T. J., and Zn Concentrations in Soils Sandheinrich, M. B., “Temporal and Water: The Significant Role Vertical Distribution of Hydrous Mn Total Ammonia Nitrogen and Fe Oxides,” Un-Ionized Ammonia Nitrogen in Sediment Pore Water from the Upper Mississippi River,” *Advanced Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 73, 1968; 15, 1996, pp. 337–387–92–99.
- (176) Jenne, E. A., “Trace Element Sorption Carignan, R., “Interstitial Water Sampling by Sediments Dialysis: Methodological Notes,” *Limnology and Soil Sites and Processes*,” *Oceanography Symposium on Molybdenum in the Environment*, Vol 2, M. Dekker, Inc., New York, NY, 1977, 29, 1984, pp. 415–553–667–670.
- (177) Jenne, E. A., “Sediment Quality Criteria U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “Methods for Metals, II- Review Measuring the Acute Toxicity of Methods for Quantitative Determination of Important Adsorbants Effluents and Sorbed Metals in Sediments,” Battelle Report Receiving Waters to USEPA, Criteria Freshwater and Standards Division, Washington, DC, 1987. Marine Organisms,” Fourth edition, USEPA-600/4-90/027F, Cincinnati, OH, 1991.
- (178) Lake, D. L., Kirk, P., Ho, K. T., McKinney, R., Kuhn, A., Pelletier, M., and Lester, J., “Fractionation, Characterization, and Speciation Burgess, R., “Identification of Heavy Metals Acute Toxicants in Sewage Sludge and Sludge Amended Soils: A Review,” New Bedford Harbor Sediments,” *Journal of Environmental Quality Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 13, 1984, 16(3), 1997, pp. 175–183–551–558.
- (179) Maher, W. A., “Evaluation Carr, R. S., and Chapman, D. C., “Comparison of a Sequential Extraction Scheme to Study Associations of Trace Elements in Methods for Conducting Marine and Estuarine Sediment Porewater Toxicity Tests—Extraction, Storage, and Oceanic Sediments,” Handling Techniques,” *Bulletin Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, Vol 32, 1984, p. 339–28, 1995, pp. 69–77.
- (180) O’Donnel, J. R., Kaplan, B. M., and Allen, H. Hoffman, E., “Bioavailability Tributyltin Analysis: Clarification of Trace Metals in Natural Waters,” *Aquatic Toxicology Interstitial Water Extraction Methods and Hazard Assessment: Seventh Symposium, ASTM-STP 854 Sample Storage—Interim*,” *DMMP Clarification Paper, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1985, pp. 485–501. Dredged Material Management Program, USEPA Region 10, Seattle, WA, 1998.*
- (181) Salomons, W., Watson, P. G., Frickers, P., and Forstner, U., “Trace Metal Analysis on Polluted Sediment, II: Evaluation Goodchild, C., “Spatial and Seasonal Variations in the Chemistry of Environmental Impact,” Sediment Interstitial Waters in the Tamar Estuary,” *Environmental Technology Letters Estuaries and Coastal Shelf Science*, Vol 1, 1980; 21, 1985, pp. 506–517–105–119.
- (182) Fiszman, M., Pfeiffer, W. C., Hulbert, M. H., and Drude de Lacerda, L., “Comparison Brindel, M. P., “Effects of Methods Used for Extraction and Geochemical Distribution Sample Handling on the Composition of Heavy Metals in Bottom Sediments from Sepetiba Bay,” Marine Sedimentary Pore Water,” *Environmental Technology Letters Geological Society of America, Bulletin*, Vol 5, 1984, 86, 1975, pp. 567–575–109–110.
- (183) Malo, Bray, J. T., Bricker, O. P., and Troup, B. A., “Partial Extraction N., “Phosphate in Interstitial Waters of Metals from Aquatic Sediments,” Anoxic Sediments: Oxidation Effects During Sampling Procedure,” *Environmental Science and Technology Science*, Vol 11, 1977, 180, 1973, pp. 277–282–1362–1364.
- (184) Khalid, R. A., Gambrell, R., Lyons, W. B., Gaudette, J., and Patrick, W., Jr., “Chemical Availability of Cadmium Smith, G., “Pore Water Sampling in Mississippi River Sediment,” Anoxic Carbonate Sediments: Oxidation Artifacts,” *Journal of Environmental Quality Nature*, Vol 10, 1981, 277, 1979, pp. 523–528–48–49.
- (185) Tessier, A., Campbell, D., Allen, H. E., Fu, G., and Bisson, M., “Sequential Extraction Procedure Deng, B., “Analysis of Acid-Volatile Sulfide (AVS) and Simultaneously Extracted Metals (SEM) for the Speciation Estimation of Particulate Trace Metals,” Potential Toxicity in Aquatic Sediments,” *Analytical Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 51, 1979; 12, 1993, pp. 844–851–1441–1453.
- (186) Jackson, M. L., Soil Chemical Troup, B. N., Bricker, O. P., and Bray, J. T., “Oxidation Effect on the Analysis of Iron in the Interstitial Water of Recent Anoxic Sediments,” *Nature, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1958-249, 1974, p. 237.*
- (187) Bott, T. L., “Benthic Community Metabolism in Four Temperate Stream Systems: An Inter-Biome Comparison Landrum, P. F., Nihart, S. R., Eadie, B. J., and Evaluation Herche, L. R., “Reduction in Bioavailability of Organic Contaminants to the River Continuum Concept,” Amphipod *HPontoporeia hoyi* by Dissolved Organic Matter of Sediment Interstitial Waters,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 123, 1985; 6, 1987, pp. 3–45–11–20.
- (188) Davis, W. S., Fay, L. A., Giesy, J. P., Graney, R. L., Newstead, J. L., Rosiu, C. J., Benda, A., Kreis, Jr., R. G., and Herdendorf, C. E., “Overview Horvath, F. J., “Comparison of USEPA/CLEAR Lake Erie Three Sediment Oxygen Demand Investigations During 1979,” Bioassay Methods Using Detroit River Sediments,” *Journal of Great Lakes Research Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 13, 1987, 7, 1988, pp. 731–737–483–493.
- (189) Davis, W. S., Brosnan, T. M., Ankley, G. T., Katko, A., and Sykes, R. M., “Use Arthur, J. W., “Identification of Benthic Oxygen Flux Measurements Ammonia as a Major Sediment-Associated Toxicant in Wasteload Allocation Studies,” the Lower Fox River and Green Bay, Wisconsin,” *Chemical Environmental Toxicology and Biological Characterization of Sludges, Sediments, Dredge Soils, and Drilling Muds, ASTM-STP 976 Chemistry, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1988; 9, 1990, pp. 450–462–313–322.*
- (190) Schubauer-Berigan, M. K., and Ankley, G. G., T., “The Contribution of Ammonia, Metals and Ahlert, W. K., “In Situ Sediment Oxygen Demand Determination in Nonpolar Organic Compounds to the Passage Toxicity of Sediment Interstitial Water from an Illinois River (NJ) During the Late Summer/Early Fall 1983,” Tributary,” *Water Research Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 19, 1985; 10, 1991, pp. 1141–1144–925–939.
- (191) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “Test Methods Ankley, G. T. and Schubauer-Berigan, M. K., “Comparison of Techniques for Evaluating Solid Waste,” USEPA, Office the Isolation of Solid Waste and Emergency Response, Washington, DC, 1986. Pore Water for Sediment Toxicity Testing,” *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, 27, 1994, pp. 507–512.
- (192) Haddock, J. D., Landrum, P. F., Brownawell, B. J., and Giesy, Farrington, J. P., “Extraction Efficiency W., “Biogeochemistry of Anthracene from Sediments,” PCBs in Interstitial Waters of a Coastal Marine Sediment,” *Analytical Chemistry Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, Vol 55, 1983; 50, 1986, pp. 1197–1200–157–169.
- (193) Sporstoel, S., Gjos, N., Sasson-Brickson, G., and Carlberg, Burton, Jr., G. E., “Extraction Efficiencies for Organic Compounds Found in Aquatic Sediments,” A., “In situ and Laboratory Sediment Toxicity Testing with *Analytical Chimica Acta Ceriodaphnia dubia*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 151, 1983; 10, 1991, pp. 231–235–201–207.
- (194) Burton, G. A., Jr., Stemmer, B. L., Winks, K. L., Ross, P. E., and Burnett, L. C., “A Multitrophic Level Evaluation of Sediment Toxicity in Waukegan and Indiana Harbors,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 8, 1989, pp. 1057–1066. EPRI, 2000, MARS model, Beta v.1, 2000.
- (195) Pastorok, R. A., Saager, P. M., Sweerts, J. P., and Becker, D. S., “Comparative Sensitivity Ellermeijer, H. J., “A Simple Pore-Water Sampler for Coarse, Sandy Sediments of Sediment Toxicity Bioassays at Three Superfund Sites in Puget Sound,” Low Porosity,” *Aquatic Toxicology Limnology*

- and Risk Assessment, *ASTM STP 1096 Oceanography*, Vol 13, W. G. Landis and W. H. van der Schalie, eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 35, 1990, pp. 123–139, 747–751.
- (196) Ingersoll, C. G., and Nelson, M. K., “Testing Sediment Toxicity with Reeburgh, W. S., “An Improved Interstitial Water Sampler,” *Hyalella azteca* (Amphipoda) *Limnology and Chironomus riparius* (Diptera),” *Aquatic Toxicology and Risk Assessment, ASTM STP 1096 Oceanography*, Vol 13, W. G. Landis and W. H. van der Schalie, eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1990, 12, 1967, pp. 93–109, 163–165.
- (197) Carr, R. S., Kalil, E. K., and Chapman, D. C., “Comparison of Solid-Phase and Pore-Water Approaches Goldhaker, M., “A Sediment Squeezer for Assessing the Quality Removal of Marine and Estuarine Sediments,” *Pore Waters without Air Contact*,” *Chemical Ecology Journal of Sediment Petrology*, Vol 7, 1992, 43, 1973, pp. 19–30, 554–557.
- (198) Johns, D. M., Pastorak, Jahnke, R. A., and Ginn, T. C., “A Sublethal Sediment Toxicity Test Using Juvenile *Neanthes* sp. (Polychaeta; Nereidae),” *Aquatic Toxicology Simple, Reliable, and Risk Assessment; Inexpensive Pore-Water Sampler*,” *ASTM STP H24*, Vol 14, M. A. Mayes *Limnology and M. G. Barron*, eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1991, *Oceanography*, 33, 1988, pp. 280–293, 483–487.
- (199) Mudroch, A., Bender, M., Martin, W., Hess, J., Sayles, F., Ball, L., and MacKnight, S. D., *CRC Handbook of Techniques Lambert, C., “A Whole-Core Squeezer for Aquatic Sediments Sampling Interfacial Pore-Water Sampling*,” *Limnology and Oceanography*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1991, 210 pp. 32, 1987, pp. 1214–1225.
- (200) Landrum, Kriukov, P. F., Eadie, B. J., A., and Faust, W. R., “Variation in the Bioavailability Manheim, F. T., “Extractions and Investigative Techniques for Study of Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons to the Amphipod Interstitial Waters of Unconsolidated Sediments: A Review,” *Diporeia* (spp.) with Sediment Aging,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry The Dynamic Environment of the Ocean Floor*, Vol 11, 1992, Fanning, K. A., and Manheim, F. T., eds., Lexington Books, Washington DC, 1982, pp. H97–1208, 3–26.
- (201) Ditsworth, Froelich, P. M., Klinkhammer, G. P., Bender, M. L., Luedtke, N. A., Heath, G. R., Schults, D. W., and Jones, J. K. Cullen, D., Dauphin, P., “Preparation Hammond, D., Hartmann, B., and Maynard, V., “Early Oxidation of Benthic Substrates for Sediment Toxicity Testing,” *Organic Matter in Pelagic Sediments of the Eastern Equatorial Atlantic: Suboxic Diagenesis*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, Vol 9, 1990, 43, 1979, pp. 1523–1529, 1075–1090.
- (202) Swartz, R. Mangelsdorf, P. C., Schults, D. W., DeWitt, T. H., Ditsworth, G. R., and Lambertson, J. O., “Toxicity of Fluoranthene Wilson, T. R. S., “Potassium Enrichments in Sediment to Marine Amphipods: A Test Interstitial Waters of the Equilibrium Partitioning Approach to Sediment Quality Criteria,” *Recent Marine Sediments*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Science*, Vol 9, 1990, pp. 1071–1080, 165, 1969, p. 171.
- (203) Dewitt, Sayles, F. L., Wilson, T. H., Ozrethich, R. J., Swartz, R. C., Lamberson, J. O., Schults, S., Hume, D. W., Ditsworth, G. R., Jones, J. K. P., Hoselton, L., N., and Smith, L. M., “The Influence of Organic Matter Quality on the Toxicity Mangelsdorf, Jr., P. C., “In situ Sampler for Marine Sedimentary Pore Waters: Evidence for Potassium Depletion and Partitioning of the Sediment-Associated Fluoranthene,” *Calcium Enrichment*,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Science*, Vol 16, 1992, 180, 1973, pp. 401–407, 154–156.
- (204) Sasson-Briekson, G., and Burton, G. A., “In Situ Laboratory Sediment Toxicity Testing with Rosenfeld, J. K., “Ammonia Absorption in Nearshore Anoxic Sediments,” *Ceriodaphnia dubia*,” *Environmental Toxicology Limnology and Chemistry*, Vol 10, 1991, *Oceanography* 24, 1979, pp. 201–207, 356–364.
- (205) Zar, J. Santschi, P. H., Lenhart, J., and Honeyman, B. D., “Heterogeneous Processes Affecting Trace Contaminant Distribution in Estuaries: The Role of Natural Organic Matter,” *Biostatistical Analysis Marine Chemistry, 2nd Ed., Prentice-Hall, Inc., NJ, 1984, 718 p. 58, 1997, pp. 99–125.*
- (206) Schuytema, G. S., Nelson, P. O., Malueg, Bollinger, R., Brandl, H., Hohener, P., Hanselmann, K. W., Nebeker, A. V., Krawczyk, D. F., Ratcliff, A. K., and Gakstatter, J. H., “Toxicity Bachofen, R., “Squeeze-Water Analysis for the Determination of Cadmium Microbial Metabolites in Water and Sediment Slurries to Lake Sediments-Comparison of Methods,” *Daphnia magna*,” *Environmental Toxicology Limnology and Chemistry Oceanography*, Vol 3, 1984, 37, 1992, pp. 293–308, 448–455.
- (207) Francis, P. C., Birge, W., Knezovitch, J. P., and Black, J., “Effects Harrison, F. L., “A New Method for Determining the Concentration of Cadmium-Enriched Volatile Organic Compounds in Sediment on Fish and Amphibian Embryo-Larval Stages,” *Interstitial Water*,” *Ecotoxicology and Bulletin of Environmental Safety Contamination and Toxicology*, Vol 8, 1984, 38, 1987, pp. 378–387, 937–940.
- (208) Keilty, T. J., White, D. S., Winger, P. V., and Landrum, Lassier, P. F., “Sublethal Responses to Endrin in Sediment by J., “A Vacuum-Operated Porewater Extractor for Estuarine and Freshwater Sediments,” *Stylodrilus heringianus* (Lumbriculidae) as Measured by a 137 Cesium Marker Layer Technique,” *Aquatic Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology*, Vol 13, 1988, 21, 1991, pp. 227–250, 321–324.
- (209) Keilty, T. J., White, D. S., Brinkman, A. G., van Raaphorst, W., and Landrum, P. F., “Short-Term Lethality and Sediment Avoidance Assays with Endrin-Contaminated Sediment and Two Oligochaetes Lijklema, L., “In situ Sampling of Interstitial Water from Lake Michigan,” *Sediments*,” *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology Hydrobiologia*, Vol 17, 1988, 92, 1982, pp. 95–101, 659–663.
- (210) Landrum, P. F., and Faust, W. R., “Effect of Variation in U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “Contaminated Sediment Composition on the Uptake Rate Coefficient for Selected PCB and PAH Cogeners by the Amphipod, Management Strategy,” *Diporeia* sp.,” *USEPA 823-R-98-001 Aquatic Toxicology and Risk Assessment, ASTM STP H24, M. A. Mayes and M. G. Barron*, eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1991, pp. 263–279. *Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1998.*
- (211) Foster, G. D., Baksi, S. M., and Means, J. C., “Bioaccumulation Black, C. A., ed., “Methods of Trace Organic Contaminants From Sediment by Baltic Clams (*Macoma balthica*) and Soft-Shell Clams (*Mya arenaria*),” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 6, 1987, pp. 969–976. *Soil Analysis*,” *American Society of Agronomy, Agronomy Monograph No. 9, Madison, WI, 1965.*
- (212) Birge, W. J., Black, J., Westerman, S., and Francis, P., “Toxicity U.S. Geological Survey, “Techniques of Sediment-Associated Metals to Freshwater Organisms: Biomonitoring Procedures,” *Fate and Effects Water—Resources Investigations of Sediment-Bound Chemicals in Aquatic Systems*; Pergamon Press, New York, NY, 1987, pp. 199–218. the U.S.G.S. Chp. C1,” Harold P. Guy, *Laboratory Theory and Methods for Sediment Analysis*; Book 5, *Laboratory Analysis*, U.S.G.S. Arlington, VA, 1969, p. 58.
- (213) Suedel, B. C., Rodgers, J. Plumb, R. H., Jr., “Procedures for Handling and Clifford, P. A., “Bioavailability Chemical Analysis of Fluoranthene in Freshwater Sediment Toxicity Tests,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 12, 1993, pp. 155–165. *Water Sample*,” *Environmental Protection Agency/Corps of Engineers Technical Committee on Criteria for Dredged and Fill Material*, Contract USEPA-4805572010, 1981.
- (214) Tsushimoto, G., Matsumura, F., Page, A. L., Miller, R. H., and Sage, Keeney, D. R., “Fate eds., “Methods of 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin (TCDD) in an Outdoor Pond Soil Analysis Parts 1 and in Model Aquatic Ecosystems,” *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 1, 1982, pp. 61–68. 2,” *Amer. Soc. Agron., Madison, WI, 1982.*
- (215) Lay, J. P., Schauerte, W., Klein, W., and Korte, F., “Influence U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, “1999 Update of Tetrachloroethylene on the Biota of Aquatic Systems: Toxicity to Phyto- and Zooplankton Species in Compartments of a Natural Pond,” *Ambient Water Quality Criteria for*



- Ammonia," *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology* USEPA-823-F-99-013, Vol 13, 1984, pp. 135–142. Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1999.
- (216) Stephenson, H. O., Kuhn, A., Pelletier, M. C., Burgess, R. R., M., and Kane, D. F., "Persistence and Effects of Helminths in Small Enclosures in Ponds," *Marine Waters and Sediments*, *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, Vol 13, 1984, Chemistry, 18(2), 1999, pp. 313–326–207–212.
- (217) O'Neill, E. J., Monti, C. A., Prichard, P. H., Bourquin, Gonzalez, A. W., and Ahearn, D. G., "Effects of Lugworms and Seagrass on Kepone (Chlordecone) Distribution in Sediment-Water M., "A Laboratory-Systems," Formulated Sediment Incorporating Synthetic Acid Volatile Sulfide," *Abstr. PH135, Annu. Meet. Society for Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 4, 1985, pp. 453–458. Vancouver, BC, 1995, p. 310.
- (218) Crossland, N. O., and Wolff, C. J. M., "Fate and Biological Effects of Pentachlorophenol in Outdoor Ponds," Jackson, M. L., *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* Soil Chemical Analysis, Vol 4, 1985, pp. 73–86. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1985.
- (219) Prichard, P. H., Monti, C. A., O'Neill, E. J., Connolly, J. P., and Ahearn, D. G., "Movement of Kepone (Chlordecone) Across an Undisturbed Sediment-Water Interface in U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Chemistry Laboratory-Systems," *Environmental Toxicology Manual for Bottom Sediments and Chemistry Elutriate Testing*, "USEPA-905-4-79-014 (NTIS PB 294596), Vol 5, 1986, pp. 647–657. USEPA Region V, Chicago, IL, 1979.
- (220) Gerould, S., and Gloss, S. P., "Mayfly-Mediated Sorption U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste (SW-846): Physical/Chemical Methods," U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Toxicants into Sediments," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 5, 1986, pp. 667–673. Solid Waste, Washington, DC, 1986.
- (221) McLeese, D. Murray, J. W., Metcalfe, C. D., Grunamanis, V., and Pezzack, D. S., "Uptake of PCBs from Sediment by Saanich Inlet, "Nereis virens and Crangon septemspinosa," *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, Vol 9, 1980; *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 42, 1978, pp. 507–518–1011–1026.
- (222) Greaves, M. P., Davies, H. A., Marsh, J. A. P., Kristensen, E., and Wingfield, G. I., "Effects of Blackburn, T. H., "The Fate of Pesticides on Soil Microflora Using Dalapon as an Example," *Organic Carbon and Nitrogen in Experimental Marine Sediment Systems: Influence of Bioturbation and Anoxia*, *Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, Marine Research Vol 10, 1981, 45, 1987, pp. 437–439–231–257.
- (223) Tagatz, M. E., Plaia, G. R., Sims, J. L., and Deans, C. H., "Toxicity of Dibutyl Phthalate Contaminated Sediment to Laboratory and Field Colonized Estuarine Benthic Communities," *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, Vol 37, 1986, pp. 141–150. Pore Water Ammonia Toxicity in Dredged Material Bioassays," Miscellaneous Paper D-95-3, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1995a.
- (224) Swindoll, C. M., Moore, D. W., Bridges, T. S., Gray, B. R., and Applehans, F. Duke, B. M., "Factors Influencing the Accumulation of Sediment-Sorbed Hexachlorobiphenyl by Midge Larvae," Ammonia Toxicity During Sediment Bioassays with the Estuarine Amphipod *Leptocheirus plumulosus*," Vol 39, 1987, *Environ Toxicol Chem*, 5, 1997, pp. 1055–1062–1020–1027.
- (225) Häkanson, Sims, J. L., "Sediment Sampling and Moore, D. W., "Risk of Pore Water Hydrogen Sulfide Toxicity in Different Aquatic Environments: Statistical Aspects," *Water Resource Research*, Vol 20, 1984, pp. 41–46. Dredged Material Bioassays," Miscellaneous Paper D-95-4, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1995b.
- (226) Webster, G. R. B., Servos, M. R., Choudhry, G. G., Sarna, L. P., and Muir, G. C. G., "Methods for Dissolving Hydrophobics Whitfield, M., "The Hydrolysis of Ammonium Ions in Water for Studies Sea Water—Experimental Confirmation of Their Interactions with Dissolved Organic Matter," Presented Predicted Constants at 193rd National Meeting One Atmosphere Pressure," *Journal of the American Chemical Society, Division Marine Biological Association of Environmental Chemistry, Advances in Chemistry Series the United Kingdom, Extended Abstracts*, Vol 27, 1990; 58, 1978, pp. 191–192–781–787.
- (227) Nkedi-Kizza, P., Rao, P. S., Thurston, R. V., Russo, R. C., and Hornsby, A. G., "Influence of Vinogradov, G. A., "Ammonia Toxicity to fishes. Effect of Organic Cosolvents pH on Sorption of Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals by Soils," the Unionized Ammonia Species," *Environmental Science and Technology*, Vol 19, 1985; 15, 1981, pp. 975–979–837–840.
- (228) Ziegenfuss, P. S., and Adams, W., "A Method American Public Health Association (APHA), *Standard Methods for Assessing the Acute Toxicity Examination of Contaminated Sediments Water and Soils with Daphnia magna and Chironomus tentans*," Report No. MSL-4549, ESC-EAG-M-85-01, Monsanto Corp., St. Louis, MO, 1985. Wastewater, 18th ed, Washington, DC, 1995.
- (229) Titus, J. A., Bower, and Pfister, R. M., "Bacterial and Cadmium Interactions in Natural and Laboratory Model Aquatic Systems," Holm-Hansen, *Archives Canadian Journal of Environmental Contamination Fisheries and Toxicology Aquatic Sciences*, Vol 13, 1984; 37, 1980, pp. 271–277. 794–798.
- (230) Nebeker, A. V., Onjukka, S. T., Cairns, M. A., and Krawczyk, D. Gustaffson, O., Haghesta, F., "Survival of Chan, C., MacFarlane, J., and Gschwend, P. M., "Quantification of *Daphnia magna* the Dilute Sedimentary Soot Phase: Implication for PAH Speciation and Bioavailability," *Hyalella azteca* in Cadmium Spiked Water," *Environmental Toxicology Environmental Science and Chemistry Technology*, Vol 5, 1986; 31(1), 1997, pp. 933–938. 203–209.
- (231) Burton, G. Schumacher, B. A., Lazorchak, J. M., Waller, W. T., and Lanza, G. R., "Arsenic Toxicity Changes in "Methods for the Presence Determination of Sediment," *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination Total Organic Carbon (TOC) in Soils and Toxicology Sediments*," NCEA-C-1282, ERASC-001, Vol 38, 1987, pp. 491–499. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Science Division, Las Vegas, NV, 2002, p. 23.
- (232) Knezovich, J. P., and Harrison, F. L., "The Bioavailability of Leonard, E., "Standard Operating Procedures for Total Organic Carbon Analysis of Sediment-Sorbed Chlorobenzenes to Larvae Sediment Samples," U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of the Midge-Chironomus decorus," *Ecotoxicology Research and Development, Environmental Safety*, Vol 15, 1988, pp. 226–241. Research Laboratory, Duluth, MN, 1991.
- (233) Di Toro, D. M., Zarba, C. J., Hansen, D. J., Berry, W. J., Swartz, R. W., Cowna, C. E., Pavlou, S. P., Allen, H. E., Thomas, N. A., and Paquin, P. R., "Technical Basis for Establishing Sediment Quality Criteria for Nonionic Organic Chemicals Using Equilibrium Partitioning," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 10, 1991, pp. 1541–1583. Carbon in Sediment (Lloyd Kahn Method)," USEPA Region II, Environmental Services Division, Monitoring Management Branch, Edison, NJ, July 27, 1988.
- (234) Burton, G. A., Jr., "Assessing the Toxicity of Freshwater Sediments," *Environmental Toxicology Nelson, D. W., and Sommers, L. E., "Total Carbon, Organic Carbon, and Chemistry Organic Matter*," *Methods of Soil Analysis: Part 3 Chemical Methods*, Vol 10, 1991, pp. 1585–1627. Sparks, D. L., et al. eds., Soil Science Society of America, Inc., Madison, WI, 1996.
- (235) Jenne, E. A., and Zachara, J. Yamamuro, M., "Factors Influencing the Sorption of Metals," *Fate and Effects of Kayanne, H., "Rapid Direct Determination of Sediment-Bound Chemicals Organic Carbon and Nitrogen in Aquatic Systems*, K. L. Dickson, A. W. Maki, Carbonate-Bearing

- Sediments with a Yanaco MT-5 CHN Analyzer," *Limnology and Oceanography*, W. A. Brungs, eds., Pergamon Press, Elmsford, NY, 1984, *Oceanography*, 40, 1995, pp. 83–98–1001-1005.
- (236) DeWitt, T. H., Swartz, R. C., Weliky, K., Suess, E., and Lamberson, J. O., "Measuring the Acute Toxicity of Estuarine Sediments," Ungerer, C. A., "Problems with Accurate Carbon Measurements in Marine Sediments and Particulate in Seawater: A New Approach," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Oceanography*, Vol 8, 1989; 28, 1983, pp. 1035–1048–1252-1259.
- (237) Di Toro, D. M., Horzempa, L. M., Casey, M. M., Hedges, J. I., and Richardson, W., "Reversible Stern, J. H., "Carbon and Resistant Components Nitrogen Determination of PCB Adsorption-Desorption: Adsorbent Concentration Effects," Carbonate-Containing Solids," *Journal of Great Lakes Research* *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 8, 1982, 29, 1984, pp. 336–349–657-663.
- (238) Karickhoff, S., Hoss, S., Haitzer, M., Traunspurger, W., and Morris, K. R., "Sorption Dynamics Steinberg, C. E. W., "Growth and Fertility of Hydrophobic Pollutants *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Nematoda) in Unpolluted Freshwater Sediment-Susp: Response to Particle Size Distributions and Organic Content," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 4, 1985; 18(12), 1999, pp. 469–479–2921-2925.
- (239) Karickhoff, S. W., "Sorption of Hydrophobic Pollutants PSEP, "Recommended Guidelines for Measuring Selected Environmental Variables in Natural Sediments," *Contaminants Puget Sound*, " Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10, Office of Puget Sound, Seattle, WA and Sediments, Vol 2, Analysis, Chemistry, Biology, Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MI, 1986, pp. 193–205–Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA; Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA, 1996.
- (240) Landrum, P. F., "Bioavailability Word, J. Q., Ward, J. A., Franklin, L. M., Cullinan, V. I., and Toxicokinetics Kiesser, S. L., "Evaluation of Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons Sorbed to Sediments the Equilibrium Partitioning Theory for Estimating the Toxicity of the Nonpolar Organic Compound DDT to the Sediment Dwelling Amphipod; *Pontoporeia hoyi* *Rhepoxynius abronius*," *Environmental Science and Technology*, Vol 23, 1989, pp. 585–588–Battelle/Marine Research Laboratory Report, Task 1, WA56, Sequim, WA, 1987, p. 60.
- (241) International Joint Commission, "Procedures for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediment Problems in the Great Lakes," IJC, Windsor, Ont., Canada, 1988, p. 140–Allen, T., *Particle Size Measurement*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1975, pp. 452.
- (242) Landrum, Singer, J. K., Anderson, J. B., Ledbetter, M. T., McCave, I. N., Jones, K. P. F., N., and Poore, Wright, R., "Toxicokinetics "An Assessment of Selected Xenobiotics in Analytical Techniques for the Size Analysis of Fine-Grained Sediments," *Hexagenia limbata*," *Journal of Great Lakes Research Sediment Petrology*, Vol 14, 58, 1988, pp. 427–437–534-543.
- (243) American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, Day, P. R., "Particle Fractionation and Water Pollution Control Federation; Particle-Size Analysis," *Standard Methods for the Examination Hydrometer Method of Water and Wastewater Particle Size Analysis. Monograph No. 9, 15th Ed.*, American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 1980; *Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI, 1965*, pp. 615–714–562-566.
- (244) Giesy, J. P., Rosiu, C. J., Graney, R. L., and Henry, M. G., "Benthic Invertebrate Bioassays with Toxic Sediment and Pore Water," Patrick, Jr., W. H., "Modification of Method Particle Size Analyses," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Proceedings of the Soil Science Society of America*, Vol 9, 1990, 4, 1958, pp. 233–248–366-367.
- (245) *American Standards for Testing Rukavina, N. A., and Materials; Duncan, G. A., "F.A.S.T.—Fast Analysis of Sediment Texture," Section 14: General Methods and Instrumentation Proceedings of the Conference on Great Lakes Research, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1986–1970*, pp. 274–281.
- (246) Lydy, M. J., Bruner, K. A., Fry, K. A., Sanford, R. B., and Fisher, S. W., "Effects Swift, D. J. P., "Comparisons of Sediment Sieving and the Route of Exposure on the Toxicity and Accumulation of Neutral Lipophilic and Moderately Water Soluble Metabolizable Compounds in the Midge; Settling Techniques for Size Analysis, Using a Benthos Rapid Sediment Analyzer," *Chironomus riparius Sedimentology, Aquatic Toxicology and Risk Assessment, ASTM STP 1096, Vol 13, W. G. Landis and W. H. van der Schalis, eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1990; 17, 1971*, pp. 140–164–257-264.
- (247) Day, K. E., Kirby, R. S., Duncan, G. A., and Reynoldson, T. B., "The Effects of Sediment Manipulations on Chronic Sediment Bioassays with Three Species of Benthic Invertebrates," Abstract, Presented at Lattaie, G. G., "Size Analysis Procedures Used in the 13th Annual Meeting, Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, Cincinnati, OH, Nov. 8–12, 1992. Sedimentology Laboratory," *NWRI Manual*, National Water Research Institute, Canada Centre for Inland Waters, 1979.
- (248) Förstner, U., and Salomons, Sternberg, R. W., "Trace Metal and Creager, J. S., "Comparative Efficiencies of Size Analysis on Polluted Sediments," Publication 248, Delft Hydraulic Laboratory, Delft, The Netherlands, 1981, by Hydrometer and Pipette Methods," *Journal of Sediment Petrology*, 31, 1961, pp. 1–13–96-100.
- (249) Moore, D. Gee, G. W., and Dillon, T. M., "Chronic Sublethal Effects of San Francisco Bay Sediments on Bauder, J. W., "Particle-Size Analysis," *Nereis (Neanthes) arenaceodentata: Nontreatment Factors*," U.S. Army Corps *Methods of Engineers, Miscellaneous Paper D-92-4, 1992. Soil Analysis, 2nd ed. Part 1. Physical and Mineralogical Methods*, Klute, A., ed., American Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI, 1986, pp. 383–411.
- (250) Reynoldson, T. B., Day, K. E., Kirby, S. K., Clarke, C., and Millani, D., "Effect of Indigenous Animals on Chronic Endpoints in Freshwater Sediment Toxicity Tests," Folk, R. L., *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Petrology of Sedimentary Rocks, submitted: Hemphill Publishing Co., Austin, TX, 1968*, p. 172.
- (251) Powelson, D. S., and Jenkinson, D. S., "The Effects Buchanan, J. B., "Sediment Analysis," *Methods for the Study of Biocidal Treatments on Metabolism in Soil—II: Gamma Irradiation, Autoclaving, Air-Drying Marine Benthos*, Holme, N. A., and Fumigation," *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*, Vol 8, 1976; McIntyre, A. D., eds., Blackwell Scientific Publications, Boston, MA, 1984, pp. 179–188–41-65.
- (252) Jenkinson, D. S., "The Effects U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "QA/QC Guidance for Sampling and Analysis of Biocidal Treatments on Metabolism in Soil—IV: The Decomposition of Fumigated Organisms in Soil," *Soil Biology Sediments, Water, and Biochemistry Tissues for Dredged Material Evaluations (Chemical Evaluations)*," *USEPA 832-B-95-002, Vol 8, 1976*, pp. 203–208–Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1995.
- (253) Chapman, Syvitski, J. P. M., "Marine Sediment Toxicity Tests," ed., *Symposium on Chemical Principles, Methods, and Biological Characterization Application of Sludges, Sediments, Dredge Spoils and Drilling Muds*, ASTM STP 976 Particle Size Analysis, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1987, pp. 391–402–Cambridge University Press, 1991, p. 368.
- (254) Giesy, J. P., McCave, I. M., and Hoke, R. A., "Freshwater Sediment Toxicity Bioassessment: Rationale for Species Selection and Test Design," *Journal Jarvis, J., "Use of Great Lakes Research the Model T Coulter Counter in Size Analysis of Fine to Coarse Sand*," *Sedimentology*, Vol 15, 1989, 20, 1973, pp. 539–569–305-315.
- (255) Pastorek, R., Vanderploeg, H. A., and Becker, D. S., "Comparative Sensitivity "Effect of Sediment Toxicity Bioassays at Three Superfund Sites in Puget Sound," the Algal Length/Aperture Length Ratio on Coulter Analyses of Lake Seston," *Aquatic Toxicology and Risk Assessment, ASTM STP 1096 Canadian Journal of Fisheries & Aquatic Science*, W. G. Landis and van der Schalie, W. H., eds., ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1990, 38, 1981, pp. 123–139–912-916.

- (256) Swartz, R. C., Kemp, P. F., Schults, Swift, D. W., Ditsworth, G. J. P., Schubel, J. R., and Özretich, Sheldon, R. J., "Acute Toxicity W., "Size Analysis of Sediments from Eagle Harbor, Washington, to the Infaunal Amphipod, Fine-Grained Suspended Sediments: A review," *Rhepoxynius abronius*," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*, Vol 8, 1989, 42, 1972, pp. 215-222-122-134.
- (257) McGee, D. Leppard, G. G., Buffle, J., Thomulka, K. W., De Vitore, R. R., and Lange, J. H., "Use Perect, D., " The Ultrastructure and Physical Characteristics of Bioluminescent Bacterium a Distinctive Colloidal Iron Particulate Isolated from a Small Eutrophic Lake," *Photobacterium phosphoreum* to Detect Potentially Biohazardous Materials in Water," *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology Archives Hydrobiology*, Vol 51, 1993, 113, 1988, pp. 538-544-405-424.
- (258) Nelson, M. K., Landrum, P. F., Burton, Leppard, G. A., Klaine, S. J., Crececius, E. A., Byl, T. D., Gossiaux, D. C., Tysmbal, V. N., Cleveland, L., Ingersoll, C. G., and Sasson-Brickson, G., "Toxicity "The Fibrillar Matrix Component of Contaminated Sediments in Dilution Series with Control Sediments," *Lacustrine Biofilms*," *Chemosphere Water Research, in press*-20, 1986, pp. 697-702.
- (259) Tay, K. L., Doe, K. G., Wade, S. J., Vaughan, D. Vecchi, M., Reynoldson, T. B., Pasteris, A., Berrigan, R. E., and Moore, M. J., "Sediment Bioassessment in Halifax Harbor," Bonomi, G., "Toxicity of Copper-Spiked Sediments to *Tubifex tubifex* (Oligochaeta, Tubificidae): Comparison of the 28-day Reproductive Bioassay with an Early-Life-Stage Biassay," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 11, 1992, 18(6), 1999, pp. 1567-1581-1144-1148.
- (260) Chapman, Berry, W. J., Cantwell, M. G., Edwards, P. M., and Fink, A., Serbst, J. R., "Effects of Puget Sound Sediments and Their Elutriates on the Life Cycle Hansen, D. J., "Predicting Toxicity of Sediments Spiked with Silver," *Capitella capitata*," *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 33, 1984, 18, 1999, pp. 451-459-40-48.
- (261) Ross, P. E., Gambrell, R. P., Khalid, R. A., and Henebry, M. S., "Use Patrick, Jr., W. H., "Physicochemical Parameters that Regulate Mobilization and Immobilization of Four Microbial Tests to Assess the Ecotoxicological Hazard of Contaminated Sediments," Toxic Heavy Metals," *Toxicity Assessment Proceedings on Speciality Conference on Dredging and Its Environmental Effects*, Vol 4, 1989, pp. 1-21. Mobile, AL (New York: American Society of Civil Engineering), 1976.
- (262) U.S. Army Corps PSEP, "Recommended Guidelines for Measuring Metals in Puget Sound Water, Sediment, and Tissue Samples," Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10, Office of Engineers, "Ecological Evaluation of Proposed Discharge of Dredged or Fill Material into Navigable Waters," Miscellaneous Paper D-76-17, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, 1976. Puget Sound, Seattle, WA and Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA; Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA, 1997b.
- (263) Daniels, S. Crececius, E. A., Munawar, M., Jenne, E. A., and Mayfield, C. I., "An Improved Elutriation Technique Anthony, J. S., "Sediment Quality Criteria for Metals: Optimization of Extraction Methods for Determining the Bioassessment Quantity of Sediment Contaminants," *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 188/189, 1989, pp. 619-631. Sorbents and Adsorbed Metals in Sediments," Report prepared by Battelle for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Criteria and Standards Division, Washington, DC, 1987.
- (264) Shumaeker, B., Fox, R., Filkins, J. C., Electrical Power Research Institute (EPRI), 1986, "Speciation of Selenium and Barrick, B., "Quality Assurance Arsenic in Natural Waters and Quality Control," *Assessment and Remediation of Contaminated Sediments (ARCS) Program*, U.S. EPA Assessment Guidance Document, 1994, pp. 10-32. Sediments," Prepared by Battelle Pacific Northwest Laboratories, Vol 2, EPRI EA-4641.
- (265) Stemmer, B. L., Burton, G. A., Jr., Kaplan, I., Lu, S. T., Lee, R. P., and Sasson-Brickson, Warrick, G., "Effect "Polycyclic Hydrocarbon Biomarkers Confirm Selective Incorporation of Sediment Spatial Variance and Collection Method Petroleum in Cladoceran Toxicity Soil and Indigenous Microbial Activity Determinations," Kangaroo Rat Liver Samples near an Oil Well Blowout Site in the Western San Joaquin Valley, California," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 9, 1990, 15, 1996, pp. 1035-1044-696-707.
- (266) DPSEP, "Recommended Guidelines for Measuring Organic Compounds in Puget Sound Sediment, and Tissue Samples," Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10, Office of Puget Sound, Seattle, WA and Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA; Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA, 1997c.
- (267) MacLeod, Jr., W., Brown, D., Friedman, A., Maynes, O., and Pierce, R., "Standard Analytical Procedures of the NOAA National Analytical Facility, E. 1984-85, Extractable Toxic Organic Compounds," Prepared for the NOAA National Status and Trends Program, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS F/NWC-64, 1985.
- (268) Metro, "Analytical Support and Data Validity: Organics," Prepared for Toxicant Pretreatment Planning Study, Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, Seattle, WA, 1981, (Revised 1983).
- (269) Burgess, R. M., and McKinney, R. A., "Effects of Sediment Homogenization on Interstitial Water PCB Geochemistry," *Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology*, 33, 1997, pp. 125-129.
- (270) Phillips, B. M., Anderson, B. S., and Hunt, J. W., "Measurement and Distribution of Interstitial and Overlying Water Ammonia and Hydrogen Sulfide in Sediment Toxicity Tests," *Marine Environmental Research*, 44(2), 1997, pp. 117-126.
- (271) Truax, D. D., Shindala, A., and Sartain, H., "Comparison of Two Sediment Oxygen Demand Measurement Techniques," *Journal of Environmental Engineering*, September, 1995, pp. 619-624.
- (272) Uchrin, C. G., and Ahlert, W. K., " *In situ* Sediment Oxygen Demand Determinations in the Passaic River (NJ) During the Late Summer/Early Fall 1983," *Water Resources* 19, 1985, pp. 1141-1144.
- (273) Chao, T. T., and Zhou, L., "Extraction Techniques for Selective Dissolution of Amorphous Iron Oxides from Soils and Sediments," *Soil Science Society of America Journal*, 47, 1983, pp. 225-232.
- (274) Kersten, M., and Forstner, U., "Cadmium Associations in Freshwater and Marine Sediment," *Cadmium in the Aquatic Environment*, John Wiley & Sons, NY, 1987, pp. 51-88.
- (275) Bascomb, C. L., "Rapid Method for the Determination of Cation Exchange Capacity of Calcareous and Non-Calcareous Soils," *J. Sci. Food Agric.*, 15, 1964, pp. 821-823.
- (276) Klute, A., ed., *Methods of Soil Analysis. Part 1. Physical and Mineralogical Methods*, 2nd ed., American Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI, 1986
- (277) Whitfield, M., "Eh as an Operational Parameter in Estuarine Studies," *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 33, 1988, pp. 447-458-14, 1969, p. 547.
- (278) Berner, R. A., "Electrode Studies of Hydrogen Sulphide in Marine Sediments," *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta* , 27, 1963, p. 563.
- (279) Morris, J. C., and Stumm, W., "Redox Equilibria and Measurements in the Aquatic Environment," *Advances in Chemistry Series*, 67, 1967, p. 270.
- (280) Tinsley, I. J., *Chemical Concepts in Pollution Behavior*, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1979, p. 92.
- (281) Bates, R. G., "The modern meaning of pH," *CRC Critical Reviews in Analytical Chemistry*, 10, 1981, p. 247.
- (282) Bregnard, T. B-A., Höhener, P., Häner, A., and Zeyer, J., "Degradation of Weathered Diesel Fuel By Microorganisms from a Contaminated Aquifer in Aerobic Microcosms," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 15, 1996, pp. 299-307.
- (283) West, R. J., and Gonsior, S. J., "Biodegradation of Triethanolamine," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* , 15, 1996, pp. 472-480.

- (284) Tye, R., Jepsen, R., and Lick, W., "Effects of Colloids, Flocculation, Particle Size, and Organic Matter on the Adsorption of Hexachlorobenzene to Sediments," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 15, 1996, pp. 643-651.
- (285) Resendes, J., Shiu, W. Y., and Mackay, D., "Sensing the Fugacity of Hydrophobic Organic Chemicals in Aqueous Systems," *Environmental Science and Technology*, 26, 1992, pp. 2381-2387.
- (286) Hermann, R., "The Daily Changing Pattern of Hydrogen Peroxide in New Zealand Surface Waters," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 15, 1996, pp. 652-662.
- (287) Gilek, M., Björk, M., Broman, D., Kautsky, N., and Näf, C., "Enhanced Accumulation of PCB Congeners by Baltic Sea blue Mussels, *Mytilus edulis*, with Increased Algae Enrichment," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 15, 1996, pp. 1597-1605.
- (288) Borga, P., Elowson, T., and Liukko, K., "Environmental Loads from Water-Sprinkled Softwood Timber: 2: Influence of Tree Species and Water Characterizations on Wastewater Discharges," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 15, 1996, pp. 1445-1454.
- (289) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Guidance in the Use and Development of a Quality Assurance Project Plan," *USEPA QA/G-5S*, Office of Environmental Information, Washington, DC, 2000e, in press.
- (290) Baudo, R., 1990. "Sediment Sampling, Mapping and Data Analysis," *Sediments: Chemistry and Toxicity of In-Place Pollutants*, Giesy, J. P. and Muntau, H., eds., Lewis Publishers, Inc., Chelsea, MI, 1990, pp. 15-60.
- (291) Becker, D. S. and Ginn, T. C., "Effects of Sediment Holding Time on Sediment Toxicity," Prepared by PTI Environmental Services, Inc. for the U.S. USEPA, Region 10 Office of Puget Sound, Seattle, WA. EOA 910/9-90-009, 1990.
- (292) Carignan, R., Rapin, F., and Tessier, A., "Sediment Pore Water Sampling for Metal Analysis: A Comparison of Techniques," *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*, 49, 1985, pp. 2493-2497.
- (293) De Witt, T.H., Swartz, R.C. and Lamberson, J.O., "Measuring the Acute Toxicity of Estuarine Sediments," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, 8, 1989, pp. 1035-1048.
- (294) Dillon, T. M., Moore, D. W., and Jarvis, A. S., "The Effects of Storage Temperature and Time on Sediment Toxicity," *Archives of Environmental Contamination & Toxicology*, 27, 1994, pp. 51-53.
- (295) Golterman, H. L., Sly, P. G., and Thomas, R. L., "Study of the Relationship between Water Quality and Sediment Transport," UNESCO, Mayenne, France, 1983.
- (296) Stemmer, B. L., Burton Jr., G. A., and Sasson-Brickson, G., "Effect of Sediment Spatial Variance and Collection Method on Cladoceran Toxicity and Indigenous Microbial Activity Determinations," *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry*, Vol 9, 1990a, pp. 1035-1044.
- (297) Brinkhurst, R. O., "Sampling the Benthos" *Great Lakes Institute, Progress Report Number 32*, University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada, 1967.
- (298) Brinkhurst, R. O., *The Benthos of Lakes*, St. Martin's Press, New York, 1974, p. 190.
- (299) Elliott, J. M. and Drake, C. M., "A Comparative Study of Seven Grabs Used for Sampling Benthic Macroinvertebrates in Rivers," *Freshwater Biological Association*, Vol 11, 1981, pp. 99-120.
- (300) Elliott, J. M. and Tullett, P. A., "A Bibliography of Samplers for Benthic Invertebrates," *Freshwater Biological Association*, Occasional Publication, No. 4, 1978, p. 61.
- (301) Flannagan, J. F., "Efficiencies of Various Grabs and Corers in Sampling Freshwater Benthos," *Journal of Fisheries of Research Board of Canada*, Can., Vol 27, 1970, pp. 1631-1700.
- (302) Howmiller, R. P., "A Comparison of the Effectiveness of Ekman and Ponar Grabs," *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 100, 1971, pp. 560-564.
- (303) Hudson, P. L., "Quantitative Sampling with Three Benthic Dredges," *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 99, 1970, pp. 603-607.
- (304) Lewis, P. A., Mason, W. T., Jr., and Weber, C. I., "Evaluation of Three Bottom Grab Samplers for Collecting River Benthos," *Ohio Journal of Science*, Vol 82, 1982, pp. 103-113.
- (305) Powers, C. F. and Robertson, A., "Design and Evaluation of an All Purpose Benthos Sampler," *Special Report No. 30*, Great Lakes Research Div., University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1967, pp. 126-131.
- (306) Weber, C. I. (ed.), "Biological Field and Laboratory Methods for Measuring the Quality of Surface Waters and Effluents," *Environmental Monitoring Series*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-670/4-73-001.
- (307) Beattie, D. M., "A Modification of the Ekman-Birge Bottom Sampler for Heavy Duty," *Freshwater Biological Association*, Vol 9, 1979, pp. 181-182.
- (308) Burton, W. and Flannagan, J. F., "An Improved-Ekman Type Grab," *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 30, pp. 287-290.
- (309) Ekman, S., "Neue Apparate Zur Quantitativen Und Qualitativen Erforschung der Bodenfauna der Seen," *Internationale Revue Der Gesamten Hydrobiologie und Hydrographie*, Vol 3, 1911, pp. 553-561.
- (310) Ekman, S., "Ueber Die Festigkeit Der Marinen Sedimente Als Faktor Der Tierverbreitung," *Ein Beitrag Zur Ass. Analyse. Zoologiska Bidrag fran Uppsala Bidr. Fran. Uppsala*, Vol 25, 1947, pp. 1-20.
- (311) Lanz, F., "Untersuchung Uber Die Vertikalverteilung Der Bodenfauna in Tiefen-sediment von Seen." Ein neuer Bodengreifer mit Zerteilungsvorrichtung, *Verhandlungen der Internationalen Verein Limnologie* Vol 5, 1931, pp. 323-261.
- (312) Lind, O. T., *Handbook of Common Methods in Limnology*, The C.V. Mosby Co., St. Louis, Missouri, 1974, p. 154.
- (313) Milbrink, G. and Wiederholm, T., "Sampling Efficiency of Four Types of Mud Bottom Samplers," *Oikos* 24, 1973, pp. 479-482.
- (314) Rowe, G. T. and Clifford, C. H., "Modification of the Birge Ekman Box Corer for Use with SCUBA or Deep Submergence Research Vessels," *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 18, 1973, pp. 172-175.
- (315) Paterson, C. G. and Fernando, C. H., "A Comparison of a Simple Corer and An Ekman Grab for Shallow-Water Benthos," *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 23(3), 1971, pp. 365-368.
- (316) Schwoerbel, J., "Methods of Hydrobiology," *Freshwater Biological Association*, Pergamon Press, Inc., New York, 1970, p. 356.
- (317) Rawson, D. S., "An Automatic-Closing Ekman Dredge and Other Equipment for Use in Extremely Deep Water," *Special Publications of Limnology Society of America*, Vol 18, 1947, pp. 1-8.
- (318) Welch, P. S., "Limnological Methods," McGraw Hill Co., New York, NY, 1948, p. 382.
- (319) Barnes, H., "Oceanography and Marine Biology, A Book of Techniques," The Macmillan Co., New York, NY, 1959, p. 218.
- (320) Birkett, L., "A Basic for Comparing Grabs," *Explor. Mer.*, Vol 23, 1958, pp. 202-207.
- (321) Davis, F. M., "Quantitative Studies on the Fauna of the Sea Bottom. No. 2., Results of the Investigation in the Southern North Sea 1921-1924.," *Fishery. Investigations, London Services II*, Vol 8(4), 1925, pp. 1-50. Edinburgh, 1971, p. 358.
- (322) Edmondson, W. T. and G. G. Winberg (eds.), "A Manual on Methods for the Assessment of Secondary Productivity in Fresh Water," *International*

- Biological Program, (IBP) Handbook No. 17*, Blackwell Sci. Publ. Oxford and Edinburgh, 1971, p. 358.
- (323) Holme, N. A. and A. D. McIntyre (eds.), "Methods for the Study of Marine Benthos." *International Biological Program, (IBP) IBP Handbook No. 16*, Blackwell Sci. Publ. Oxford and Edinburgh, 1971, p. 334.
- (324) Petersen, C. G. J., "The Sea Bottom and Its Production of Fish Food." *Report of the Danmarks Biological Station 25*, 1918, p. 62.
- (325) Thorson, G., "Sampling the Benthos." "Treatise on Marine Ecology and Paleoecology," J. W. Hedgpeth ed., *Geological Society of America Memoirs 67*, Vol 1, 1957, pp. 61–73.
- (326) Petersen, C. G. J. and P. Boysen Jensen, "Valuation of the Sea I Animal Life of the Sea Bottom, Its Food and Quantity," *Report of the Danmarks Biological Station 20*, 1911, p. 81.
- (327) Carey, A. G., Jr. and Heyamoto, H. *Techniques and Equipment for Sampling Benthic Organisms*, Prutar, A. T. and Alverson, D. L. eds., The Columbia River Estuary and Adjacent Ocean Water: Bioenvironmental Studies, 1972, pp. 378–408.
- (328) Carey, A. G. and Paul, R. R., "A Modification of the Smith-McIntyre Grab for Simultaneous Collection of Sediment and Bottom Water," *Limnological Oceanography*, Vol 13, 1968, pp. 545–549.
- (329) Holme, N. A., "Methods of Sampling the Benthos," *Advances in Marine Biology*, F. S. Russel ed., London Academic, Vol 2, 1964, pp. 171–260.
- (330) Holme, N. A., "Macrofauna Sampling," Holme, N. A. and McIntyre, A. D. eds., "Methods for the Study of Marine Benthos," *IBP Handbook No. 16*, 1971, pp. 80–130. Blackwell Scientific Publications Oxford and Edinburgh.
- (331) Hopkins, T. L., "A Survey of Marine Bottom Samplers," M. Sears ed., *Progress in Oceanography*, Vol 2, 1964, pp. 213–256.
- (332) Hunter, B. and Simpson, A. E., "A Benthic Grab Designed for Easy Operation and Durability," *Journal of Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, Vol 56, 1976, pp. 951–957.
- (333) McIntyre, A. D., "Efficiency of Marine Bottom Samplers," In: "Methods for the Study of Marine Benthos," Holme, N. A. and McIntyre, A. D. eds., *IBP Handbook No. Vol 16*, 1971, pp. 140–146.
- (334) Smith, W. and McIntyre, A. D., "A Spring-Loaded Bottom Sampler," *Journal of Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, Vol 33(1), 1954, pp. 257–264.
- (335) Tyler, P. and Shackley, S. E., "Comparative Efficiency of the Day and Smith-McIntyre Grabs," *Estuarine and Coastal Marine Science*, Vol 6, 1978, pp. 439–445.
- (336) Wigley, R. L., "Comparative Efficiency of Van Veen and Smith-McIntyre Grab Samplers as Revealed by Motion Pictures," *Ecology*, Vol 48, 1967, pp. 168–169.
- (337) Word, J. Q., Kawling, T. J., and Mearns, A. J., "A Comparative Field Study of Benthic Sampling Devices Used in Southern California Benthic Survey," *Southern California Coastal Water Research Project*, 1500 E. Imperial Highway, El Segundo, CA, 1976.
- (338) Beukema, J. J., "The Efficiency of the Van Veen Grab Compared with the Reineck Box Sampler," *Journal Du Conseil. Conseil Permanent International Pour L'Exploration De La Mer* (Copenhagen), Vol 35(3), 1974, pp. 319–327.
- (339) Lässig, J., "An Improvement to the Van Veen Bottom Grab," *Journal of Du Conseil Conseil Permanent International Pour L'Exploration de La Mer*, Vol 29, 1965, pp. 352–353.
- (340) Longhurst, A. R., "The Sampling Problem in Benthic Ecology," *Proceedings of New Zealand Ecological Society*, Vol 6, 1959, pp. 8–12.
- (341) McIntyre, A. D., "The Use of Trawl, Grab and Camera in Estimating Marine Benthos," *Journal of Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, U.K., Vol, 35, 1956, pp. 419–429.
- (342) Nichols, M. M. and Ellison, R. L., "Light-Weight Bottom Sampler for Shallow Water," *Chesapeake Science*, Vol 7, 1966, pp. 215–217.
- (343) Ursin, E., "Efficiency of Marine Bottom Samplers of the Van Veen and Petersen Types," *Meddelelser fra Danmarks Fiskeri og Havundersogelser*, N.S., Vol 17, 1954, pp. 1–8.
- (344) Word, J. Q., "An Evaluation of Benthic Invertebrate Sampling Devices for Investigating Breeding Habits of Fish," Simenstad, Fish Food Habit Studies, C. A., and Lipovsky, S. J. eds., *University of Washington*, No. WSG-W077-2, 1976.
- (345) Word, J. Q., "Biological Comparison of Grab Sampling Devices," *Southern California Coastal Water Res. Project (No. 77)*, 1977, pp. 189–194.
- (346) Briba, C. and Reys, J. P., "Modifications D'Une Benne 'Orange Peel' Pour Des Prelevements Quantitatifs Du Benthos De Substrate Meubales," *Recueil des Travaux Institut d'Ecologie et de Biogeographie Academie Serbe des Sciences*, Endoume 41, 1966, pp. 117–121.
- (347) Hartman, O., "Quantitative Survey of the Benthos of San Pedro Basin, Southern Calif. Part 1," Preliminary Results Allan Hancock Pacific Expedition, Vol 19, 1955, p. 185.
- (348) Merna, J. W., "Quantitative Sampling with the Orange Peel Dredge," *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 7, 1962, pp. 432–33.
- (349) Packard, E. L., "A Quantitative Analysis of the Molluscan Fauna of San Francisco Bay," *University of California Publications in Zoology*, Vol 18, 1918, pp. 299–336.
- (350) Reish, D. J., "Modification of the Hayward Orange Peel Bucket for Bottom Sampling," *Ecology*, Vol 40, 1959, pp. 502–503.
- (351) Lisitsyn, A. P. and Udintsev, G. B., "New Model Dredges," *Trudy Vsesoyuznogo Gidrologicheskogo Obschestva* Vol 6, 1955, pp. 217–222.
- (352) Zhadin, V. I., *Methods of Hydrobiological Investigation*, Moskva. Vysshaya Shkola, 1960, p. 191.
- (353) Klemm, D.J., Lewis, P.A., Fulk, F., and Lazorchak, J.M., "Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Biological Integrity of Surface Waters" EPA/600/4-90/030, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, 1990, pp. 256.
- (354) Merritt, R.W., Cummins, K.W., and Resh, V.H. "Design of Aquatic Insects Studies: Collecting Sampling, and Rearing Procedures," *An Introduction to the Aquatic Insects of North America*, Merritt, R.W. and Cummins, K.W., (eds.) Kendall Hunt Publishers Co., IQ, 1996, pp. 12–28.
- (355) Gerritsen, J., Jessu, B., Leppo, E.W., and White, J., "Development of Lake Conditions Indexes (LCI) for Florida," Tetra Tech, Inc., 10045 Red Sun Boulevard, Suite 10, Owings Mills, MD, Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Stormwater and Nonpoint Source Management Section, Twin Towers Office Building, 2600 Blair Stone Road, Tallahassee, FL, 2000, pp. 1–1 to 9–5, Appendices A-1 to B-13.
- (356) Lewis, P.A., Klemm, D.J., and Thoeny, W.T. "Perspectives on Use of a Multimetric Lake Bioassessment Integrity Index Using Benthic Macroinvertebrates," *Northeastern Naturalist* 8(2). 2001 pp. 233–246.
- (357) Elliott, J. M., and Tullett, P. A., "A Bibliography of Samplers for Benthic Invertebrates," *Freshwater Biological Association Occasional Publication*, No. 4, 1978, pp. 9–11.
- (358) Ellis, R. H., and Rutter, R. P., *Portable Invertebrate Box Sampler*, Ellis-Rutter Association, Punta Gorda, FL, advertisement circular, 1973, 4 pp.
- (359) Lane, E. D., "An Improved Method of Surber Sampling for Bottom and Drift Fauna in Small Streams," *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 36, pp. 20–22.
- (360) Merritt, R. W., Cummins, K. W., and Resh, V. H., "Design of Aquatic Insects Studies: Collecting Sampling, and Rearing Procedures," *An*

- Introduction to Aquatic Insects of North America*, Merritt, R. W. and Cummins, K. W. (eds.) Kendall Hunt Publishers Co., IQ, 1996, pp 12–28.
- (361) Needham, P. R., and Usinger, R. L., “Variability in the Macrofauna of a Single Riffle in Prosser Creek, California, as Indicated by the Surber Sampler,” *Helgardia*, Vol 24, No. 14, 1956.
- (362) Pollard, J. E., and Kinney, W. L., *Assessment of Macroinvertebrate Monitoring Techniques in an Energy Development Area: A Test of the Efficiency of the Macrobenthic Sampling Methods in the White River*, Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Las Vegas, NV, 1979.
- (363) Rutter, R. P., and Ettinger, W. S., “Method for Sampling Invertebrate Drift from a Small Boat,” *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 39, No. 1, pp. 49–52.
- (364) Resh, V. H., “Sampling Variability and Life History Features: Basic Considerations in the Design of Aquatic Insect Studies,” *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 36, 1979, pp. 290–311.
- (365) Rutter, R. P., and Poe, T. P., “Macroinvertebrate Drift in Two Adjoining Southeastern Pennsylvania Streams,” *Proceedings of Pennsylvania Academy of Science*, Vol 52, 1978, pp. 24–30.
- (366) Surber, E. W., “Rainbow Trout and Bottom Fauna Production in One Mile of Stream,” *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 66, 1937, pp. 193–202.
- (367) Surber, E. W., “Procedure in Taking Stream Bottom Samples with the Stream Square Foot Bottom Sampler,” *Proceedings, A Conference Southeastern Association Game Fisheries Commission*, Vol 23, 1970, pp. 587–591.
- (368) Welch, P. S., *Limnological Methods*, McGraw-Hill Co., New York, NY, 1948.
- (369) Kroger, R. L., “Underestimation of Standing Crop by the Surber Sampler,” *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 17, 1972, pp. 475–478.
- (370) Resh, V. H., et al., “Quantitative Methods for Evaluating the Effects of Geothermal Energy Development on Stream Benthic Communities at the Geysers, California,” California Water Resources Center, University of California, Contribution No. 190, ISSN 0575–4941, Davis, CA, 1984, 57 pp.
- (371) Canton, S. P., and Chadwick, C. W., “A New Modified Hess Sampler,” *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 46, No. 1, 1984, pp. 57–59.
- (372) Hess, A. D., *New Limnological Sampling Equipment*, *Limnological Society of America Special Publication No. 6*, Ann Arbor, MI, 1941, 5 pp.
- (373) Usinger, R. L. (ed.), *Aquatic Insects of California*, University of California Press, Los Angeles, CA, 1963.
- (374) Allen, J. D., “The Size Composition of Invertebrate Drift in a Rocky Mountain Stream,” *Oikos*, Vol 43, 1984, pp. 68–76.
- (375) Allan, D., and Russek, E., “The Quantification of Stream Drift,” *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, Vol 42, 1985, pp. 210–215.
- (376) Bailey, R. G., “Observations on the Nature and Importance of Organic Drift in a Devon River,” *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 27, 1964, pp. 353–367.
- (377) Berner, L. M., “Limnology of the Lower Mississippi River,” *Ecology*, Vol 32, No. 1, 1951, pp. 1–12.
- (378) Chaston, I., “The Light Threshold Controlling the Periodicity of Invertebrate Drift,” *Journal of Animal Ecology*, Vol 38, No. 1, 1969, pp. 171–180.
- (379) Clifford, H. F., “Drift of Invertebrates in an Intermittent Stream Draining Marshy Terrain of West-Central Alberta,” *Canadian Journal of Zoology*, Vol 50, 1972a, pp. 985–991.
- (380) Clifford, H. F., “A Year’s Study of the Drifting Organisms in a Brownwater Stream of Alberta, Canada,” *Canadian Journal of Zoology*, Vol 50, 1972b, pp. 975–983.
- (381) Cushing, C. E., “Filter-Feeding Insect Distribution and Planktonic Food in the Montreal River,” *Transactions American Fisheries Society*, Vol 92, 1963, pp. 216–219.
- (382) Cushing, C. E., Jr., “An Apparatus for Sampling Drifting Organisms in Streams,” *Journal of Wildlife Management*, Vol 28, No. 3, 1964, pp. 592–594.
- (383) Dimond, J. B., “Evidence that Drift of Stream Benthos is Density Related,” *Ecology*, Vol 48, No. 5, 1967, pp. 855–857.
- (384) Edington, J. M., “The Effect of Water Flow on Populations of Net-Spinning Trichoptera,” *Mitteilungen Internationale Vereines Limnologie*, Vol 13, 1965, pp. 40–48.
- (385) Elliott, J. M., “Daily Fluctuations of Drift Invertebrates in a Dartmoor Stream,” *Nature*, (London), Vol 205, 1965, pp. 1127–1129.
- (386) Elliott, J. M., “Diel Periodicity in Invertebrate Drift and the Optimization Effect of Different Sampling Periods,” *Oikos*, Vol 20, No. 2, 1969, pp. 524–528.
- (387) Elliott, J. M., “Methods of Sampling Invertebrate Drift in Running Water,” *Annales De Limnologie*, Vol 6, No. 2, 1970, pp. 133–159.
- (388) Elliott, J. M., *Some Methods for the Statistical Analysis of Samples of Benthic Invertebrates*, Freshwater Biological Association, U.K. Ferry House, Ambleside, Westmoreland, England, 1971, 144 pp.
- (389) Elliott, J. M., and Minshall, C. W., “The Invertebrate Drift in the River Dudden, English Lake District,” *Oikos*, Vol 19, 1968, pp. 39–52.
- (390) Elliott, J. M., “Invertebrate Drift in a Dartmoor Stream,” *Archiv fuer Hydrobiologie*, Vol 63, 1967, pp. 202–237.
- (391) Ferrington, L. C., Jr., “Drift Dynamics of Chironomidae Larvae: I. Preliminary Results and Discussion of Importance of Mesh Size and Level of Taxonomic Identification in Resulting Chironomidae diel Drift Patterns,” *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 114, 1984, pp. 215–227.
- (392) Hales, D. C., and Gaufin, A. R., Comparison of Two Types of Stream Benthos, “Insect Drift Nets,” *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 14, No. 3, 1969, pp. 459–461.
- (393) Hildebrand, S. G., “The Relation of Drift to Benthos Density and Food Level in an Artificial Stream,” *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 19, No. 6, 1974, pp. 951–957.
- (394) Holt, C. S., and Waters, T. F., “Effect of Light Intensity on the Drift of Stream Invertebrates,” *Ecology*, Vol 48, No. 2, 1967, pp. 225–234.
- (395) Hynes, H. B. N., *The Ecology of Running Waters*, University of Toronto Press, Suffolk, Great Britain, 1970, 555 pp.
- (396) Keefer, L., and Maughan, O. E., “Effects of Headwater Impoundment and Channelization on Invertebrate Drift,” *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 127, 1985, pp. 161–169.
- (397) Larimore, R. W., “Stream Drift as an Identification of Water Quality,” *Transactions American Fisheries Society*, Vol 103, No. 3, 1974, pp. 507–517.
- (398) Larkin, P. A., and McKone, D. W., “An Evaluation by Field Experiments of the McLay Model of Stream Drift,” *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*, Vol 42, 1985, pp. 909–918.
- (399) Lehmkuhl, D. M., and Anderson, N. H., “Microdistribution and Density as Factors Affecting the Downstream Drift of Mayflies,” *Ecology*, Vol 53, No. 4, 1972, pp. 661–667.
- (400) McLay, C., “A Theory Concerning the Distance Travelled by Animals Entering the Drift of a Stream,” *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 27, No. 2, 1970, pp. 359–370.
- (401) Minshall, G. W., and Winger, P. V., “The Effect of Reduction in Stream Flow on Invertebrate Drift,” *Ecology*, Vol 49, No. 3, 1968, pp. 580–582.
- (402) Modde, T. C., and Schmulbach, J. C., “Seasonal Changes in the Drift and Benthic Macroinvertebrates in the Unchanneled Missouri River in South Dakota,” *Proceedings of South Dakota Academy of Science*, Vol 52, 1973, pp. 118–139.

- (403) Muller, K., "An Automatic Stream Drift Sampler." *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 10, 1965, pp. 483–485.
- (404) Muller, K., "Stream Drift as a Chronobiological Phenomenon in Running Water Ecosystems," *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, Vol 5, 1974, pp. 309–323.
- (405) Mullican, H. N., Sansing, H. T., and Sharber, J. F., Jr., *A Biological Evaluation of the Caney Fork River in the Tail Waters of Center Hill Reservoir*, Tennessee Stream Pollution Control Board, Tennessee Department of Public Health, Nashville, TN, 1967, 19 pp.
- (406) Mundie, J. H., "A Sampler for Catching Emerging Insects and Drifting Materials in Streams," *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 9, No. 3., 1964, pp. 456–459.
- (407) Mundie, J. H., "The Diurnal Activity of the Larger Invertebrates at the Surface of Lac La Ronge," *Canadian Journal of Zoology*, Saskatchewan, Canada, Vol 37, 1959, pp. 945–956.
- (408) Pearson, W. D., and Franklin, D. R., "Some Factors Affecting Drift Rates of *Baetis* and *Simulidae* in a Large River," *Ecology*, Vol 49, No. 1, 1968, pp. 75–81.
- (409) Pearson, W. D., and Kramer, R. H., "A Drift Sampler Driven by a Waterwheel," *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 14, No. 3, 1969, pp. 462–465.
- (410) Pearson, W. D., and Kramer, R. H., "Drift and Production of Two Aquatic Insects in a Mountain Stream," *Ecological Monographs*, Vol 42, No. 3, 1972, pp. 365–385.
- (411) Pearson, W. D., Kramer, R. H., and Franklin, R. D., "Macroinvertebrates in the Green River Below Flaming Gorge Dam, 1964–65 and 1967," *Proceedings*, Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, Vol 45, 1968, pp. 148–167.
- (412) Pfitzer, D. W., "Investigations of Waters Below Storage Reservoirs in Tennessee," *Transactions*, 19th North American Wildlife Conference, 1954, pp. 271–282.
- (413) Radford, D. S., and Hartland-Rowe, R., "A Preliminary Investigation of Bottom Fauna and Invertebrate Drift in an Unregulated and Regulated Stream in Alberta," *Journal of Applied Ecology*, Vol 8, 1971, pp. 883–903.
- (414) Reisen, W. K., and Prins, R., "Some Ecological Relationships of the Invertebrate Drift in Praters Creek, Pickens County, SC," *Ecology*, Vol 53, No. 5, 1972, pp. 876–884.
- (415) Spence, J. A., and Hynes, H. B. N., "Differences in Benthos Upstream and Downstream of an Impoundment," *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 28, No. 1, 1971, pp. 35–43.
- (416) Tanaka, H., "On the Daily Change of the Drifting of Benthic Animals in Stream. Especially on the Types of Daily Change Observed in Taxonomic Groups of Insects," *Bulletin of Freshwater Fisheries Research Laboratory*, Tokyo, Vol 9, 1960, pp. 13–24.
- (417) Tranter, D. J., and Smith, P. E., "Filtration Performance," *In: Zooplankton Sampling, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology*, UNESCO, Geneva, 1968, pp. 27–35.
- (418) Waters, T. F., "Standing Crop and Drift of Stream Bottom Organisms," *Ecology*, Vol 42, No. 3, 1961, pp. 532–537.
- (419) Waters T. F., "Diurnal Periodicity in the Drift of Stream Invertebrates," *Ecology*, Vol 43, No. 2, 1962, pp. 316–320.
- (420) Waters, T. F., "Recolonization of Denuded Stream Bottom Areas by Drift," *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 93, No. 3, 1964, pp. 311–315.
- (421) Waters, T. F., "Interpretation of Invertebrate Drift in Streams," *Ecology*, Vol 46, No. 3, 1965, pp. 327–334.
- (422) Waters, T. F., "Production Rate, Population Density, and Drift of a Stream Invertebrate," *Ecology*, Vol 47, No. 4, 1966, pp. 595–604.
- (423) Waters, T. F., "Diurnal Periodicity in the Drift of a Day-Active Stream Invertebrate," *Ecology*, Vol 49, No. 1, 1968, pp. 152–153.
- (424) Waters, T. F., "Invertebrate Drift-Ecology and Significance to Stream Fisheries," *In: Symposium Salmon and Trout in Streams*, T. C. Northcote, ed., H. R. MacMillan Lectures in Fisheries, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, 1969, pp. 121–134.
- (425) Waters, T. F., "Subsampler for Dividing Large Samples of Stream Invertebrate Drift," *Limnology Oceanography*, Vol 14, No. 5, 1969b, pp. 813–815.
- (426) Waters, T. F., "The Drift of Stream Insects," *Annual Review of Entomology*, Vol 17, 1972, pp. 253–272.
- (427) Waters, T. F., and Knapp, R. J., "An Improved Stream Bottom Fauna Sampler," *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 90, 1961, pp. 225–226.
- (428) Weber, C. I. (ed.), "Biological Field and Laboratory Methods for Measuring the Quality of Surface Waters and Effluents," *Environmental Monitoring Series*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-670/4-73-001, 1973.
- (429) Wilson, R. S., and Bright, P. L., "The Use of Chironomid Pupal Exuviae for Characterizing Streams," *Freshwater Biology*, Vol 3, 1973, pp. 283–302.
- (430) Winner, R. W., Boesel, M. W., and Farrell, M. P., "Insect Community Structure as an Index of Heavy-Metal Pollution in Lotic Ecosystems," *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*, Vol 37, 1980, pp. 647–655.
- (431) Wojtalik, T. A., and Waters, T. F., "Some Effects of Heated Water on the Drift of Two Species of Stream Invertebrates," *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, Vol 99, No. 4, 1970, pp. 782–788.
- (432) Klemm, D.J., Lewis, P.A., Fulk, F., and Lazorchak, J.M., "Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Biological Integrity of Surface Waters." EPA/600/4-90/030, U.S., Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH 1990, pp. 256.
- (433) Rutter, R. P., and Ettinger, W. S., "Method for Sampling Invertebrate Drift from a Small Boat," *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 39, No. 1, 1977, pp. 49–52.
- (434) Pearson, W. D., and Kramer, R. H., "A Drift Sampler Driven by a Waterwheel," *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 14, No. 3, 1969, pp. 462–465.
- (435) Muller, K. "An Automatic Stream Drift Sampler." *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 10, 1965, pp. 483–485.
- (436) Mundie, J. H., "A Sampler for Catching Emerging Insects and Drifting Materials in Streams," *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 9, No. 3, 1964, pp. 456–459.
- (437) Cushing, C. E., "An Apparatus for Sampling Drifting Organisms in Streams," *Journal of Wildlife Management*, Vol 48, No. 3, 1964, pp. 592–594.
- (438) Klemm, D.J., Lewis, P.A., Fulk, F., and Lazorchak, J.M., "Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Biological Integrity of Surface Waters." EPA/600/4-90/030, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, 1990, pp. 256.
- (439) Merritt, R.W., Cummins, K.W., and Resh, V.H., "Design of Aquatic Insects Studies: Collecting, Sampling, and Rearing Procedures," *An Introduction to the Aquatic Insects of North America*, Merritt, R.W., and Cummings, K.W. (eds.) Kendall Hunt Publishers Co., IQ, 1996, pp.12–28
- (440) Waters, T. F., "Subsampler for Dividing Large Samples of Stream Invertebrate Drift," *Limnology and Oceanography*, Vol 14, No. 5, 1969b, pp. 813–815.
- (441) Anderson, J. B., and Mason, W. T., Jr., "A Comparison of Benthic Macroinvertebrates Collected by Dredge and Basket Samplers," *Journal of Water*

- Pollution Control Federation*, Vol 4, 1968, p. 252.
- (442) *Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater*, 17th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 1989.
- (443) Beck, T. W., Griffing, T. C., and Appleby, A. G., "Use of Artificial Substrate to Assess Water Pollution," *Proceedings Biological Methods for the Assessment of Water Quality*, ASTM STP 528, ASTM, Philadelphia, PA, 1974, pp. 227–241.
- (444) Benfield, E. F., Hendricks, A. C., and Cairns, J., Jr., "Proficiencies of Two Artificial Substrates in Collecting Stream Macroinvertebrates," *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 45, No. 4, 1977, pp. 432–440.
- (445) Bergersen, E. P., and Galat, D. L., "Coniferous Tree Bark—A Lightweight Substitute for Limestone Rock in Barbeque Basket Macroinvertebrate Samplers," *Water Research* (U.K.), Vol 9, 1975, pp. 729–731.
- (446) Britton, L. J., and Greenson, P. E., Eds., "Methods for Collection and Analysis of Aquatic Biological and Microbiological Samples," *Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations of the United States Geological Survey*, U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report 88-190, Book 5, Chapter A4, 1988.
- (447) Bull, C. J., "A Bottom Fauna Sampler for Use in Stony Streams," *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 30, 1968, pp. 119–120.
- (448) Cairns, J., Jr., Ed., *Artificial Substrates*, Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MI, 1982.
- (449) Fullner, R. S., "A Comparison of Macroinvertebrates Collected by Basket and Modified Multiple-Plate Samplers," *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation*, Vol 43, 1971, pp. 494–499.
- (450) Hall, T. J., "Colonizing Macroinvertebrates in the Upper Mississippi River with a Comparison of Basket and Multiplate Samplers," *Freshwater Biology*, Vol 12, 1982, pp. 211–215.
- (451) Hellawell, J. M., *Biological Surveillance of Rivers*, Water Research Center, Stevenage, England, 1978.
- (452) Hanson, E. B., Jr., "A Caged Sampler for Collecting Aquatic Fauna," *Turtlex News*, Vol 43, 1965, pp. 298–299.
- (453) Jacobi, G. Z., "A Quantitative Artificial Substrate Sampler for Benthic Macroinvertebrates," *Transactions of America Fisheries Society*, Vol 100, 1971, pp. 136–138.
- (454) Klemm, D. J., Lewis, P. A., Folk, F., and Lazorchak, J. M., *Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Biological Integrity of Surface Waters*, EPA/600/4-90/030, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, OH, 1990.
- (455) Merritt, R. W., Cummins, K. W., and Resh, V. H., "Design of Aquatic Insects Studies: Collecting, Sampling, and Rearing Procedures," *An Introduction of the Aquatic Insects of North America*, Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W. (eds.) Kendall Hunt Publishers Co., IQ, 1996, pp. 12–28.
- (456) Mason, W. T., Anderson, J. B., and Morrison, G. E., "A Limestone-Filled, Artificial Substrate Sampler-Float Unit for Collecting Macroinvertebrates in Large Streams," *Progressive Fish-Culturist*, Vol 29, No. 2, 1967, p. 74.
- (457) Mason, W. T., Jr., Lewis, P. A., and Anderson, J. B., *Macroinvertebrate Collections and Water Quality Monitoring in the Ohio River Basin 1963–1967*, Office of Tech. Prog., Ohio Basin Region and Analytical Qual. Cont. Lab, Water Quality Office, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, OH, 1971.
- (458) Mason, W. T., Jr., Weber, C. I., Lewis, P. A., and Julian, E. C., "Factors Affecting the Performance of Basket and Multiplate Macroinvertebrate Samplers," *Freshwater Biology*, Vol 3, 1973, pp. 409–436.
- (459) McConville, D. R., "Comparison of Artificial Substrates in Bottom Fauna Studies on a Large River," *Journal of Minnesota Academy Science*, Vol 41, 1975, pp. 21–24.
- (460) Newton, T. A., and Rabe, F. W., *Comparison of Macroinvertebrate Samplers and the Relationship of Environmental Factors to Biomass and Diversity Variability in a Small Watershed*, Res. Tech. Completion Report, Project A-049-IDA, Idaho Water Resources Research Institute, University of Idaho, Moscow, ID, 1977.
- (461) Rabini, C. F., and Gibbs, K. E., "Comparison of Two Methods Used by Divers for Sampling Benthic Invertebrates in Deep Rivers," *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, 1978, 35L332–336.
- (462) Resh, V. H., "Sampling Variability and Life History Features: Basic Considerations in the Design of Aquatic Insect Studies," *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, Vol 36, 1979, pp. 290–311.
- (463) Rosenberg, D. M., and Resh, V. H., "The Use of Artificial Substrates in the Study of Freshwater Benthic Macroinvertebrates," *Artificial Substrates*, Cairns, J., Jr., Ed., Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MI, 1982, pp. 175–235.
- (464) Voshell, J. R., Jr., and Simmons, G. M., Jr., "An Evaluation of Artificial Substrates for Sampling Macroinvertebrates in Reservoirs," *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 53, 1977, pp. 257–269.
- (465) Weber, C. I., Ed., *Biological Field and Laboratory Methods for Measuring the Quality of Surface and Effluents*, EPA-670/4-73-001, Environmental Monitoring Series, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1973.
- (466) Zillich, J. A., *Response of Lotic Substrate Samplers*, Master's Thesis, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, 1967.
- (467) *Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater*, 17th Ed, American Public Health Association, Washington, D.C., 1989.
- (468) Beck, T. W., Griffing, T. C., and Appleby, A. G., "Use of Artificial Substrate to Assess Water Pollution," *Proceedings Biological Methods for the Assessment of Water Quality*, ASTM STP 528, American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 1974, pp. 227–241.
- (469) Beckett, D. C. and Miller, M. C., "Macroinvertebrate Colonization of Multiplate Samplers in the Ohio River: the Effect of Dams," *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, Vol 39, 1982, pp. 1622–1627.
- (470) Britton, L. J. and Greenson, P. E. (eds.), "Methods for Collection and Analysis of Aquatic Biological and Microbiological Samples," Book 5, Chapter A4, *Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations of the United States Geological Survey*, U.S.G.S., Open File Report 88–190, 1988.
- (471) Cairns, J., Jr. (ed.), "Artificial Substrates," *Ann Arbor Science*, Ann Arbor, MI, 1982.
- (472) Fullner, R. S., "A Comparison of Macroinvertebrates Collected by Basket and Modified Multiple-Plate Samplers," *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation* 43, 1971, pp. 494–499.
- (473) Hall, T. J., "Colonizing Macroinvertebrates in the Upper Mississippi River with a Comparison of Basket and Multiplate Samplers," *Freshwater Biology*, Vol 12, 1982, pp. 211–215.
- (474) Harrold, J. F., Jr., "Relation of Sample Variations to Plate Orientation in the Hester-Dendy Plate Sampler," *Prog. Fish-Cult.*, Vol 40(1): 24–25, 1978.
- (475) Hellawell, J. M., "Biological Surveillance of Rivers," Water Research Center, Stevenage, England, 1978.
- (476) Hester, F. E. and Dendy, J. S., "A Multiplate-Plate Sampler for Aquatic Macroinvertebrates," *Transactions American Fisheries Society*, Vol 91, 1962, pp. 420–421.
- (477) Klemm, D. J., Lewis, P. A., Fulk, F., and Lazorchak, J. M., "Macroinvertebrate Field and Laboratory Methods for Evaluating the Biological Integrity



- of Surface Waters,” EPA/600/4-90/030. Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio 45268, 1990.
- (478) Merritt, R. W., Cummins, K. W., and Resh, V. H., “Design of Aquatic Insects Studies: Collecting, Sampling, and Rearing Procedures,” *An Introduction of the Aquatic Insects of North America*, Merritt, R. W. and Cummins, K. W. (eds.) Kendall Hunt Publishers Co., IQ, 1996, pp. 12–28.
- (479) Mason, W. T., Jr., Weber, C. I., Lewis, P. A., and Julian, E. C., “Factors Affecting the Performance of Basket and Multiplate Macroinvertebrate Samplers,” *Freshwater Biology*, Vol 3, 1973, pp. 409–436.
- (480) McConville, D. R., “Comparison of Artificial Substrates in Bottom Fauna Studies on a Large River,” *Journal Minnesota Academy Science*, Vol 41, 1975, pp. 21–24.
- (481) McDaniel, M. D., “Design and Preliminary Evaluation of an Improved Artificial Substrate Sampler for Aquatic Macroinvertebrates,” *Prog. Fish-Cult.*, Vol 36, 1974, pp. 23–25.
- (482) Newton, T. A. and Rabe, F. W., “Comparison of Macroinvertebrate Samplers and the Relationship of Environmental Factors to Biomass and Diversity Variability in a Small Watershed,” *Res. Tech. Completion Report*, Project A-049-IDA, Idaho Water Resources Research Institute, Univ. of Idaho, Moscow, Idaho, 1977.
- (483) Ohio EPA, “Biological Criteria for the Protection of Aquatic Life: Volume II,” “Users manual for biological field assessment of Ohio surface waters, Volume III,” *Standardized Biological Field Sampling and Laboratory Methods for Assessing Fish and Macroinvertebrates Communities*, Ohio Environmental Protection Agency, Division Water Quality Monitoring and Assessment, Surface Water Section, Columbus, Ohio 43212, 1987.
- (484) Resh, V. H., “Sampling Variability and Life History Features: Basic Considerations in the Design of Aquatic Insect Studies,” *Journal Fish. Res. Bd. Can.*, Vol 36, 1979, pp. 290–311.
- (485) Rosenberg, D. M. and Resh, V. H., “The Use of Artificial Substrates in the Study of Freshwater Benthic Macroinvertebrates,” Cairns, J., Jr. (Ed.), *Artificial Substrates*, *Ann Arbor Science*, Ann Arbor, MI, 1982, pp. 175–235.
- (486) Voshell, J. R., Jr. and Simmons, G. M., Jr., “An Evaluation of Artificial Substrates for Sampling Macrobenthos in Reservoirs,” *Hydrobiologia*, Vol 53, 1977, pp. 257–269.
- (487) Weber, C. I., Ed. *Biological Field and Laboratory Methods for Measuring the Quality of Surface and Effluents*, Environmental Monitoring Series, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-670/4-73-001, 1973.

## SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The primary technical changes from the previous version of this standard (E 1367-99) are summarized in this section.

- (1) Information from USEPA (2001) (1) and Environment Canada (1994) were used to update the sections dealing with collection, storage, and manipulation of sediments.
- (2) Information from the following standards were consolidated in Annex A1 (once this Annex has been approved, there will be a ballot started to with draw these 15 standards:
- D 4387-84 (2002) Guide for Selecting Grab Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates
  - D 4556-85 (2002) Guide for Selecting Stream-Net Sampling Devices for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates
  - D 4342-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Ponar Grab Sampler
  - D 4343-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Ekman Grab Sampler
  - D 4344-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Smith-Mcintyre Grab Sampler
  - D 4345-84 (1998) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Van Veen Grab Sampler
  - D 4346-84 (1997) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Okean 50 Grab Sampler
  - D 4347-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Shipek (Scoop) Grab Sampler
  - D 4348-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Holme (Scoop) Grab Sampler
  - D 4401-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Petersen Grab Sampler
  - D 4407-84 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Orange Peel Grab Sampler
  - D 4557-85 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Surber And Related Type Samplers
  - D 4558-85 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Drift Net
  - E 1468-92 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Basket Sampler
  - E 1469-92 (2002) Practice for Collecting Benthic Macroinvertebrates with Multiplate Sampler

ASTM International takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM International Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, at the address shown below.

This standard is copyrighted by ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, United States. Individual reprints (single or multiple copies) of this standard may be obtained by contacting ASTM at the above address or at 610-832-9585 (phone), 610-832-9555 (fax), or service@astm.org (e-mail); or through the ASTM website (www.astm.org).